



# Education Act 1996

## 1996 CHAPTER 56

An Act to consolidate the Education Act 1944 and certain other enactments relating to education, with amendments to give effect to recommendations of the Law Commission. [24th July 1996]

Be it enacted by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1** Act to be construed with 1996 c. 57 (1.11.1996) by virtue of 1996 c. 57, **ss. 46(4)**, 48(2)  
Act to be construed with 1997 c. 44 (14.6.1997) by virtue of 1997 c. 44, **s. 56(2)**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1**  
Act to be construed with 1997 c. 59, **ss. 1-3** (31.7.1997) by virtue of 1997 c. 59, **s. 4(3)**  
Act to be construed with 1998 c. 18 (11.9.1998) by virtue of 1998 c. 18, **ss. 36(6)**, 55(2)  
Act to be construed with 1998 c. 31 (24.7.1998) by virtue of 1998 c. 31, **s. 142(8)(9)**  
Act to be construed with specified provisions of Education Act 2002 (24.7.2002) by virtue of **Education Act 2002 (c. 32)**, **ss. 212(2)-(4)**, 216(1) (with **ss. 210(8)**, 214(4))
- C2** Act applied (24.7.1998) by 1998 c. 31, **ss. 20**, 145(4), **Sch. 2 para. 3**  
Act applied (1.6.2001) by S.I. 2001/1507, **reg. 2**, **Sch. 2 para. 2**
- C3** Act excluded (26.5.1999) by S.I. 1999/1287, **reg. 5(2)(3)**
- C4** Act: powers transferred in part (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/672, art. 2, **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/3178, **art. 2(1)**  
Act: power to delegate certain functions restricted (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2242, **reg. 42(1)(5)**  
Act: certain functions of a local education authority made exercisable (E.) (1.4.2002) by authorised persons by **Contracting Out (Local Education Authority Functions) (England) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/928)**, art. 3, **Sch. 1**
- C5** Act modified (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, **s. 126**
- C6** Act construed with 1998 c. 38, s. 145B (as inserted (1.4.2005) by **Public Audit (Wales) Act 2004 (c. 23)**, **ss. 4**, 73; S.I. 2005/558, art. 2, Sch. 1)
- C7** Act applied (1.4.2005) by **The Central Sussex College (Government) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/397)**, **Sch. 2 para. 2**
- C8** Act modified (7.4.2005) by **Education Act 2005 (c. 18)**, **s. 96(2)**
- C9** Act modified (7.4.2005) by **Education Act 2005 (c. 18)**, **s. 122**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C10** Act Education Acts modified (temp.) (1.4.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), [Sch. 6 para. 3\(3\)](#); S.I. 2007/935, art. 5(bb)

## PART I

### GENERAL

#### CHAPTER I

##### THE STATUTORY SYSTEM OF EDUCATION

###### *General*

### 1 The stages of education.

- (1) The statutory system of public education consists of three progressive stages: primary education, secondary education and further education.
- (2) This Part—
  - (a) confers functions on the Secretary of State and local education authorities with respect to primary, secondary and further education; <sup>F1</sup> . . .
  - <sup>F1</sup>(b) . . . . .
- (3) Part I of the <sup>M1</sup>Further and Higher Education Act 1992 [<sup>F2</sup>makes provision with respect to further education.].
- (4) Apart from section 10 (general duty of Secretary of State), nothing in this Act confers any functions with respect to higher education.

#### Textual Amendments

- F1** S. 1(2)(b) and preceding word repealed (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), s. 140(1)(3), [Sch. 30 para. 58](#), [Sch. 31](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\)](#), [144\(6\)](#)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with savings in [Sch. 7 paras. 2-4](#), [6](#), [7](#), [10](#), [12](#))
- F2** Words in s. 1(3) substituted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.2001) by [2000 c. 21](#), [ss. 149](#), [154\(5\)](#), [Sch. 9 para. 51](#) (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), [Sch. Pt. II](#) (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C11** S. 1(4) excluded by [2002 c. 32](#), s. 28A(5) (as inserted (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), [ss. 105](#), [125\(4\)](#); S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4; S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3, [Sch. 1](#))

#### Marginal Citations

- M1** [1992 c. 13](#).

### 2 Definition of primary, secondary and further education.

[<sup>F3</sup>(1) In this Act “primary education” means—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) full-time or part-time education suitable to the requirements of children who have attained the age of two but are under compulsory school age;
- (b) full-time education suitable to the requirements of junior pupils of compulsory school age who have not attained the age of 10 years and six months; and
- (c) full-time education suitable to the requirements of junior pupils who have attained the age of 10 years and six months and whom it is expedient to educate together with junior pupils within paragraph (b).]

(2) In this Act “secondary education” means—

- (a) full-time education suitable to the requirements of pupils of compulsory school age who are either—
  - (i) senior pupils, or
  - (ii) junior pupils who have attained the age of 10 years and six months and whom it is expedient to educate together with senior pupils of compulsory school age; and
- (b) (subject to subsection (5)) full-time education suitable to the requirements of pupils who are over compulsory school age but under the age of 19 which is provided at a school at which education within paragraph (a) is also provided.

[<sup>F4</sup>(2A) Education is also secondary education for the purposes of this Act (subject to subsection (5)) if it is provided by an institution which—

- (a) is maintained by a local education authority [<sup>F5</sup>or is an Academy], and
- (b) is principally concerned with the provision of full-time education suitable to the requirements of pupils who are over compulsory school age but under the age of 19.

(2B) Where—

- (a) a person is in full-time education,
- (b) he receives his education partly at a school and, by virtue of arrangements made by the school, partly at another institution [<sup>F6</sup>or any other establishment], and
- (c) the education which he receives at the school would be secondary education if it was full-time education at the school,

the person’s education, both at the school and at the other institution [<sup>F7</sup>or establishment], is secondary education for the purposes of this Act (subject to subsection (5)).]

(3) Subject to subsection (5), in this Act “further education” means—

- (a) full-time and part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who are over compulsory school age [<sup>F8</sup>(including vocational, social, physical and recreational training)], and
- (b) organised leisure-time occupation provided in connection with the provision of such education,

except that it does not include secondary education or (in accordance with subsection (7)) higher education.

(4) Accordingly, unless it is education within subsection (2)(b) [<sup>F9</sup>or (2A)], full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age who have not attained the age of 19 is further education for the purposes of this Act and not secondary education.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) For the purposes of this Act education provided for persons who have attained the age of 19 is further education not secondary education; but where a person—
- (a) has begun a particular course of secondary education before attaining the age of 18, and
  - (b) continues to attend that course,
- the education does not cease to be secondary education by reason of his having attained the age of 19.
- (6) In subsection (3)(b) “organised leisure-time occupation” means leisure-time occupation, in such organised cultural training and recreative activities as are suited to their requirements, for any persons over compulsory school age who are able and willing to profit by facilities provided for that purpose.
- [<sup>F10</sup>(6A) In the context of the definitions of secondary education and further education, references in this section to education include vocational, social, physical and recreational training.]
- (7) References in this section to education do not include references to higher education.

#### Textual Amendments

- F3** S. 2(1) substituted (1.10.2002 for E., 31.3.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 156\(2\)](#), [216\(4\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#); [S.I. 2004/912](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F4** S. 2(2A)(2B) inserted (1.9.2000 for E. for certain purposes and 1.4.2001 otherwise for E.W.) by [2000 c. 21](#), [s. 110\(1\)](#) (with [s. 150](#)); [S.I. 2000/2114](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#), [Sch. Pt. III](#); [S.I. 2001/654](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#) (with [art. 3](#)); [S.I. 2001/1274](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#) (with [art. 3](#))
- F5** Words in s. 2(2A)(a) inserted (26.7.2002) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 65\(3\)](#), [216\(2\)](#), [Sch. 7 para. 6\(2\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 2](#)
- F6** Words in s. 2(2B)(b) inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.8.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 177\(2\)\(a\)](#), [216\(4\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#); [S.I. 2004/912](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#)
- F7** Words in s. 2(2B) inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.8.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 177\(2\)\(b\)](#), [216\(4\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#); [S.I. 2004/912](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#)
- F8** Words in s. 2(3)(a) repealed (1.10.2002 for E., 1.8.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [s. 216\(4\)](#), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#); [S.I. 2004/912](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#)
- F9** Words in s. 2(4) inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 19.12.2002 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 215\(1\)](#), [216\(4\)](#), [Sch. 21 para. 33](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#); [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F10** S. 2(6A) inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.8.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 177\(3\)](#), [216\(4\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#); [S.I. 2004/912](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#)

### 3 Definition of pupil etc.

- (1) In this Act “pupil” means a person for whom education is being provided at a school, other than—
- (a) a person who has attained the age of 19 for whom further education is being provided, or
  - (b) a person for whom part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons of any age over compulsory school age is being provided.

[<sup>F11</sup>and references to pupils in the context of the admission of pupils to, or the exclusion of pupils from, a school are references to persons who following their admission will

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

be, or (as the case may be) before their exclusion were, pupils as defined by this subsection.]

[<sup>F12</sup>(1A) A person is not for the purposes of this Act to be treated as a pupil at a school merely because any education is provided for him at the school in the exercise of the powers conferred by section 27 of the Education Act 2002 (power of governing body of maintained school to provide community facilities etc.).]

(2) In this Act—

“junior pupil” means a child who has not attained the age of 12; and

“senior pupil” means a person who has attained the age of 12 but not the age of 19.

(3) The definition of “pupil” in [<sup>F13</sup>Subsections (1) and (1A) also apply](unless the context otherwise requires) for the purposes of any instrument made or having effect as if made under the Education Acts.

#### Textual Amendments

**F11** Words in s. 3(1) inserted (1.9.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 9(2)**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. II**

**F12** S. 3(1A) inserted (2.9.2002 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 34(2)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

**F13** Words in s. 3(3) substituted (2.9.2002 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 34(3)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

### *Educational institutions*

#### 4 Schools: general.

[<sup>F14</sup>(1) In this Act [<sup>F15</sup> (subject to subsection (1A))] “school” means an educational institution which is outside the further education sector and the higher education sector and is an institution for providing—

- (a) primary education,
- (b) secondary education, or
- (c) both primary and secondary education,

whether or not the institution also provides [<sup>F16</sup>part-time education suitable to the requirements of junior pupils or] further education.]

[<sup>F17</sup>(1A) An institution which—

- (a) provides only early years provision (as defined by section 96(2) of the Childcare Act 2006), and
- (b) is not a maintained nursery school,

is not a school.]

(2) [<sup>F18</sup>Nothing in subsection (1) shall be taken to preclude the making of arrangements under section 19(1) (exceptional educational provision) under which part-time education is to be provided at a school; and for] the purposes of this Act an educational institution that would fall within subsection (1) but for the fact that it provides part-

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

time rather than full-time education shall nevertheless be treated as a school if that part-time education is provided under arrangements made under section 19(1)<sup>F19</sup> . . .

- (3) For the purposes of this Act an institution is outside the further education sector if it is not—

- (a) an institution conducted by a further education corporation established under section 15 or 16 of the<sup>M2</sup> Further and Higher Education Act 1992, or
- (b) a designated institution for the purposes of Part I of that Act (defined in section 28(4) of that Act);

and references to institutions within that sector shall be construed accordingly.

- (4) For the purposes of this Act an institution is outside the higher education sector if it is not—

- (a) a university receiving financial support under section 65 of that Act,
- (b) an institution conducted by a higher education corporation within the meaning of that Act, or
- (c) a designated institution for the purposes of Part II of that Act (defined in section 72(3) of that Act);

and references to institutions within that sector shall be construed accordingly.

#### Textual Amendments

- F14** S. 4(1) substituted (1.9.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 51; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. II**
- F15** Words in s. 4(1) inserted (1.9.2008) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), **ss. 95(2)**, 109(2); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with **Sch. 1**)
- F16** Words in s. 4(1) repealed (1.10.2002 for E., 31.3.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with **ss. 210(8)**, 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2004/912, art. 4, **Sch. Pt. 1**
- F17** S. 4(1A) inserted (1.9.2008) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), **ss. 95(3)**, 109(2); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with **Sch. 1**)
- F18** Words in s. 4(2) substituted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 10(a)**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. IV**
- F19** Words in s. 4(2) repealed (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1)(4), **Sch. 7 para. 10(b)**, **Sch. 8**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. IV**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C12** S. 4(1) restricted (1.9.2000 (E.) and 1.4.2001 (W.)) by 2000 c. 21, s. 110(3) (with s. 150); S.I. 2000/2114, art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. III**; S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**

#### Marginal Citations

- M2** 1992 c. 13.

## 5 Primary schools, secondary schools and middle schools.

- (1) In this Act “primary school” means (subject to regulations under subsection (4)) a school for providing primary education, whether or not it also provides [<sup>F20</sup>part-time education suitable to the requirements of junior pupils or] further education.
- (2) In this Act “secondary school” means (subject to regulations under subsection (4)) a school for providing secondary education, whether or not it also provides further education.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F21</sup>(3) In this Act “middle school” means a school which, in pursuance of proposals published under any of the enactments specified in subsection (3A), has been established as, or altered so as to become, a school for providing full-time education suitable to the requirements of pupils who—
- (a) have attained a specified age below 10 years and six months, and
  - (b) are under a specified age above 12 years.
- (3A) The enactments mentioned in subsection (3) are—
- (a) in relation to England—
    - (i) section 28 or 28A of, or paragraph 5 of Schedule 7 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998,
    - (ii) section 66 of, or paragraph 7 of Schedule 11 to, the Education Act 2005, and
    - (iii) section 7, 10, 11 or 19 of the Education and Inspections Act 2006;
  - (b) in relation to Wales, section 28 of, or paragraph 5 of Schedule 7 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.]
- (4) The Secretary of State shall make regulations for determining, or enabling him to determine, whether a middle school is to be treated for the purposes of this Act and the other enactments relating to education as a primary school or as a secondary school.
- (5) [<sup>F22</sup>The powers conferred by the enactments mentioned in subsection (3) (so far as relating to the establishment of middle schools) and the powers conferred by subsection] (4) above are exercisable—
- (a) notwithstanding anything in this Act (and in particular section 1); but
  - (b) without prejudice to the exercise of any other power conferred by this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

- F20** Words in s. 5(1) repealed (1.10.2002 for E., 31.3.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2004/912, art. 4, [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- F21** S. 5(3)(3A) substituted for s. 5(3) (25.5.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), [Sch. 3 para. 7\(2\)](#); S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)
- F22** Words in s. 5(5) substituted (1.9.2006) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 12 para. 1\(3\)](#); S.I. 2006/2129, art. 4

## 6 Nursery schools and special schools.

- (1) A primary school is a nursery school if it is used [<sup>F23</sup>wholly or] mainly for the purpose of providing education for children who have attained the age of two but are under [<sup>F24</sup>compulsory school age].
- (2) A school is a special school if it is specially organised, [<sup>F25</sup>and (in the case of a school which is not maintained by a local education authority) is for the time being approved, as mentioned in section 337.].

#### Textual Amendments

- F23** Words in s. 6(1) inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 31.3.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 156\(1\), 216\(4\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2004/912, art. 4, [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F24** Words in s. 6(1) substituted (1.8.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 51(1), **Sch. 7 para. 11**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. III**
- F25** Words in s. 6(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 141(1), **Sch. 30 para.60** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

### *Compulsory education*

## 7 **Duty of parents to secure education of children of compulsory school age.**

The parent of every child of compulsory school age shall cause him to receive efficient full-time education suitable—

- (a) to his age, ability and aptitude, and
  - (b) to any special educational needs he may have,
- either by regular attendance at school or otherwise.

## 8 **Compulsory school age.**

- (1) Subsections (2) and (3) apply to determine for the purposes of any enactment whether a person is of compulsory school age.

[<sup>F26</sup>(2) A person begins to be of compulsory school age—

- (a) when he attains the age of five, if he attains that age on a prescribed day, and
- (b) otherwise at the beginning of the prescribed day next following his attaining that age.]

- (3) A person ceases to be of compulsory school age at the end of the day which is the school leaving date for any calendar year—

- (a) if he attains the age of 16 after that day but before the beginning of the school year next following,
- (b) if he attains that age on that day, or
- (c) (unless paragraph (a) applies) if that day is the school leaving date next following his attaining that age.

[<sup>F27</sup>(4) The Secretary of State may by order—

- (a) provide that such days in the year as are specified in the order shall be, for each calendar year, prescribed days for the purposes of subsection (2);
- (b) determine the day in any calendar year which is to be the school leaving date for that year.]

### **Textual Amendments**

**F26** S. 8(2) substituted (1.8.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 52(2); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. III**

**F27** S. 8(4) substituted (1.8.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 52(3); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. III**



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Education in accordance with parental wishes*

## **9 Pupils to be educated in accordance with parents' wishes.**

In exercising or performing all their respective powers and duties under the Education Acts, the Secretary of [F28State and local education authorities] shall have regard to the general principle that pupils are to be educated in accordance with the wishes of their parents, so far as that is compatible with the provision of efficient instruction and training and the avoidance of unreasonable public expenditure.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F28** Words in s. 9 substituted (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 61** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

## **CHAPTER II**

### **FUNCTIONS OF THE SECRETARY OF STATE**

## **10 General duty of Secretary of State.**

The Secretary of State shall promote the education of the people of England and Wales.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C13** S. 10 amended (1.11.1996) by 1994 c. 30, s. 11A, as inserted by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1)(3), 583(2), **Sch. 37 Pt. I para.126** (with ss. 1(4), 561, 562, Sch. 39)

## **11 Duty in the case of primary, secondary and further education.**

- (1) The Secretary of State shall exercise his powers in respect of those bodies in receipt of public funds which—
  - (a) carry responsibility for securing that the required provision for primary, secondary or further education is made—
    - (i) in schools, or
    - (ii) in institutions within the further education sector, in or in any area of England or Wales, or
  - (b) conduct schools or institutions within the further education sector in England and Wales,for the purpose of promoting primary, secondary and further education in England and Wales.
- (2) The Secretary of State shall, in the case of his powers to regulate the provision made in schools and institutions within the further education sector in England and Wales, exercise his powers with a view to (among other things) improving standards, encouraging diversity and increasing opportunities for choice.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C14** S. 11 amended (1.11.1996) by 1994 c. 30, s. 11A, as inserted by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1)(3), 583(2), **Sch. 37 Pt. I para.126** (with ss. 1(4), 561, 562, Sch. 39)

## CHAPTER III

### LOCAL EDUCATION AUTHORITIES

#### *The authorities*

#### **12 Local education authorities and their areas.**

- (1) The local education authority for a county in England having a county council is the county council.
- (2) The local education authority for a district in England which is not in a county having a county council is the district council.
- (3) The local education authority for a London borough is the borough council.
- (4) The local education authority for the City of London (which for the purposes of this Act shall be treated as including the Inner Temple and the Middle Temple) is the Common Council of the City of London (in their capacity as a local authority).
- (5) As respects Wales—
  - (a) the local education authority for a county is the county council; and
  - (b) the local education authority for a county borough is the county borough council.
- (6) Any reference in this Act to the area of a local education authority shall be construed in accordance with the preceding provisions of this section.

#### *General functions*

#### **13 General responsibility for education.**

- (1) A local education authority shall (so far as their powers enable them to do so) contribute towards the spiritual, moral, mental and physical development of the community by securing that efficient primary education, [<sup>F29</sup>and secondary education] are available to meet the needs of the population of their area.
- (2) The duty imposed by subsection (1) does not extend to matters in respect of which any duty is imposed on—
  - [<sup>F30</sup>(a) the Learning and Skills Council for England <sup>F31</sup>...
  - [ the National Assembly for Wales under Part 2 of the Learning and Skills Act <sup>F32</sup>(aa) 2000, or]
  - (b) the higher education funding councils established under section 62 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F29** Words in s. 13(1) substituted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154, **Sch. 9 para. 52(2)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F30** S. 13(2)(a)(b) substituted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154, **Sch. 9 para. 52(3)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)
- F31** Words in s. 13(2)(a) omitted (1.4.2006) by virtue of [The National Council for Education and Training for Wales \(Transfer of Functions to the National Assembly for Wales and Abolition\) Order 2005](#) (S.I. 2005/3238), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 32(a)** (with art. 7)
- F32** S. 13(2)(aa) inserted (1.4.2006) by [The National Council for Education and Training for Wales \(Transfer of Functions to the National Assembly for Wales and Abolition\) Order 2005](#) (S.I. 2005/3238), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 32(b)** (with art. 7)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C15** S. 13 modified (prosp.) by [Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002](#) (c. 41), {ss. 36(1)(10), 162 (with s. 159)}

### <sup>F33</sup><sup>F34</sup> **13 Duty to promote high standards and the fulfilment of potential**

- (1) A local education authority shall ensure that their functions relating to the provision of education to which this section applies are (so far as they are capable of being so exercised) exercised by the authority with a view to—
- promoting high standards,
  - in the case of a local education authority in England, ensuring fair access to educational opportunity, and
  - promoting the fulfilment by every child concerned of his educational potential.
- (2) This section applies to education for—
- children of compulsory school age (whether at school or otherwise); and
  - children under or over that age who are registered as pupils at schools maintained by the authority,
- and in subsection (1) “functions” means functions of whatever nature.
- (3) In this section “child” means a person under the age of 20.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F33** S. 13A inserted (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, **s. 5** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. I**.
- F34** S. 13A substituted (25.5.2007 for E., 30.6.2008 for W.) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006](#) (c. 40), **ss. 1, 188(3)**; S.I. 2007/935, art. 6(a); S.I. 2008/1429, art. 3(1), **Sch. Pt. 1**

### **14 Functions in respect of provision of primary and secondary schools.**

- (1) A local education authority shall secure that sufficient schools for providing—
- primary education, and
  - education that is secondary education by virtue of section 2(2)(a),

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

are available for their area.

- (2) The schools available for an area shall not be regarded as sufficient for the purposes of subsection (1) unless they are sufficient in number, character and equipment to provide for all pupils the opportunity of appropriate education.
- (3) In subsection (2) “appropriate education” means education which offers such variety of instruction and training as may be desirable in view of—
- (a) the pupils’ different ages, abilities and aptitudes, and
  - (b) the different periods for which they may be expected to remain at school, including practical instruction and training appropriate to their different needs.
- [<sup>F35</sup>(3A) A local education authority in England shall exercise their functions under this section with a view to—
- (a) securing diversity in the provision of schools, and
  - (b) increasing opportunities for parental choice.]
- (4) A local education authority is not by virtue of subsection (1)(a) under any duty in respect of children under [<sup>F36</sup>compulsory school age].
- [<sup>F37</sup>(4A) A local education authority for an area in Wales may secure that regional schools for providing—
- (a) primary education, and
  - (b) education that is secondary education by virtue of section 2(2)(a),
- are available for Wales or any part of Wales that includes the area of the authority.
- (4B) For this purpose a “regional school”, in relation to a local education authority, is a school maintained by that authority which provides education to meet both—
- (a) the needs of pupils with particular special educational needs in their area, and
  - (b) the needs of such pupils in the rest, or any other part, of Wales,
- whether or not the institution also provides education suitable to the requirements of other pupils.]
- <sup>F38</sup>(5) .....
- (6) In exercising their functions under this section, a local education authority shall in particular have regard to—
- (a) the need for securing that primary and secondary education are provided in separate schools;
  - (b) the need for securing that special educational provision is made for pupils who have special educational needs; and
  - (c) the expediency of securing the provision of boarding accommodation (in boarding schools or otherwise) for pupils for whom education as boarders is considered by their parents and the authority to be desirable.
- (7) The duty imposed by subsection (6)(a) does not apply in relation to middle schools or special schools.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F35** S. 14(3A) inserted (25.5.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 2**, 188(3); [S.I. 2007/935](#), **art. 7(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F36** Words in s. 14(4) substituted (1.8.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 12**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. III**
- F37** S. 14(4A)(4B) inserted (19.12.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), **ss. 194(1)**, 216(3) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, arts. 2, 4, Sch. Pt. 1
- F38** S. 14(5) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 62, **Sch.31** (with 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**[<sup>F39</sup>14A Duty of local education authority to consider parental representations**

- (1) Where a local education authority in England receive any representation from a parent of a qualifying child as to the exercise by the authority of their functions under section 14, the authority shall—
  - (a) consider the representation and what action (if any) to take in response to it, and
  - (b) within a reasonable time provide the parent with a statement setting out—
    - (i) any action which the authority propose to take in response to the representation, or
    - (ii) where the authority are of the opinion that no such action is necessary, their reasons for being of that opinion.
- (2) In subsection (1) “qualifying child”, in relation to a local education authority, means any child in the authority's area who is of or under compulsory school age.
- (3) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to any representation which—
  - (a) appears to the local education authority to be frivolous or vexatious, or
  - (b) is the same as, or similar to, a representation previously received by the authority from the same person.
- (4) In exercising their functions under this section, a local education authority must have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F39** S. 14A inserted (25.5.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), **ss. 3**, 188(3); S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(a)

**<sup>F40</sup>15 Functions in respect of provision of further education.**

**Textual Amendments**

- F40** S. 15 repealed (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 153, 154, Sch. 9 para. 53, **Sch. 11** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**

**[<sup>F41</sup>15A Functions in respect of full-time education for 16 to 18 year olds.**

- (1) A local education authority may secure the provision for their area of full-time [<sup>F42</sup>or part-time] education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

age who have not attained the age of 19, including provision for persons from other areas.

<sup>F43</sup>(1A) [ The power under subsection (1) to secure the provision of education includes power to secure the provision—

- (a) of training, including vocational, social, physical and recreational training, and
- (b) of organised leisure time occupation (within the meaning of section 2(6)) which is provided in connection with the provision of education or of training within paragraph (a).]

(2) Subsections (6) and (7) of section 14 shall apply in relation to functions under this section [in respect of secondary education] as they apply in relation to functions under that section.]

<sup>F44</sup>(3) In exercising their functions under this section in respect of further education a local education authority shall in particular have regard to the needs of persons with learning difficulties (within the meaning of section 13(5) and (6) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000).

(4) A local education authority may do anything which appears to them to be necessary or expedient for the purposes of or in connection with the exercise of their functions under this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F41** S. 15A inserted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 63** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)
- F42** Words in s. 15A(1) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154(5), **Sch. 9 para. 54(2)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F43** S. 15A(1A) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154(5), **Sch. 9 para. 54(3)** (with s. 150) S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F44** S. 15A(3)(4) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154(5), **Sch. 9 para. 54(5)** (with s. 150) S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C16** S. 15A restricted (1.4.2001 (W.) and 1.8.2002 (E.)) by 2000 c. 21, s. 110(4) (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**; S.I. 2002/279, **art. 2(3)(b)**
- C17** Words in s. 15A(2) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154(5), **Sch. 9 para. 54(4)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**

#### <sup>F45</sup>**15B Functions in respect of education for persons over 19.**

- (1) A local education authority may secure the provision for their area of full-time or part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of 19, including provision for persons from other areas.
- (2) The power under subsection (1) to secure the provision of education includes power to secure the provision—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) of training, including vocational, social, physical and recreational training, and
  - (b) of organised leisure time occupation (within the meaning of section 2(6)) which is provided in connection with the provision of education or of training within paragraph (a).
- (3) In exercising their functions under this section a local education authority shall in particular have regard to the needs of persons with learning difficulties (within the meaning of section 13(5) and (6) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000).
- (4) A local education authority may do anything which appears to them to be necessary or expedient for the purposes of or in connection with the exercise of their functions under this section.
- (5) This section does not apply to higher education.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F45** S. 15B inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154(5), Sch. 9 para. 55 (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. II (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. I

### *Establishment etc. of schools*

#### **16 Power to establish, maintain and assist primary and secondary schools.**

- (1) For the purpose of fulfilling their functions under this Act, a local education authority may—
- (a) establish primary schools and secondary schools;
  - (b) maintain primary and secondary schools, whether established by them or not; and
  - (c) assist any primary or secondary school which is not maintained by them.
- (2) A local education authority may under subsection (1) establish, maintain and assist schools outside as well as inside their area.
- (3) A local education authority may not under subsection (1) establish a school to provide—
- (a) part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons of any age over compulsory school age; or
  - (b) full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of 19.

#### **17 Powers in respect of [<sup>F46</sup>nursery schools] .**

- (1) A local education authority may—
- (a) establish nursery schools;
  - (b) maintain nursery schools established by them or by an authority which was a local education authority within the meaning of any enactment repealed by the <sup>M3</sup>Education Act 1944 or an earlier Act; and
  - (c) assist any nursery school not so established.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Section 14(4) does not affect a local education authority’s power under section 16(1) to establish, maintain and assist schools at which education is provided both for children under [<sup>F47</sup>compulsory school age] and for older pupils (including schools at which there are nursery classes for children under [<sup>F47</sup>compulsory school age]).

#### Textual Amendments

- F46** Words in s. 17 heading substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\), s. 109\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 20](#); [S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 \(with Sch. 1\)](#)
- F47** Words in s. 17(2) substituted (1.8.1998) by [1997 c. 44, s. 57\(1\), Sch. 7 para.13](#); [S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt.III](#)

#### Marginal Citations

- M3** [1944 c. 31.](#)

### *Other arrangements for provision of education*

#### **18 Power to arrange provision of education at non-maintained schools.**

A local education authority may make arrangements for the provision of primary and secondary education for pupils at schools not maintained by them or another local education authority.

#### **19 Exceptional provision of education in pupil referral units or elsewhere.**

- (1) Each local education authority shall make arrangements for the provision of suitable <sup>F48</sup> . . . education at school or otherwise than at school for those children of compulsory school age who, by reason of illness, exclusion from school or otherwise, may not for any period receive suitable education unless such arrangements are made for them.
- (2) Any school established (whether before or after the commencement of this Act) and maintained by a local education authority which—
- (a) is specially organised to provide education for such children, and
  - (b) is not a county school or a special school,
- shall be known as a “pupil referral unit”.

[<sup>F49</sup>(2A) Subsection (2) does not apply in relation to schools in England.

- (2B) Any school established in England (whether before or after the commencement of this Act) and maintained by a local education authority which—
- (a) is specially organised to provide education for such children, and
  - (b) is not a community or foundation school, a community or foundation special school, or a maintained nursery school,
- shall be known as a “pupil referral unit”.]

- (3) A local education authority may secure the provision of boarding accommodation at any pupil referral unit.

[<sup>F50</sup>(3A) In relation to England, the duty imposed by subsection (1) includes, except in prescribed cases, a duty to make arrangements for the provision of suitable full-time education at school or otherwise than at school for—



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) children of compulsory school age who have been permanently excluded on disciplinary grounds from relevant schools or pupil referral units, and have not subsequently been admitted to schools other than pupil referral units, and
  - (b) children of compulsory school age who are excluded for a fixed period on disciplinary grounds from any pupil referral unit maintained by the authority.
- (3B) The education referred to in subsection (3A) must be provided from a day that, in relation to the pupil concerned, is determined in accordance with regulations.]
- (4) A local education authority may make arrangements for the provision of suitable <sup>F48</sup> . . . education otherwise than at school for those young persons who, by reason of illness, exclusion from school or otherwise, may not for any period receive suitable education unless such arrangements are made for them.
- [<sup>F51</sup>(4A) In determining what arrangements to make under subsection (1) or (4) in the case of any child or young person a local education authority shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.]
- (5) Any child for whom education is provided otherwise than at school in pursuance of this section, and any young person for whom full-time education is so provided in pursuance of this section, shall be treated for the purposes of this Act as a pupil.
- [<sup>F52</sup>(6) In this section—
- “relevant school” means—
  - (a) a maintained school,
  - (b) an Academy,
  - (c) a city technology college, or
  - (d) a city college for the technology of the arts;
- “suitable education”, in relation to a child or young person, means efficient education suitable to his age, ability and aptitude and to any special educational needs he may have (and “suitable full-time education” is to be read accordingly).]
- (7) Schedule 1 has effect in relation to pupil referral units.

#### Textual Amendments

- F48** Words in s. 19(1) and (4) repealed (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, ss. 47(2)(3), 57(4), **Sch.8**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. IV**
- F49** S. 19(2A)(2B) inserted (2.7.2007) by The Education Act 1996 (Amendment of Section 19) (England) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/1507), regs. 1, 2
- F50** S. 19(3A)(3B) inserted (1.9.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. **101(2)**, 188(3); S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(g)
- F51** S. 19(4A) inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. **47(4)**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. IV**
- F52** S. 19(6) substituted (1.9.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. **101(3)**, 188(3); S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(g)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C18** S. 19 excluded (prosp.) by Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (c. 41), ss. **36(5)(c)(10)**, 162 (with s. 159)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER IV

### THE FUNDING AUTHORITIES

#### *The Authorities*

F<sup>53</sup> **20** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F53** S. 20 repealed (1.11.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 66, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F<sup>54</sup> **21** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F54** S. 21 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 133, 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 66, **Sch.31**; S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### *Functions*

F<sup>55</sup> **22** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F55** S. 22 repealed (1.4.1999 in relation to s. 22 except s. 22(1)(a) and otherwise 1.11.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 66, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F<sup>56</sup> **23** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F56** S. 23 repealed (1.11.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 66, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F<sup>57</sup> **24** .....

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

**Changes to legislation:** Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F57** S. 24 repealed (1.11.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 66, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Supplemental*

**F58** **25** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F58** S. 25 repealed (1.11.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 66, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F59** **26** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F59** S. 26 repealed (1.11.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 66, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**CHAPTER V**

ALLOCATION OF RESPONSIBILITY FOR EDUCATION AT SCHOOL BETWEEN LEA AND FUNDING AUTHORITY

**F60** **27** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F60** S. 27 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 66, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**CHAPTER VI**

SUPPLEMENTAL

*Allocation of functions*

**F61** **28** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F61** S. 28 repealed (1.11.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 66, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Provision of information*

**29 Provision of information by local education authorities.**

- (1) A local education authority shall—
  - (a) make such reports and returns to the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) give to the Secretary of State such information,
 as he may require for the purpose of the exercise of his functions under this Act.

<sup>F62</sup>(2) .....

- (3) A local education authority shall—
  - (a) compile such information, and
  - (b) make such provision for conducting, or assisting the conduct of, research,
 as may be required for the purpose of providing the Secretary of State <sup>F63</sup> . . . , in such form and at such times as may be prescribed, with such information relating to the provision of primary or secondary education in the area of the local education authority as may be prescribed.

- (4) The Secretary of State shall exercise his powers under subsection (3) so as to secure, in particular, the provision of information relating to the provision of education for children with special educational needs.

- (5) A local education authority shall, at such time or times and in such manner as may be required by regulations, publish such information as may be so required with respect to their policy and arrangements in respect of any matter relating to primary or secondary education.

<sup>F64</sup>(6) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F62** S. 29(2) repealed (1.11.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 67(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F63** Words in s. 29(3) repealed (1.11.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 67(b), **Sch.31**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F64** S. 29(6) repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 35, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.

<sup>F65</sup>**30** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F65** S. 30 repealed (1.11.1999) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 68, **Sch.31**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F66** **PART II**

**SCHOOLS MAINTAINED BY LOCAL EDUCATION AUTHORITIES**

**Textual Amendments**

**F66** Pt. II (ss. 31-182) repealed (1.10.1998, 10.3.1999, 1.4.1999 respectively in relation to specified provisions and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pts. I, **IV**; S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings as specified in those S.I.s and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, S.I. 1999/711, **S.I.** 1999/2243 and S.I. 1999/2262)

**CHAPTER I**

**PRELIMINARY**

**F67** **31** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F67** S. 31 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F68** **32** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F68** S. 32 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F69** **33** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F69** S. 33 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F70 **34** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F70 S. 34 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**CHAPTER II**

ESTABLISHMENT, ALTERATION ETC. OF COUNTY AND VOLUNTARY SCHOOLS

*County schools: establishment, alteration or change of site*

F71 **35** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F71 S. 35 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 35(8) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F72 **36** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F72 S. 36 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 36(3) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **regs. 8(2)(a), 14(2)(a)**)

F73 **37** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F73 S. 37 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 37(4)(7)-(9) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **regs. 8(2)(a), 14(2)(a)**)

F74 **38** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F74** S. 38 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **regs. 8(2)(a)**, 14(2)(a))

**F75** **39** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F75** S. 39 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** ((with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **regs. 8(2)(a)**, 14(2)(a))

**F76** **40** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F76** S. 40 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Voluntary schools: establishment, alteration or change of site*

**F77** **41** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F77** S. 41 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F78** **42** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F78** S. 42 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 42(4) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** ; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **regs. 8(2)(b)**, 14(2)(b))

**F79** **43** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F79** S. 43 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 43(3)-(6) and words in s. 43(2) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **regs. 8(2)(b)**, 14(2)(b))

**F80** **44** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F80** S. 44 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **regs. 8(2)(b)**, 14(2)(b))

**F81** **45** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F81** S. 45 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F82** **46** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F82** S. 46 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F83** **47** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F83** S. 47 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Status of new voluntary school*

**F84** **48** .....



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F84** S. 48 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Proposals for a middle school*

**F85** **49** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F85** S. 49 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Division of a single school into two or more schools*

**F86** **50** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F86** S. 50 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F87** **51** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F87** S. 51 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Change of status from controlled school to aided school*

**F88** **52** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F88** S. 52 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F89** **53** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F89** S. 53 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F90</sup>**54** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F90** S. 54 repealed (10.3.1999 in respect of s. 54(6)(c) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F91</sup>**55** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F91** S. 55 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F92</sup>**56** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F92** S. 56 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Change of status from aided or special agreement school to controlled or aided school*

<sup>F93</sup>**57** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F93** S. 57 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F94</sup>**58** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F94** S. 58 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**CHAPTER III**

**FUNDING OF VOLUNTARY SCHOOLS**

*Obligations of governing bodies*

**F95** **59** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F95** S. 59 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Obligations of LEAs as regards new sites and buildings*

**F96** **60** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F96** S. 60 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 14, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F97** **61** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F97** S. 61 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 15, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12) and subject to an amendment (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 59**

**F98** **62** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F98** S. 62 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Financial assistance for controlled schools*

F99 63 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F99** S. 63 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** ((with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **regs. 8, 10**))

F100 64 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F100** S. 64 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** ((with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **regs. 14, 15**))

*Financial assistance by Secretary of State for aided and special agreement schools*

F101 65 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F101** S. 65 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F102 66 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F102** S. 66 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F103 67 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F103** S. 67 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

**Changes to legislation:** Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Assistance by LEAs for governing bodies of aided and special agreement schools*

F104 ~~68~~ .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F104** S. 68 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Assistance by LEAs for promoters of new voluntary schools*

F105 ~~69~~ .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F105** S. 69 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Miscellaneous and supplemental*

F106 ~~70~~ .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F106** S. 70 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F107 ~~71~~ .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F107** S. 71 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F108 ~~72~~ .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F108** S. 72 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

*Changes to legislation:* Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F109~~73~~ .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F109** S. 73 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F110~~74~~ .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F110** S. 74 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F111~~75~~ .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F111** S. 75 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**CHAPTER IV**

GOVERNMENT OF COUNTY, VOLUNTARY AND MAINTAINED SPECIAL SCHOOLS

*Instruments of government*

F112~~76~~ .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F112** S. 76 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F113~~77~~ .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F113** S. 77 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Categories of governor

F114~~78~~ .....

#### Textual Amendments

F114 S. 78 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

### Governing bodies of county, controlled and maintained special schools

F115~~79~~ .....

#### Textual Amendments

F115 S. 79 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F116~~80~~ .....

#### Textual Amendments

F116 S. 80 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F117~~81~~ .....

#### Textual Amendments

F117 S. 81 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F118~~82~~ .....

#### Textual Amendments

F118 S. 82 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F119~~83~~ .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F119** S. 83 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Governing bodies of aided and special agreement schools*

<sup>F120</sup>**84** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F120** S. 84 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F121</sup>**85** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F121** S. 85 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Governing bodies: general*

<sup>F122</sup>**86** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F122** S. 86 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F123</sup>**87** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F123** S. 87 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F124</sup>**88** .....



**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

**Changes to legislation:** Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F124** S. 88 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Grouping of schools under a single governing body*

**F125**<sup>89</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F125** S. 89 repealed (10.3.1999 in respect of s. 89(1)(2) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F126**<sup>90</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F126** S. 90 repealed (10.3.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with art. 5(1)(3) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F127**<sup>91</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F127** S. 91 repealed (10.3.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F128**<sup>92</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F128** S. 92 repealed (10.3.1999 in respect of s. 92(1)(2)(4) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with art. 5(2)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F129**<sup>93</sup> .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F129** S. 93 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F130</sup>**94** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F130** S. 94 repealed (10.3.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F131</sup>**95** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F131** S. 95 repealed (10.3.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with art. 5(3) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 )

*Government of new schools*

<sup>F132</sup>**96** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F132** S. 96 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 8(2)** and S.I. 1999/2262, **reg. 8(2)**)

<sup>F133</sup>**97** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F133** S. 97 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2243, **reg. 8(2)** and S.I. 1999/2262, **reg. 8(2)**)

<sup>F134</sup>**98** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F134** S. 98 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F135**<sup>99</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F135** S. 99 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Grouping of new schools*

**F136**<sup>100</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F136** S. 100 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F137** **CHAPTER V**

**Textual Amendments**

**F137** Part II Chapter V (ss. 101-126) repealed (1.4.1999 subject to savings) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, arts. 2, 4, Sch. 1 Pt.IV, **Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 8** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/711, **reg. 5** and S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12))

**CHAPTER VI**

**CONDUCT AND STAFFING OF COUNTY, VOLUNTARY AND MAINTAINED SPECIAL SCHOOLS**

*Articles of government*

**F138**<sup>127</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F138** S. 127 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F139** 128 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F139** S. 128 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F140** 129 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F140** S. 129 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Conduct of schools: general*

**F141** 130 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F141** S. 130 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F142** 131 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F142** S. 131 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F143** 132 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F143** S. 132 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Staffing of schools without delegated budgets*

**F144** 133 .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F144** S. 133 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F145</sup>**134** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F145** S. 134 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F146</sup>**135** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F146** S. 135 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Staffing of schools with delegated budgets*

<sup>F147</sup>**136** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F147** S. 136 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F148</sup>**137** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F148** S. 137 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F149</sup>**138** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F149** S. 138 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

<sup>F150</sup>**139** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F150** S. 139 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F151</sup>**140** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F151** S. 140 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F152</sup>**141** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F152** S. 141 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F153</sup>**142** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F153** S. 142 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Appointment and dismissal of teachers of religious education*

<sup>F154</sup>**143** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F154** S. 143 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F155</sup>**144** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F155** S. 144 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F156** **145** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F156** S. 145 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Religious opinions of staff etc.*

**F157** **146** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F157** S. 146 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*School terms, holidays and sessions*

**F158** **147** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F158** S. 147 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F159** **148** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F159** S. 148 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Control of school premises*

**F160** **149** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F160** S. 149 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F161** **150** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F161** S. 150 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F162** **151** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F162** S. 151 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F163** **152** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F163** S. 152 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Instruction or training outside school premises*

**F164** **153** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F164** S. 153 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Discipline: general*

**F165** **154** .....



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F165** S. 154 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F166** **155** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F166** S. 155 repealed (1.10.1998 in respect of s. 155(1)(4) and otherwise 1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. I**; S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F167** **156** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F167** S. 156 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 6 paras. 2-6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F168** **157** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F168** S. 157 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 6 paras. 2-6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F169** **158** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F169** S. 158 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 6 paras. 2-6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F170** **159** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F170** S. 159 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 6 paras. 2-6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F171</sup>**160** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F171** S. 160 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 6 paras. 2-6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Reports, meetings and information*

<sup>F172</sup>**161** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F172** S. 161 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 6 paras. 2-6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F173</sup>**162** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F173** S. 162 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 6 paras. 2-6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F174</sup>**163** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F174** S. 163 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 6 paras. 2-6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

<sup>F175</sup>**164** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F175** S. 164 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 6 paras. 2-6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F176** **165** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F176** S. 165 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 6 paras. 2-6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*New schools*

**F177** **166** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F177** S. 166 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 6 paras. 2-6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**CHAPTER VII**

DISCONTINUANCE OF LOCAL EDUCATION AUTHORITY SCHOOLS

*Procedure for discontinuance of county, voluntary or maintained nursery school by local education authority*

**F178** **167** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F178** S. 167 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 167(6) and words in s. 167(1) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 6 paras. 2-6, Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F179** **168** .....

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

**Changes to legislation:** Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F179** S. 168 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 168(3) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 14(2)(c)**)

**F180** **169** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F180** S. 169 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 169(4)(6) and words in s. 169(5) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 14(2)(c)**)

**F181** **170** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F181** S. 170 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 14(2)(c)**)

**F182** **171** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F182** S. 171 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F183** **172** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F183** S. 172 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Discontinuance of voluntary school by governing body*

**F184** **173** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F184** S. 173 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F185** **174** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F185** S. 174 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**F186** **175** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F186** S. 175 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

**CHAPTER VIII**

MISCELLANEOUS AND SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

*Further education*

**F187** **176** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F187** S. 176 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Teacher training*

**F188** **177** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F188** S. 177 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Modification of employment law*

F189 **178** .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F189** S. 178 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

### *Modification of trust deeds and other instruments*

F190 **179** .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F190** S. 179 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 23(1), Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F191 **180** .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F191** S. 180 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 11, 12)

### *Interpretation of Part II*

F192 **181** .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F192** S. 181 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12)

F193 **182** .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F193** S. 182 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2-4, 6, 7, 10, 12) and subject to an amendment (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2001, reg. 24, **Sch. 8 para. 5**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## <sup>F194</sup>PART III

### GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

#### Textual Amendments

**F194** Pt. III (ss. 183-311) repealed (1.10.1998, 1.4.1999 and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt.I**; S.I. 1999/120, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings as specified in those S.I.s and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704)

### CHAPTER I

#### PRELIMINARY

<sup>F195</sup>**183** .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F195** S. 183 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 183(4) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 69, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

### CHAPTER II

#### PROCEDURE FOR ACQUISITION OF GRANT-MAINTAINED STATUS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C19** Pt. III Chapter II (ss. 184-200) modified (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 57, **ss. 37(3)**, 48(2)

#### *Eligibility*

<sup>F196</sup>**184** .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F196** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F197</sup>**185** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F197** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Initiation of procedure*

**F198** **186** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F198** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F199** **187** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F199** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Information*

**F200** **188** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F200** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Ballot of parents*

**F201** **189** .....



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12**)

**F202** **190** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F202** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12**)

**F203** **191** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F203** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12**)

**F204** **192** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F204** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12**)

**F205** **193** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F205** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12**)

*Approval and implementation of proposals*

**F206** **194** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F206** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F207** **195** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F207** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F208** **196** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F208** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Expenses in connection with proposals*

**F209** **197** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Alteration of county school proposed for grant-maintained status*

**F210** **198** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F211 **199** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F211** Ss. 184-199 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Supplementary*

F212 **200** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F212** S. 200 repealed (1.10.1998 in respect of s. 200(4) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I; S.I. 1999/2323, art 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**CHAPTER III**

PROPERTY, STAFF AND CONTRACTS

*Transfer of property and staff, etc.*

F213 **201** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F213** S. 201 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 8, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, ,12)

F214 **202** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F214** S. 202 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Effect of pending procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status on property disposals, etc.*

F215 **203** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F215** S. 203 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F216 **204** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F216** S. 204 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 9, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F217 **205** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F217** S. 205 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 10, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F218 **206** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F218** S. 206 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F219 **207** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F219** S. 207 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 11, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F220 **208** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F220** S. 208 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 12, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F221** **209** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F221** S. 209 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Supplementary*

**F222** **210** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F222** S. 210 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**CHAPTER IV**

**ESTABLISHING NEW GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS**

*Proposals for establishment of new grant-maintained school*

**F223** **211** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F223** S. 211 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I.1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F224** **212** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F224** S. 212 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (with Sch. 2 para. 4 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F225 **213** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F225** S. 213 repealed (1.10.1998 in respect of s. 213(2)(3) and otherwise 1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I; S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12**)

*Approval and implementation of proposals*

F226 **214** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F226** S. 214 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12**)

F227 **215** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F227** S. 215 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1998/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12** and in S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 3**)

F228 **216** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F228** S. 216 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 216(2)-(9) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in S.I. 1998/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12** and in S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 3**)

*Supplementary*

F229 **217** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F229** S. 217 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1998/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12** and in S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 3**)

**CHAPTER V**

**GOVERNMENT, CONDUCT ETC. OF GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C20** Pt. III Chapter V (ss. 218-243) modified (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 57, **ss. 37(3), 48(2)**

*The governing instruments*

<sup>F230</sup>**218** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F230** S. 218 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F231</sup>**219** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F231** S. 219 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F232</sup>**220** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F232** S. 220 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F233</sup>**221** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F233** S. 221 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Governors*

<sup>F234</sup>**222** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F234** S. 222 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F235</sup>**223** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F235** S. 223 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F236</sup>**224** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F236** S. 224 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F237</sup>**225** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F237** S. 225 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F238</sup>**226** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F238** S. 226 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F239 **227** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F239** S. 227 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F240 **228** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F240** S. 228 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F241 **229** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F241** S. 229 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F242 **230** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F242** S. 230 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Powers*

F243 **231** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F243** S. 231 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F244 **232** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F244** Ss. 232-240 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F245</sup>**233** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F245** Ss. 232-240 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Schools acquiring grant-maintained status: determination etc. of initial governors*

<sup>F246</sup>**234** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F246** Ss. 232-240 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F247</sup>**235** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F247** Ss. 232-240 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F248</sup>**236** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F248** Ss. 232-240 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F249</sup>**237** .....

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

**Changes to legislation:** Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F249** Ss. 232-240 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F250** **238** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F250** Ss. 232-240 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F251** **239** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F251** Ss. 232-240 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F252** **240** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F252** Ss. 232-240 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*New grant-maintained schools: determination etc. of initial governors*

**F253** **241** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F253** S. 241 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *General and supplementary*

F254 **242** .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F254** S. 242 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F255 **243** .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F255** S. 243 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

## CHAPTER VI

### FUNDING OF GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

#### *Grants: general*

F256 **244** .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F256** S. 244 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, Sch. 31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

[F257 **245** **Special purpose grants.**

- (1) Grant regulations may provide for the payment by the funding authority to the governing bodies of grant-maintained schools of grants (known as special purpose grants) in respect of expenditure, of any class or description specified in the regulations, incurred or to be incurred by the governing bodies—
  - (a) for or in connection with educational purposes of any class or description so specified,
  - (b) in making any provision (whether of educational services or facilities or otherwise) of any class or description so specified which appears to the funding authority to be required for meeting any special needs of the population of the area served by the schools in question, or
  - (c) in respect of expenses of any class or description so specified, being expenses which it appears to the funding authority the governing bodies of such schools cannot reasonably be expected to meet from maintenance grant.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Grant regulations may provide for special purpose grants to be payable—
- (a) on a regular basis in respect of expenditure of a recurrent kind, or
  - (b) by reference to expenditure incurred or to be incurred on particular occasions or during any particular period.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F257** S. 245 repealed (1.4.1999 for specified purposes and otherwise prosp.) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1)(3), 145(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, Sch. 31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C21** S. 245 applied (with modifications) (1.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/274, reg. 2

### [<sup>F258</sup>246 Capital grants.

- (1) Grant regulations may provide for the payment by the funding authority to the governing bodies of grant-maintained schools of grants (known as capital grants) in respect of expenditure of a capital nature, of any class or description specified in the regulations, incurred or to be incurred by the governing bodies.
- (2) The descriptions of expenditure which are to be regarded for the purposes of capital grant as expenditure of a capital nature shall be such as may be determined by or in accordance with the regulations.
- (3) Where the governing body of a grant-maintained school include sponsor governors, the funding authority shall, if directed to do so by the Secretary of State, pay capital grant of such amount as may be specified in the directions in respect of such expenditure falling within subsection (1) as is incurred, or to be incurred, by the governing body for such purposes as may be specified in the directions.
- (4) Before giving a direction under subsection (3), the Secretary of State shall consult the funding authority.
- (5) A direction under subsection (3) may not be given after the end of the period of twelve months beginning—
  - (a) (in the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status which include sponsor governors on the incorporation date) with that date,
  - (b) (in the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school which include sponsor governors on the date of implementation of the proposals) with that date, and
  - (c) (in any other case) with the date when the instrument of government naming a person as the sponsor of the school came into effect.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F258** S. 246 repealed (1.4.1999 for specified purposes and otherwise prosp.) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1)(3), 145(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, Sch. 31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C22** S. 246 modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, reg. 7(1)

**[<sup>F259</sup>247 Imposition of requirements on governing body in receipt of grant.**

- (1) A governing body to whom any payments in respect of maintenance grant, capital grant or special purpose grant are made shall comply with such requirements of a kind mentioned in subsection (2) as the funding authority may from time to time impose.
- (2) The kinds of requirements which may be imposed under subsection (1) are—
  - (a) requirements specified in grant regulations as requirements which may be imposed by the funding authority on governing bodies to whom such payments are made, and
  - (b) requirements determined in accordance with grant regulations by the funding authority.
- (3) Requirements imposed under subsection (1)—
  - (a) may be imposed on or at any time after the making of any payment by reference to which they are imposed, and
  - (b) subject to subsection (4), may at any time be varied by the funding authority.
- (4) The power of the funding authority to vary such a requirement—
  - (a) does not apply to a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (2)(a), or a requirement required to be imposed by the regulations (by virtue of subsection (9)) or by directions under section 24, unless the Secretary of State has consented to the variation, and
  - (b) is subject, in the case of a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (2)(b), to the provisions of the regulations relating to the determination of the requirements that may be imposed in the case of payments in respect of the grant in question.
- (5) Requirements imposed under subsection (1) may at any time be waived or removed by the funding authority with the consent of the Secretary of State.
- (6) The requirements which may be specified in or authorised by grant regulations as requirements which may be imposed on governing bodies to whom payments are made in respect of special purpose grant or capital grant may, in particular, if any conditions specified in the requirements are satisfied, require the payment to the funding authority of the whole or any part of the following amount.
- (7) That amount is—
  - (a) the amount of the payments made in respect of the grant, or
  - (b) so much of the value of any premises or equipment in respect of which the grant was paid as is determined in accordance with the requirements to be properly attributable to the payment of such grant,
 whichever is the greater.
- (8) No such requirement as is referred to in subsection (6) may be imposed where any payment is made in respect of capital grant if—
  - (a) the grant is made in respect of the provision, alteration or repair of premises for a school, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) any freehold interest in the premises in respect of which the grant is made is, or is to be, held on trust for the purposes of the school.
- (9) Grant regulations may require the funding authority to impose any such requirements as may be imposed under the preceding provisions of this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F259** S. 247 repealed (1.4.1999 for specified purposes and otherwise prosp.) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1)(3), 145(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C23** S. 247 modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, **reg. 7(2)**  
S. 247 applied (with modifications) (1.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/274, **regs. 3, 4**  
S. 247 modified (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/532, **reg. 5(1)**  
S. 247: functions transferred (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/532, **reg. 4**

### [<sup>F260</sup>248 Grants: further provisions.

- (1) The times at which, and the manner in which, payments are made in respect of—
- maintenance grant for a grant-maintained school in respect of any financial year,
  - special purpose grant, and
  - capital grant,
- shall be such as may be determined from time to time by the funding authority.
- (2) Payments in respect of maintenance grant for a school in respect of any financial year may be made, before any amount has been determined in accordance with grant regulations as the amount of such grant payable for that year in respect of the school, by reference to an estimate of the amount which will be so payable made by the funding authority.
- (3) Where in respect of any financial year an over-payment of maintenance grant is made to the governing body of a school, a sum equal to the amount of that over-payment shall be recoverable from the governing body by the funding authority.
- (4) Where a sum is payable by the governing body of a school to the funding authority—
- in respect of an over-payment of maintenance grant in respect of a financial year, or
  - by way of repayment of special purpose grant or capital grant (whether by virtue of a requirement such as is mentioned in section 247(6) or otherwise),
- the funding authority may (without prejudice to any other mode of recovery) recover the whole or any part of that sum by deducting it from any grant payable by them to the governing body.
- (5) In this section references to an over-payment of maintenance grant in respect of a financial year are to any amount by which the aggregate amount of any payments in respect of maintenance grant made to the governing body of the school in question in respect of the year exceeds the amount finally determined in accordance with grant regulations as the amount of maintenance grant payable for that year in respect of the school.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) The funding authority shall exercise any power conferred on them by this section, by any of sections 216 and 244 to 247, or by paragraph 6 of Schedule 21 in such manner (if any) as may be specified in or determined in accordance with grant regulations.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F260** S. 248 repealed (1.4.1999 for specified purposes and otherwise prosp.) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1)(3), 145(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12**)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C24** S. 248 applied (with modifications) (1.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/274, reg. 5  
S. 248 modified (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/532, **reg. 6**  
S. 248: functions transferred (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/532, **reg. 4**  
**C25** S. 248(1)-(4) modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, **reg. 7(3)**

*Grants: Wales (until establishment of the SFCW)*

#### [<sup>F261</sup>249 Application of sections 250 to 254.

Before the Schools Funding Council for Wales begin to exercise their functions, sections 250 to 254 shall have effect in relation to grant-maintained schools in Wales in place of sections 244(1) and (3), 245(1), 246(1), 247 and 248.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F261** S. 249 repealed (1.4.1999 for specified purposes and otherwise prosp.) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1)(3), 145(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12**)

#### <sup>F262</sup>250 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F262** S. 250 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12**)

#### <sup>F263</sup>251 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F263** S. 251 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, **12**)



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F264 **252** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F264** S. 252 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

[F265] **253 Imposition of requirements on governing body in receipt of grant.**

- (1) A governing body to whom any payments in respect of maintenance grant or special purpose grants are made shall comply with such requirements of a kind mentioned in subsection (2) as the Secretary of State may from time to time impose.
- (2) The kinds of requirements which may be imposed under subsection (1) are—
  - (a) requirements specified in grant regulations as requirements which may be imposed by the Secretary of State on governing bodies to whom such payments are made, and
  - (b) requirements determined in accordance with grant regulations by the Secretary of State.
- (3) A governing body to whom any payments in respect of capital grant are made shall comply with such requirements determined by the Secretary of State as he may from time to time impose.
- (4) Requirements imposed under subsection (1) or (3)—
  - (a) may be imposed on or at any time after the making of any payment by reference to which they are imposed, and
  - (b) may at any time be waived or removed or, subject to subsection (5), varied by the Secretary of State.
- (5) The power of the Secretary of State to vary such a requirement—
  - (a) does not apply to a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (2)(a), and
  - (b) is subject, in the case of a requirement of the kind mentioned in subsection (2)(b), to the provisions of the regulations relating to the determination of the requirements that may be imposed in the case of payments in respect of the grants in question.
- (6) The requirements—
  - (a) which may be specified in or authorised by grant regulations as requirements which may be imposed on governing bodies to whom payments are made in respect of special purpose grant, or
  - (b) which may be imposed by the Secretary of State on a governing body to whom payments in respect of capital grant are made,may, in particular, if any conditions specified in the requirements are satisfied, require the payment to the Secretary of State of the whole or any part of the following amount.
- (7) That amount is—
  - (a) the amount of the payments made in respect of the grant, or
  - (b) so much of the value of any premises or equipment in respect of which the grant was paid as is determined in accordance with the requirements to be properly attributable to the payment of such grant,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

whichever is the greater.

- (8) No such requirement as is referred to in subsection (6) may be imposed where any payment is made in respect of capital grant if—
- (a) the grant is made in respect of the provision, alteration or repair of premises for a school, and
  - (b) any freehold interest in the premises in respect of which the grant is made is, or is to be, held on trust for the purposes of the school.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F265** S. 253 repealed (1.4.1999 for specified purposes and otherwise prosp.) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1)(3), 145(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, Sch. 31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

#### [<sup>F266</sup>254 Grants: further provisions.

- (1) The times at which, and the manner in which, payments are made in respect of—
  - (a) maintenance grant for a grant-maintained school in respect of any financial year,
  - (b) special purpose grants, and
  - (c) capital grants,
 shall be such as may be determined from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (2) Payments in respect of maintenance grant for a school in respect of any financial year may be made, before any amount has been determined in accordance with grant regulations as the amount of such grant payable for that year in respect of the school, by reference to an estimate of the amount which will be so payable made by the Secretary of State.
- (3) Where in respect of any financial year an over-payment of maintenance grant is made to the governing body of a school, a sum equal to the amount of that over-payment shall be recoverable from the governing body by the Secretary of State.
- (4) Where a sum is payable by the governing body of a school to the Secretary of State—
  - (a) in respect of an over-payment of maintenance grant in respect of a financial year, or
  - (b) by way of repayment of special purpose grant or capital grant (whether by virtue of a requirement such as is mentioned in section 253(6) or otherwise),
 the Secretary of State may (without prejudice to any other mode of recovery) recover the whole or any part of that sum by deducting it from any grant payable by him to the governing body.
- (5) In this section references to an over-payment of maintenance grant in respect of a financial year are to any amount by which the aggregate amount of any payments in respect of maintenance grant made to the governing body of the school in question in respect of the year exceeds the amount finally determined in accordance with grant regulations as the amount of maintenance grant payable for that year in respect of the school.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F266** S. 254 repealed (1.4.1999 for specified purposes and otherwise prosp.) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1)(3), 145(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Loans*

<sup>F267</sup>**255** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F267** S. 255-258 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Recovery from local funds*

<sup>F268</sup>**256** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F268** S. 255-258 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F269</sup>**257** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F269** S. 255-258 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F270</sup>**258** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F270** S. 255-258 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER VII

### ALTERATION ETC. OF GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

**F271** 259 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F271** S. 259 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12 and subject to savings by S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 14(2)(d)**)

**F272** 260 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F272** S. 260 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12 and in S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 4(1)**)

**F273** 261 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F273** S. 261 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 261(2)(4)(5) and in respect of words in s. 261(3) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **regs. 4(1), 14(2)(d)**)

**F274** 262 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F274** S. 262 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 14(2)(d)(e)**)

**F275** 263 .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F275** S. 263 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 263(4)(b) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F276** **264** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F276** S. 264 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F277** **265** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F277** S. 265 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F278** **266** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F278** S. 266 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**CHAPTER VIII**

**DISCONTINUANCE OF GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS**

*Proposals for discontinuance*

**F279** **267** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F279** S. 267 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 14(2)(f)**)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F280 **268** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F280** S. 268 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12 and in S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 6**)

F281 **269** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F281** S. 269 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 269(2)(5)(6) and in respect of words in s. 269(3) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **reg. 14(2)(f)**)

F282 **270** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F282** S. 270 repealed (1.4.1999 in respect of s. 270(2)(b)(ii) and otherwise 1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F283 **271** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F283** S. 271 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Withdrawal of grant*

F284 **272** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F284** S. 272 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F285 **273** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F285** S. 273 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Winding up and disposal of property*

F286 **274** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F286** S. 274 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 16, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F287 **275** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F287** S. 275 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 16, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F288 **276** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F288** S. 276 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 16, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F289 **277** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F289** S. 277 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 16, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F290 **278** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F290** S. 278 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 16, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F291** 279 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F291** S. 279 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in art. 16, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**CHAPTER IX**

**GROUPS OF GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS**

**F292** 280 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F292** S. 280 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F293** 281 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F293** S. 281 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F294** 282 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F294** S. 282 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F295** 283 .....



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F295** S. 283 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F296** **284** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F296** S. 284 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F297** **285** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F297** S. 285 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F298** **286** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F298** S. 286 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F299** **287** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F299** S. 287 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F300** **288** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F300** S. 288 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F301 **289** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F301** S. 289 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F302 **290** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F302** S. 290 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**, Pt. I (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**CHAPTER X**

GENERAL AND MISCELLANEOUS

*Middle schools*

F303 **291** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F303** S. 291 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Nursery education*

F304 **292** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F304** S. 292 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Further education*

F305 **293** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F305** S. 293 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Teacher training*

**F306** **294** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F306** S. 294 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Provision of benefits and services by local education authority*

**F307** **295** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F307** S. 295 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Transfer and disposal of premises*

**F308** **296** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F308** S. 296 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F309** **297** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F309** S. 297 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F310** **298** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F310** S. 298 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F311** **299** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F311** S. 299 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F312** **300** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F312** S. 300 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F313** **301** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F313** S. 301 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Modification of instruments*

**F314** **302** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F314** S. 302 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 art. 23(2), paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

**F315** **303** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F315** S. 303 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Religious opinions etc. of staff*

F316 **304** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F316** S. 304 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F317 **305** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F317** S. 305 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

F318 **306** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F318** S. 306 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*[<sup>F319</sup>Discipline]*

**Textual Amendments**

**F319** S. 306A (and the heading immediately preceding it) inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. **3(1)** (with s. 57(3)); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. II**

F320 **306A** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F320** S. 306A (and the heading immediately preceding it) inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. **3(1)** (with s. 57(3)); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. II** and repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Exclusion of pupils*

F321 **307** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F321** S. 307 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F322</sup>**307A** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F322** S. 307A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(1) (with s. 57(3)); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. IV** and repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Appeal committees*

<sup>F323</sup>**308** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F323** S. 308 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Supplementary*

<sup>F324</sup>**309** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F324** S. 309 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

<sup>F325</sup>**310** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F325** S. 310 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 5 and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, art. 20, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## Interpretation

F326 **311** .....

### Textual Amendments

**F326** S. 311 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 70, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with savings in Sch. 7 paras. 2, 5, 6, 10, 12)

## PART IV

### SPECIAL EDUCATIONAL NEEDS

#### CHAPTER I

##### CHILDREN WITH SPECIAL EDUCATIONAL NEEDS

### Introductory

#### **312 Meaning of “special educational needs” and “special educational provision” etc.**

- (1) A child has “special educational needs” for the purposes of this Act if he has a learning difficulty which calls for special educational provision to be made for him.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3) (and except for the purposes of [F327 section 15A or 15B][F328 or section 507B] ) a child has a “learning difficulty” for the purposes of this Act if—
  - (a) he has a significantly greater difficulty in learning than the majority of children of his age,
  - (b) he has a disability which either prevents or hinders him from making use of educational facilities of a kind generally provided for children of his age in schools within the area of the local education authority, or
  - (c) he is under [F329 compulsory school age] and is, or would be if special educational provision were not made for him, likely to fall within paragraph (a) or (b) when of F330 . . . that age.
- (3) A child is not to be taken as having a learning difficulty solely because the language (or form of the language) in which he is, or will be, taught is different from a language (or form of a language) which has at any time been spoken in his home.
- (4) In this Act “special educational provision” means—
  - (a) in relation to a child who has attained the age of two, educational provision which is additional to, or otherwise different from, the educational provision made generally for children of his age in schools maintained by the local education authority (other than special schools) F331 . . . , and
  - (b) in relation to a child under that age, educational provision of any kind.
- (5) In this Part—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“child” includes any person who has not attained the age of 19 and is a registered pupil at a school;

[<sup>F332</sup>“maintained school” means any community, foundation or voluntary school or any community or foundation special school not established in a hospital.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F327** Words in s. 312(2) substituted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154, **Sch. 9 para. 56** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F328** Words in s. 312(2) inserted (8.1.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(2), **Sch. 1 para. 3**
- F329** Words in s. 312(2)(c) substituted (1.8.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 23(a)**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. III**
- F330** Words in s. 312(2)(c) repealed (1.8.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1)(4), Sch. 7 para. 23(b), **Sch. 8**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. III**
- F331** Words in s. 312(4)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 71(a), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F332** Words in s. 312(5) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 71(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

### *Code of Practice*

#### **313 Code of Practice.**

- (1) The Secretary of State shall issue, and may from time to time revise, a code of practice giving practical guidance in respect of the discharge by local education authorities and the governing bodies of [<sup>F333</sup>maintained schools][<sup>F334</sup> and maintained nursery schools ] of their functions under this Part.
- (2) It shall be the duty of—
  - (a) local education authorities, and such governing bodies, exercising functions under this Part, and
  - (b) any other person exercising any function for the purpose of the discharge by local education authorities, and such governing bodies, of functions under this Part,
 to have regard to the provisions of the code.
- (3) On any appeal under this Part to the Tribunal, the Tribunal shall have regard to any provision of the code which appears to the Tribunal to be relevant to any question arising on the appeal.
- (4) The Secretary of State shall publish the code as for the time being in force.
- [<sup>F335</sup>(5) In this Part (except sections 333 to 336), “the Tribunal”, in relation to an appeal, means—
  - (a) where the local education authority concerned is in England, the Special Educational Needs and Disability Tribunal,
  - (b) where the local education authority concerned is in Wales, the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales.]



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F333** Words in s. 313(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 72** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch.1**
- F334** Words in s. 313(1) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 36** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- F335** S. 313(5) substituted (1.9.2003) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(3), **Sch. 18 para. 2** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4), Sch. 18 para. 17); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C26** S. 313(2) applied (E.) (1.2.2008) by The Education (Pupil Referral Units) (Application of Enactments) (England) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/2979), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 1**

### 314 Making and approval of code.

- (1) Where the Secretary of State proposes to issue or revise a code of practice, he shall prepare a draft of the code (or revised code).
- (2) The Secretary of State shall consult such persons about the draft as he thinks fit and shall consider any representations made by them.
- (3) If he determines to proceed with the draft (either in its original form or with such modifications as he thinks fit) he shall lay it before both Houses of Parliament.
- (4) If the draft is approved by resolution of each House, the Secretary of State shall issue the code in the form of the draft, and the code shall come into effect on such day as the Secretary of State may by order appoint.

*Special educational provision: general*

### 315 Review of arrangements.

- (1) A local education authority shall keep under review the arrangements made by them for special educational provision.
- (2) In doing so the authority shall, to the extent that it appears necessary or desirable for the purpose of co-ordinating provision for children with special educational needs, consult [<sup>F336</sup>the governing bodies of community, foundation and voluntary and community and foundation special schools [<sup>F337</sup>and maintained nursery schools ] in their area.].

#### Textual Amendments

- F336** Words in s. 315(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.73** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F337** Words in s. 315(2) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 37** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.

### [<sup>F338</sup>316 Duty to educate children with special educational needs in mainstream schools

- (1) This section applies to a child with special educational needs who should be educated in a school.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) If no statement is maintained under section 324 for the child, he must be educated in a mainstream school.
- (3) If a statement is maintained under section 324 for the child, he must be educated in a mainstream school unless that is incompatible with—
  - (a) the wishes of his parent, or
  - (b) the provision of efficient education for other children.
- (4) In this section and section 316A “mainstream school” means any school other than—
  - (a) a special school, or
  - (b) an independent school which is not—
    - (i) a city technology college,
    - (ii) a city college for the technology of the arts, or
    - (iii) [<sup>F339</sup>an Academy].]

#### Textual Amendments

**F338** Ss. 316, 316A substituted (15.6.2001 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.1.2002 for E., 21.1.2002 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002 for W.) for s. 316 by 2001 c. 10, s. 1 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, arts. 4, 5, Sch. Pts. I, II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, arts. 4, 5, Sch. Pts. I, II

**F339** Words s. 316(4)(b)(iii) substituted (26.7.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 65(3), 216(2), Sch. 7 para. 6(3) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 2

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C27** S. 316(2)(3) excluded (prosp.) by Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (c. 41), ss. 36(5)(d) (10), 162 (with s. 159)

### [<sup>F340</sup>316A] Education otherwise than in mainstream schools

- (1) Section 316 does not prevent a child from being educated in—
  - (a) an independent school which is not a mainstream school, or
  - (b) a school approved under section 342,
 if the cost is met otherwise than by a local education authority.
- (2) Section 316(2) does not require a child to be educated in a mainstream school during any period in which—
  - (a) he is admitted to a special school for the purposes of an assessment under section 323 of his educational needs and his admission to that school is with the agreement of—
    - (i) the local education authority,
    - (ii) the head teacher of the school or, if the school is in Wales, its governing body,
    - (iii) his parent, and
    - (iv) any person whose advice is to be sought in accordance with regulations made under paragraph 2 of Schedule 26;
  - (b) he remains admitted to a special school, in prescribed circumstances, following an assessment under section 323 at that school;

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) he is admitted to a special school, following a change in his circumstances, with the agreement of—
    - (i) the local education authority,
    - (ii) the head teacher of the school or, if the school is in Wales, its governing body, and
    - (iii) his parent;
  - (d) he is admitted to a community or foundation special school which is established in a hospital.
- (3) Section 316 does not affect the operation of—
- (a) section 348, or
  - (b) paragraph 3 of Schedule 27.
- (4) If a local education authority decide—
- (a) to make a statement for a child under section 324, but
  - (b) not to name in the statement the school for which a parent has expressed a preference under paragraph 3 of Schedule 27,
- they shall, in making the statement, comply with section 316(3).
- (5) A local education authority may, in relation to their mainstream schools taken as a whole, rely on the exception in section 316(3)(b) only if they show that there are no reasonable steps that they could take to prevent the incompatibility.
- (6) An authority in relation to a particular mainstream school may rely on the exception in section 316(3)(b) only if it shows that there are no reasonable steps that it or another authority in relation to the school could take to prevent the incompatibility.
- (7) The exception in section 316(3)(b) does not permit a governing body to fail to comply with the duty imposed by section 324(5)(b).
- (8) An authority must have regard to guidance about section 316 and this section issued—
- (a) for England, by the Secretary of State,
  - (b) for Wales, by the National Assembly for Wales.
- (9) That guidance shall, in particular, relate to steps which may, or may not, be regarded as reasonable for the purposes of subsections (5) and (6).
- (10) “Prescribed”, in relation to Wales, means prescribed in regulations made by the National Assembly for Wales.
- (11) “Authority”—
- (a) in relation to a maintained school [<sup>F341</sup> or maintained nursery school] , means each of the following—
    - (i) the local education authority,
    - (ii) the school’s governing body, and
  - (b) in relation to <sup>F342</sup>... a pupil referral unit, means the local education authority.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F340** Ss. 316, 316A substituted (15.6.2001 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.1.2002 for E., 21.1.2002 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002 for W.) for s. 316 by 2001 c. 10, s. 1 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, arts. 4, 5, Sch. Pts. I, II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, arts. 4, 5, Sch. Pts. I, II

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F341** Words in s. 316A(11)(a) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 21 para. 38\(a\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.

**F342** Words in s. 316A(11)(b) repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 21 para. 38\(b\)](#), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C28** [S. 316A\(2\)](#) modified (17.12.2007) by [The Harbour School Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3205\)](#), arts. 1, [3\(a\)](#), 5, 6, 10

**C29** [S. 316A\(2\)\(c\)](#) modified (temp.) (1.10.2007) by [The New Woodlands School Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2599\)](#), arts. 1, [3\(a\)](#) (with arts. 4, 8)

**317 Duties of governing body or LEA in relation to pupils with special educational needs.**

- (1) [<sup>F343</sup>The governing body of a community, foundation or voluntary school or a maintained nursery school shall] —
- (a) use their best endeavours, in exercising their functions in relation to the school, to secure that, if any registered pupil has special educational needs, the special educational provision which his learning difficulty calls for is made,
  - (b) secure that, where the responsible person has been informed by the local education authority that a registered pupil has special educational needs, those needs are made known to all who are likely to teach him, and
  - (c) secure that the teachers in the school are aware of the importance of identifying, and providing for, those registered pupils who have special educational needs.

[<sup>F344</sup>(2) In subsection (1)(b) “the responsible person” means the head teacher or the appropriate governor (that is, the chairman of the governing body or, where the governing body have designated another governor for the purposes of this subsection, that other governor).]

- (3) To the extent that it appears necessary or desirable for the purpose of co-ordinating provision for children with special educational needs—
- (a) the governing bodies of [<sup>F345</sup>community, foundation and voluntary schools][<sup>F346</sup>and maintained nursery schools ] shall, in exercising functions relating to the provision for such children, consult the local education authority <sup>F347</sup> . . . and the governing bodies of other such schools, <sup>F348</sup> . . .
  - <sup>F348</sup>(b) . . . . .

[<sup>F349</sup>(3A) The governing body of a community, foundation or voluntary school or a maintained nursery school shall designate a member of the staff at the school (to be known as the “special educational needs co-ordinator”) as having responsibility for co-ordinating the provision for pupils with special educational needs.

(3B) Regulations may—

- (a) require the governing bodies of schools falling within subsection (3A) to ensure that special educational needs co-ordinators have prescribed qualifications or prescribed experience (or both), and
- (b) confer on the governing bodies of those schools other functions relating to special educational needs co-ordinators.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) Where a child who has special educational needs is being educated in [F350 a community, foundation or voluntary school] or a maintained nursery school, those concerned with making special educational provision for the child shall secure, so far as is reasonably practicable and is compatible with—
- (a) the child receiving the special educational provision which his learning difficulty calls for,
  - (b) the provision of efficient education for the children with whom he will be educated, and
  - (c) the efficient use of resources,
- that the child engages in the activities of the school together with children who do not have special educational needs.
- [F351 (5) The governing body of a community, foundation or voluntary school, a maintained nursery school, or a community or foundation special school shall—
- (a) in the case of a school in England, prepare a report containing special needs information, and
  - (b) in the case of a school in Wales, include special needs information in the report prepared under section 30(1) of the Education Act 2002 (governors' report).
- (6) In subsection (5) “special needs information” means—
- (a) such information as may be prescribed about the implementation of the governing body's policy for pupils with special educational needs, and
  - (b) information as to—
    - (i) the arrangements for the admission of disabled persons as pupils at the school,
    - (ii) the steps taken to prevent disabled pupils from being treated less favourably than other pupils,
    - (iii) the facilities provided to assist access to the school by disabled pupils, and
    - (iv) the plan prepared by the governing body under section 28D of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (“the 1995 Act”).
- (6A) In subsection (6)(b) “disabled person” means a person who is a disabled person for the purposes of the 1995 Act; and section 28Q of the 1995 Act (interpretation) applies for the purposes of subsection (6)(b) as it applies for the purposes of Chapter 1 of Part 4 of that Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F343** Words in s. 317(1) substituted (1.9.2003 for E.; 31.10.2005 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), s. 216\(4\), Sch. 21 para. 39\(2\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- F344** S. 317(2) substituted (1.9.2003 for E.; 31.10.2005 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), s. 216\(4\), Sch. 21 para. 39\(3\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- F345** Words in s. 317(3)(a) substituted (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\), Sch. 30 para. 74\(4\)\(a\)\(i\)](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)](#)) S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)
- F346** Words in s. 317(3)(a) inserted (1.9.2003 for E.; 31.10.2005 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), s. 216\(4\), Sch. 21 para. 39\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- F347** Words in s. 317(3)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\)\(3\), Sch. 30 para. 74\(4\)\(a\)\(ii\), Sch. 31](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)](#)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F348** S. 317(3)(b) and word repealed (1.9.2003 for E.; 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 39(4)(b), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- F349** S. 317(3A)(3B) inserted (8.1.2007 for E.) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), **ss. 173, 188(3)**; S.I. 2006/3400, art. 2(c)
- F350** Words in s. 317(4) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 74(5)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F351** S. 317(5)-(6A) substituted for s. 317(5)-(7A) (1.9.2005) by Education Act 2005 (c. 18), s. 125(4), **Sch. 18 para. 2** (with s. 119); S.I. 2005/2034, art. 5 (with Sch. para. 2)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C30** S. 317 modified (5.11.2004) by The New Relationship with Schools (Governors Annual Report) Order 2004 (S.I. 2004/2683), arts. 1(1), **3**
- C31** S. 317(1) modified (31.3.2004) by The Blackburn with Darwen (Maintained Nursery School Governance) Order 2004 (S.I. 2004/657), arts. 1(1), **3(a)**
- C32** S. 317(1)-(3) applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.2.2008) by The Education (Pupil Referral Units) (Application of Enactments) (England) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/2979), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 2**
- C33** S. 317(4) applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.2.2008) by The Education (Pupil Referral Units) (Application of Enactments) (England) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/2979), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 2**
- C34** S. 317(5) modified (1.12.2004) by The New Relationship with Schools (Governors Annual Report) (No 2) Order 2004 (S.I. 2004/2810), arts. 1(1), **3(a)**

#### Commencement Information

- II** S. 317 wholly in force; s. 317(1)-(5)(7) in force at 1.11.1996 see s. 583(3)(5); s. 317(6) in force at 1.1.1997 by S.I. 1996/2904, **art. 2**

### [<sup>F352</sup>317A] **Duty to inform parent where special educational provision made**

- (1) This section applies if—
- (a) a child for whom no statement is maintained under section 324 is a registered pupil at—
    - (i) a community, foundation or voluntary school [<sup>F353</sup> or a maintained nursery school] , or
    - (ii) a pupil referral unit,
  - (b) special educational provision is made for him at the school because it is considered that he has special educational needs, and
  - (c) his parent has not previously been informed under this section of special educational provision made for him at the school.
- (2) If the school is a pupil referral unit, the local education authority must secure that the head teacher informs the child's parent that special educational provision is being made for him at the school because it is considered that he has special educational needs.
- (3) In any other case, the governing body must inform the child's parent that special educational provision is being made for him there because it is considered that he has special educational needs.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F352** S. 317A inserted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 7(1) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, **art. 5, Sch. Pt. II**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F353** Words in s. 317A(1)(a)(i) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 21 para. 40](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C35** S. 317A(1) modified (31.3.2004) by [The Blackburn with Darwen \(Maintained Nursery School Governance\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/657\)](#), arts. 1(1), [3\(a\)](#)

**318 Provision of goods and services in connection with special educational needs.**

- (1) A local education authority may, for the purpose only of assisting—
- (a) the governing bodies of [<sup>F354</sup>community, foundation or voluntary schools][<sup>F355</sup>or maintained nursery schools] (in their or any other area) in the performance of the governing bodies' duties under section 317(1)(a), or
  - (b) the governing bodies of [<sup>F354</sup>community or foundation special schools] (in their or any other area) in the performance of the governing bodies' duties, supply goods or services to those bodies.
- (2) The terms on which goods or services are supplied by local education authorities under [<sup>F356</sup>this section to the governing bodies of community, foundation or voluntary schools [<sup>F357</sup>, maintained nursery schools ] or community or foundation special schools in any other area] may, in such circumstances as may be prescribed, include such terms as to payment as may be prescribed.
- <sup>F358</sup>[(3) A local education authority [<sup>F359</sup>in England] may supply goods and services to any authority [<sup>F359</sup>in England] or other person (other than a governing body within subsection (1)) for the purpose only of assisting them in making for any child to whom subsection (3A) applies any special educational provision which any learning difficulty of the child calls for.
- (3A) This subsection applies to any child—
- (a) who is [<sup>F360</sup>receiving relevant early years education] within the meaning of section 123 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, <sup>F361</sup>...
  - <sup>F361</sup>(b) .....]
- <sup>F362</sup>(3B) A local education authority in Wales may supply goods and services to any authority in Wales or other person (other than a governing body within subsection(1)) for the purpose of assisting them in making for a child any special educational provision which any learning difficulty of the child calls for.]
- (4) This section is without prejudice to the generality of any other power of local education authorities to supply goods or services.

**Textual Amendments**

**F354** Words in s. 318(1)(a)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\), Sch. 30 para. 75\(2\)\(a\)\(b\)](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)

**F355** Words in s. 318(1) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 21 para. 41\(2\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.

**F356** Words in s. 318(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\), Sch. 30 para. 75\(3\)](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F357** Words in s. 318(2) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 41(3)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- F358** S. 318(3)(3A) substituted (1.10.1998) for s. 318(3) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 75(4)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. I**
- F359** S. 318(3): words inserted (19.12.2002) after the word "authority" by virtue of Education Act 2002 (c. 32), **ss. 194(2)(a), 216(3)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 4**, Sch. Pt. 1
- F360** Words in s. 318(3A)(a) substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), s. 109(2), **Sch. 2 para. 21**; S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)
- F361** S. 318(3A)(b) repealed (1.4.2003 for E., 2.1.2008 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1
- F362** S. 318(3B) inserted (19.12.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), **ss. 194(2)(b), 216(3)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 4**, Sch. Pt. 1

### **319 Special educational provision otherwise than in schools.**

- (1) Where a local education authority are satisfied that it would be inappropriate for—
- (a) the special educational provision which a learning difficulty of a child in their area calls for, or
  - (b) any part of any such provision,
- to be made in a school, they may arrange for the provision (or, as the case may be, for that part of it) to be made otherwise than in a school.
- (2) Before making an arrangement under this section, a local education authority shall consult the child's parent.

### **320 Provision outside England and Wales for certain children.**

- (1) A local education authority may make such arrangements as they think fit to enable a child for whom they maintain a statement under section 324 to attend an institution outside England and Wales which specialises in providing for children with special needs.
- (2) In subsection (1) "children with special needs" means children who have particular needs which would be special educational needs if those children were in England and Wales.
- (3) Where a local education authority make arrangements under this section in respect of a child, those arrangements may in particular include contributing to or paying—
- (a) fees charged by the institution,
  - (b) expenses reasonably incurred in maintaining him while he is at the institution or travelling to or from it,
  - (c) his travelling expenses, and
  - (d) expenses reasonably incurred by any person accompanying him while he is travelling or staying at the institution.
- (4) This section is without prejudice to any other powers of a local education authority.



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Identification and assessment of children with special educational needs*

#### **321 General duty of local education authority towards children for whom they are responsible.**

- (1) A local education authority shall exercise their powers with a view to securing that, of the children for whom they are responsible, they identify those to whom subsection (2) below applies.
- (2) This subsection applies to a child if—
  - (a) he has special educational needs, and
  - (b) it is necessary for the authority to determine the special educational provision which any learning difficulty he may have calls for.
- (3) For the purposes of this Part a local education authority are responsible for a child if he is in their area and—
  - (a) he is a registered pupil at a [<sup>F363</sup>maintained school][<sup>F364</sup> or maintained nursery school] ,
  - <sup>F365</sup>[(b) education is provided for him at a school which is not a maintained school [<sup>F364</sup> or maintained nursery school] but is so provided at the expense of the authority,]
  - (c) he does not come within paragraph (a) or (b) above but is a registered pupil at a school and has been brought to the authority's attention as having (or probably having) special educational needs, or
  - (d) he is not a registered pupil at a school but is not under the age of two or over compulsory school age and has been brought to their attention as having (or probably having) special educational needs.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F363** Words in s. 321(3)(a) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 76(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. 1

**F364** Words in s. 321(3)(a)(b) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 42** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.

**F365** S. 321(3)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 76(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### **322 Duty of Health Authority or local authority to help local education authority.**

- (1) Where it appears to a local education authority that any [<sup>F366</sup>Local Health Board][<sup>F367</sup>Primary Care Trust] or local authority could, by taking any specified action, help in the exercise of any of their functions under this Part, they may request the help of the [<sup>F368</sup>board,] authority [<sup>F367</sup> or trust], specifying the action in question.
- (2) An authority [<sup>F369</sup>, a board][<sup>F370</sup> or a trust] whose help is so requested shall comply with the request unless—
  - (a) they consider that the help requested is not necessary for the purpose of the exercise by the local education authority of those functions, or
  - (b) subsection (3) applies.
- (3) This subsection applies—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in the case of a [<sup>F371</sup>Local Health Board][<sup>F372</sup>or Primary Care Trust], if that [<sup>F373</sup>board][<sup>F372</sup>or trust] consider that, having regard to the resources available to them for the purpose of the exercise of their functions under the <sup>M4</sup>[<sup>F374</sup>National Health Service Act 2006 or the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006], it is not reasonable for them to comply with the request, or
- (b) in the case of a local authority, if that authority consider that the request is not compatible with their own statutory or other duties and obligations or unduly prejudices the discharge of any of their functions.
- (4) Regulations may provide that, where an authority [<sup>F375</sup>, a board][<sup>F376</sup>or a trust] are under a duty by virtue of subsection (2) to comply with a request to help a local education authority in the making of an assessment under section 323 or a statement under section 324 of this Act, they must, subject to prescribed exceptions, comply with the request within the prescribed period.
- (5) In this section “local authority” means a county council, a county borough council, a district council (other than one for an area for which there is a county council), a London borough council or the Common Council of the City of London.

#### Textual Amendments

- F366** Words in s. 322(1) substituted (1.4.2007) by [The References to Health Authorities Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/961\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 26(2)(a)**
- F367** Words in s. 322(1) inserted (8.2.2000) by [S.I. 2000/90](#), art. 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 32(2)(a)(i)(ii)** (with s. 2(5))
- F368** Words in s. 322(1) inserted (1.4.2007) by [The References to Health Authorities Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/961\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 26(2)(a)**
- F369** Words in s. 322(2) inserted (1.4.2007) by [The References to Health Authorities Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/961\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 26(2)(b)**
- F370** Words in s. 322(2) inserted (8.2.2000) by [S.I. 2000/90](#), art. 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 32(2)(b)** (with s. 2(5))
- F371** Words in s. 322(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2007) by [The References to Health Authorities Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/961\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 26(2)(c)**
- F372** Words in s. 322(3)(a) inserted (8.2.2000) by [S.I. 2000/90](#), art. 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 32(2)(c)(i)(ii)** (with s. 2(5))
- F373** Word in s. 322(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2007) by [The References to Health Authorities Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/961\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 26(2)(c)**
- F374** Words in s. 322(3)(a) substituted (1.3.2007) by [National Health Service \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 2006 \(c. 43\)](#), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 182** (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)
- F375** Words in s. 322(4) inserted (1.4.2007) by [The References to Health Authorities Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/961\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 26(2)(d)**
- F376** Words in s. 322(4) inserted (8.2.2000) by [S.I. 2000/90](#), art. 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 32(2)(d)** (with 2(5))

#### Marginal Citations

- M4** 1977 c. 49.

### 323 Assessment of educational needs.

- (1) Where a local education authority are of the opinion that a child for whom they are responsible falls, or probably falls, within subsection (2), they shall serve a notice on the child’s parent informing him—
- (a) that they [<sup>F377</sup>are considering whether] to make an assessment of the child’s educational needs,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) of the procedure to be followed in making the assessment,
  - (c) of the name of the officer of the authority from whom further information may be obtained, and
  - (d) of the parent's right to make representations, and submit written evidence, to the authority within such period (which must not be less than 29 days beginning with the date on which the notice is served) as may be specified in the notice.
- (2) A child falls within this subsection if—
- (a) he has special educational needs, and
  - (b) it is necessary for the authority to determine the special educational provision which any learning difficulty he may have calls for.
- (3) Where—
- (a) a local education authority have served a notice under subsection (1) and the period specified in the notice in accordance with subsection (1)(d) has expired, and
  - (b) the authority remain of the opinion, after taking into account any representations made and any evidence submitted to them in response to the notice, that the child falls, or probably falls, within subsection (2),
- they shall make an assessment of his educational needs.
- (4) Where a local education authority decide to make an assessment under this section, they shall give notice in writing to the child's parent of that decision and of their reasons for making it.
- (5) Schedule 26 has effect in relation to the making of assessments under this section.
- (6) Where, at any time after serving a notice under subsection (1), a local education authority decide not to assess the educational needs of the child concerned they shall give notice in writing to the child's parent of their decision.

#### Textual Amendments

**F377** Words in s. 323(1)(a) substituted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 42(1), Sch. 8 para. 11(1) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

### 324 Statement of special educational needs.

- (1) If, in the light of an assessment under section 323 of any child's educational needs and of any representations made by the child's parent in pursuance of Schedule 27, it is necessary for the local education authority to determine the special educational provision which any learning difficulty he may have calls for, the authority shall make and maintain a statement of his special educational needs.
- (2) The statement shall be in such form and contain such information as may be prescribed.
- (3) In particular, the statement shall—
- (a) give details of the authority's assessment of the child's special educational needs, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) specify the special educational provision to be made for the purpose of meeting those needs, including the particulars required by subsection (4).
- (4) The statement shall—
- (a) specify the type of school or other institution which the local education authority consider would be appropriate for the child,
  - (b) if they are not required under Schedule 27 to specify the name of any school in the statement, specify the name of any school or institution (whether in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) which they consider would be appropriate for the child and should be specified in the statement, and
  - (c) specify any provision for the child for which they make arrangements under section 319 and which they consider should be specified in the statement.
- [<sup>F378</sup>(4A) Subsection (4)(b) does not require the name of a school or institution to be specified if the child’s parent has made suitable arrangements for the special educational provision specified in the statement to be made for the child.]
- (5) Where a local education authority maintain a statement under this section, then—
- (a) unless the child’s parent has made suitable arrangements, the authority—
    - (i) shall arrange that the special educational provision specified in the statement is made for the child, and
    - (ii) may arrange that any non-educational provision specified in the statement is made for him in such manner as they consider appropriate, and
  - (b) if the name of a [<sup>F379</sup>maintained school][<sup>F380</sup> or maintained nursery school] is specified in the statement, the governing body of the school shall admit the child to the school.
- [<sup>F381</sup>(5A) Subsection (5)(b) has effect regardless of any duty imposed on the governing body of a school by section 1(6) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.]
- (6) Subsection (5)(b) does not affect any power to exclude from a school a pupil who is already a registered pupil there.
- (7) Schedule 27 has effect in relation to the making and maintenance of statements under this section.

#### Textual Amendments

- F378** S. 324(4A) inserted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E., 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 9, 43(4)(c) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F379** Words in s. 324(5)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), Sch. 30 para. 77(a) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F380** Words in s. 324(5)(b) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 43 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- F381** S. 324(5A) inserted (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1), 145(3), Sch. 30 para. 77(b) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C36** S. 324(5)(b)(5A) applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, 2-8  
S. 324(5)(b)(5A) applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(a), 2-8

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C37** S. 324(5)(b)(5A) applied (with modifications) (E.) (8.5.2003) by [The New School \(Admissions\) \(England\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1041\)](#), regs. 1(1), 9, **Sch. para. 1(a)**
- C38** S. 324(5)(b) applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.2.2006) by [The New School \(Admissions\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/175\)](#), regs. 1(1), 9, **Sch.** (with reg. 2(2))
- C39** S. 324(5A) applied (with modifications) (E.) (8.5.2003) by [The New School \(Admissions\) \(England\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1041\)](#), regs. 1(1), 9, **Sch. para. 1(a)**
- C40** S. 324(5A) applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.2.2006) by [The New School \(Admissions\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/175\)](#), regs. 1(1), 9, **Sch.** (with reg. 2(2))

### **325 Appeal against decision not to make statement.**

- (1) If, after making an assessment under section 323 of the educational needs of any child for whom no statement is maintained under section 324, the local education authority do not propose to make such a statement, they shall give notice in writing of their decision,<sup>F382</sup> . . . to the child's parent.
  - (2) In such a case, the child's parent may appeal to the Tribunal against the decision.
- [<sup>F383</sup>(2A) A notice under subsection (1) must inform the parent of the right of appeal under subsection (2) and contain such other information as may be prescribed.
- (2B) Regulations may provide that where a local education authority are under a duty under this section to serve any notice, the duty must be performed within the prescribed period.]
- (3) On an appeal under this section, the Tribunal may—
    - (a) dismiss the appeal,
    - (b) order the local education authority to make and maintain such a statement, or
    - (c) remit the case to the authority for them to reconsider whether, having regard to any observations made by the Tribunal, it is necessary for the authority to determine the special educational provision which any learning difficulty the child may have calls for.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F382** Words in s. 325(1) repealed (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by [2001 c. 10, ss. 42\(1\)\(6\), 43\(4\)\(e\), Sch. 8 para. 6\(1\), Sch. 9 \(with s. 43\(13\)\); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#) (as amended by [S.I. 2001/2614 art. 4](#)); [S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)
- F383** Ss. 325(2A)(2B) inserted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by [2001 c. 10, s. 42\(1\), 43\(4\)\(e\), Sch. 8 para. 6\(2\) \(with s. 43\(13\)\); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#) (as amended by [2001/2614 art. 4](#)); [S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)

### **326 Appeal against contents of statement.**

- [<sup>F384</sup>(1) The parent of a child for whom a local education authority maintain a statement under section 324 may appeal to the Tribunal—
- (a) when the statement is first made,
  - (b) if an amendment is made to the statement, or
  - (c) if, after conducting an assessment under section 323, the local education authority determine not to amend the statement.
- (1A) An appeal under this section may be against any of the following—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the description in the statement of the local education authority’s assessment of the child’s special educational needs,
  - (b) the special educational provision specified in the statement (including the name of a school so specified),
  - (c) if no school is specified in the statement, that fact.]
- (2) Subsection (1)(b) does not apply where the amendment is made in pursuance of—
- (a) paragraph 8 (change of named school) or 11(3)(b) (amendment ordered by Tribunal) of Schedule 27, or
  - (b) directions under section 442 (revocation of school attendance order);
- and subsection (1)(c) does not apply to a determination made following the service of notice under [<sup>F385</sup>paragraph 2A] (amendment by LEA) of Schedule 27 of a proposal to amend the statement.
- (3) On an appeal under this section, the Tribunal may—
- (a) dismiss the appeal,
  - (b) order the authority to amend the statement, so far as it describes the authority’s assessment of the child’s special educational needs or specifies the special educational provision, and make such other consequential amendments to the statement as the Tribunal think fit, or
  - (c) order the authority to cease to maintain the statement.
- (4) On an appeal under this section the Tribunal shall not order the local education authority to specify the name of any school in the statement (either in substitution for an existing name or in a case where no school is named) unless—
- (a) the parent has expressed a preference for the school in pursuance of arrangements under paragraph 3 (choice of school) of Schedule 27, or
  - (b) in the proceedings the parent, the local education authority, or both have proposed the school.
- (5) Before determining any appeal under this section the Tribunal may, with the agreement of the parties, correct any deficiency in the statement.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F384** S. 326(1)(1A) substituted (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 19** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

**F385** Words in s. 326(2) substituted (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 20** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C41** S. 326(3) restricted (prosp.) by **Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (c. 41), ss. 36(6), 162** (with s. 159)

#### [<sup>F386</sup>**326A**Unopposed appeals

- (1) This section applies if—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the parent of a child has appealed to the Tribunal under section 325, 328, 329 or 329A or paragraph 8(3) of Schedule 27 against a decision of a local education authority, and
  - (b) the authority notifies the Tribunal that they have determined that they will not, or will no longer, oppose the appeal.
- (2) The appeal is to be treated as having been determined in favour of the appellant.
- (3) If an appeal is treated as determined in favour of the appellant as a result of subsection (2), the Tribunal is not required to make any order.
- (4) Before the end of the prescribed period, the authority must—
  - (a) in the case of an appeal under section 325, make a statement under section 324 of the child’s educational needs,
  - (b) in the case of an appeal under section 328, 329 or 329A, make an assessment of the child’s educational needs,
  - (c) in the case of an appeal under paragraph 8(3) of Schedule 27 against a determination of the authority not to comply with the parent’s request, comply with the request.
- (5) An authority required by subsection (4)(a) to make a statement under section 324 must maintain the statement under that section.
- <sup>F387</sup>(6) In this section, “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations made—
  - (a) in relation to an appeal to the Special Educational Needs and Disability Tribunal, by the Secretary of State,
  - (b) in relation to an appeal to the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales, by the National Assembly for Wales.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F386** S. 326A inserted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 5, 43(4)(b) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

**F387** S. 326A(6) substituted (1.9.2003) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(3), Sch. 18 para. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4), Sch. 18 para. 17); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

### 327 Access for local education authority to certain schools.

- (1) This section applies where—
  - (a) a local education authority maintain a statement for a child under section 324, and
  - <sup>F388</sup>(b) in pursuance of the statement education is provided for the child at a school maintained by another local education authority [<sup>F389</sup>or at an independent school] .]
- (2) Any person authorised by the local education authority shall be entitled to have access at any reasonable time to the premises of any such school for the purpose of monitoring the special educational provision made in pursuance of the statement for the child at the school.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F388** S. 327(1)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) for s. 327(1)(b)(i)-(iii) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.78** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F389** Words in s. 327(1)(b) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 173, 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

## 328 Reviews of educational needs.

- (1) Regulations may prescribe the frequency with which assessments under section 323 are to be repeated in respect of children for whom statements are maintained under section 324.
- (2) Where—
  - (a) the parent of a child for whom a statement is maintained under section 324 asks the local education authority to arrange for an assessment to be made in respect of the child under section 323,
  - (b) no such assessment has been made within the period of six months ending with the date on which the request is made, and
  - (c) it is necessary for the authority to make a further assessment under section 323, the authority shall comply with the request.
- (3) If in any case where subsection (2)(a) and (b) applies the authority determine not to comply with the request—
  - (a) they shall give [<sup>F390</sup>notice in writing of that fact] to the child’s parent, and
  - (b) the parent may appeal to the Tribunal against the determination.
- [<sup>F391</sup>(3A) A notice under subsection (3)(a) must inform the parent of the right of appeal under subsection (3)(b) and contain such other information as may be prescribed.
- (3B) Regulations may provide that where a local education authority are under a duty under this section to serve any notice, the duty must be performed within the prescribed period.]
- (4) On an appeal under subsection (3) the Tribunal may—
  - (a) dismiss the appeal, or
  - (b) order the authority to arrange for an assessment to be made in respect of the child under section 323.
- (5) A statement under section 324 shall be reviewed by the local education authority—
  - (a) on the making of an assessment in respect of the child concerned under section 323, and
  - (b) in any event, within the period of 12 months beginning with the making of the statement or, as the case may be, with the previous review.
- (6) Regulations may make provision—
  - (a) as to the manner in which reviews of such statements are to be conducted,
  - (b) as to the participation in such reviews of such persons as may be prescribed, and
  - (c) in connection with such other matters relating to such reviews as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F390** Words in s. 328(3)(a) substituted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1), 43(4)(e), Sch. 8 para 7(1) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F391** S. 328(3A)(3B) inserted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1), 43(4)(e), Sch. 8 para. 7(2) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

### 329 Assessment of educational needs at request of child's parent.

(1) Where—

- (a) the parent of a child for whom a local education authority are responsible but for whom no statement is maintained under section 324 asks the authority to arrange for an assessment to be made in respect of the child under section 323,
- (b) no such assessment has been made within the period of six months ending with the date on which the request is made, and
- (c) it is necessary for the authority to make an assessment under that section, the authority shall comply with the request.

(2) If in any case where subsection (1)(a) and (b) applies the authority determine not to comply with the request—

- (a) they shall give [<sup>F392</sup>notice in writing of that fact] to the child's parent, and
- (b) the parent may appeal to the Tribunal against the determination.

[<sup>F393</sup>(2A) A notice under subsection (2)(a) must inform the parent of the right of appeal under subsection (2)(b) and contain such other information as may be prescribed.]

(3) On an appeal under subsection (2) the Tribunal may—

- (a) dismiss the appeal, or
- (b) order the authority to arrange for an assessment to be made in respect of the child under section 323.

#### Textual Amendments

- F392** Words in s. 329(2)(a) inserted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1), 43(4)(e), Sch. 8 para. 8(1) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F393** S. 329(2A) inserted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1), 43(4)(e), Sch. 8 para. 8(2) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

### [<sup>F394</sup>329A Review or assessment of educational needs at request of responsible body

(1) This section applies if—

- (a) a child is a registered pupil at a relevant school (whether or not he is a child in respect of whom a statement is maintained under section 324),
- (b) the responsible body asks the local education authority to arrange for an assessment to be made in respect of him under section 323, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) no such assessment has been made within the period of six months ending with the date on which the request is made.
- (2) If it is necessary for the authority to make an assessment or further assessment under section 323, they must comply with the request.
- (3) Before deciding whether to comply with the request, the authority must serve on the child's parent a notice informing him—
  - (a) that they are considering whether to make an assessment of the child's educational needs,
  - (b) of the procedure to be followed in making the assessment,
  - (c) of the name of their officer from whom further information may be obtained, and
  - (d) of the parent's right to make representations, and submit written evidence, to them before the end of the period specified in the notice ("the specified period").
- (4) The specified period must not be less than 29 days beginning with the date on which the notice is served.
- (5) The authority may not decide whether to comply with the request until the specified period has expired.
- (6) The authority must take into account any representations made, and any evidence submitted, to them in response to the notice.
- (7) If, as a result of this section, a local education authority decide to make an assessment under section 323, they must give written notice to the child's parent and to the responsible body which made the request, of the decision and of their reasons for making it.
- (8) If, after serving a notice under subsection (3), the authority decide not to assess the educational needs of the child—
  - (a) they must give written notice of the decision and of their reasons for making it to his parent and to the responsible body which made the request, and
  - (b) the parent may appeal to the Tribunal against the decision.
- (9) A notice given under subsection (8)(a) to the child's parent must—
  - (a) inform the parent of his right to appeal, and
  - (b) contain such other information (if any) as may be prescribed.
- (10) On an appeal under subsection (8) the Tribunal may—
  - (a) dismiss it, or
  - (b) order the authority to arrange for an assessment to be made in respect of the child under section 323.
- (11) This section applies to a child for whom [<sup>F395</sup>relevant early years education] is provided as it applies to a child who is a registered pupil at a relevant school.
- (12) "Relevant school" means—
  - (a) a maintained school,
  - (b) a maintained nursery school,
  - (c) a pupil referral unit,
  - (d) an independent school,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (e) a school approved under section 342.
- (13) “The responsible body” means—
  - (a) in relation to <sup>F396</sup> ... a pupil referral unit, the head teacher,
  - (b) in relation to any other relevant school, the proprietor or head teacher, and
  - (c) in relation to a provider of relevant [<sup>F397</sup>early years] education, the person or body of persons responsible for the management of the provision of that [<sup>F397</sup>early years] education.
- [<sup>F398</sup>(14) “Relevant early years education”—
  - (a) in relation to England, has the same meaning as it has (in relation to England) in section 123 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 except that it does not include early years education provided by a local education authority at a maintained nursery school for a pupil at the school;
  - (b) in relation to Wales, has the same meaning as it has (in relation to Wales) in section 123 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 except that it does not include early years education provided by a local education authority at a maintained nursery school.]
- (15) “Prescribed”, in relation to Wales, means prescribed in regulations made by the National Assembly for Wales.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F394** S. 329A inserted (15.6.2001 for certain purposes and 1.1.2002 otherwise for E., 21.1.2002 for certain purposes and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, s. 8 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, arts. 4, 5, Sch. Pts. I, II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, arts. 4, 5, Sch. Pts. I, II
- F395** Words in s. 329A(11) substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), s. 109(2), Sch. 2 para. 22(2); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)
- F396** Words in s. 329A(13)(a) repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 44, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- F397** Words in s. 329A(13)(c) substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), s. 109(2), Sch. 2 para. 22(3); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)
- F398** S. 329A(14) substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), s. 109(2), Sch. 2 para. 22(4); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C42** S. 329A modified (prosp.) by Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (c. 41), ss. 36(9)(b), 162 (with s. 159)
- C43** S. 329A(13)(a) modified (31.3.2004) by The Blackburn with Darwen (Maintained Nursery School Governance) Order 2004 (S.I. 2004/657), arts. 1(1), 3(a)

330

.....

331 **Assessment of educational needs of children under two.**

- (1) Where a local education authority are of the opinion that a child in their area who is under the age of two falls, or probably falls, within subsection (2)—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) they may, with the consent of his parent, make an assessment of the child's educational needs, and
  - (b) they shall make such an assessment if requested to do so by his parent.
- (2) A child falls within this subsection if—
- (a) he has special educational needs, and
  - (b) it is necessary for the authority to determine the special educational provision which any learning difficulty he may have calls for.
- (3) An assessment under this section shall be made in such manner as the authority consider appropriate.
- (4) After making an assessment under this section, the authority—
- (a) may make a statement of the child's special educational needs, and
  - (b) may maintain that statement,
- in such manner as they consider appropriate.

### **332 Duty of [<sup>F399</sup>Local Health Board] or National Health Service trust to notify parent etc.**

- (1) This section applies where a [<sup>F400</sup>Local Health Board][<sup>F401</sup>, a Primary Care Trust][<sup>F402</sup>, a National Health Service trust or an NHS foundation trust], in the course of exercising any of their functions in relation to a child who is under [<sup>F403</sup>compulsory school age], form the opinion that he has (or probably has) special educational needs.
- (2) The [<sup>F404</sup>Board] or trust—
- (a) shall inform the child's parent of their opinion and of their duty under paragraph (b), and
  - (b) after giving the parent an opportunity to discuss that opinion with an officer of the [<sup>F404</sup>Board] or trust, shall bring it to the attention of the appropriate local education authority.
- (3) If the [<sup>F405</sup>Board] or trust are of the opinion that a particular voluntary organisation is likely to be able to give the parent advice or assistance in connection with any special educational needs that the child may have, they shall inform the parent accordingly.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F399** Words in s. 332 heading substituted (1.4.2007) by [The References to Health Authorities Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/961\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 26(3)(a)**
- F400** Words in s. 332(1) substituted (1.4.2007) by [The References to Health Authorities Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/961\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 26(3)(a)**
- F401** Words in s. 332(1) inserted (8.2.2000) by [S.I. 2000/90](#), art. 3(1), **Sch. 1 para. 32(3)** (with s. 2(5))
- F402** Words in s. 332(1) substituted (1.4.2004) by [Health and Social Care \(Community Health and Standards\) Act 2003 \(c. 43\)](#), s. 199(1)(4), **Sch. 4 para. 105**; [S.I. 2004/759](#), art. 2
- F403** Words in s. 332(1) substituted (1.8.1998) by [1997 c. 44](#), s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 24**; [S.I. 1998/386](#), art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. III**
- F404** Word in s. 332(2) substituted (1.4.2007) by [The References to Health Authorities Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/961\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 26(3)(b)**
- F405** Word in s. 332(3) substituted (1.4.2007) by [The References to Health Authorities Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/961\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. para. 26(3)(b)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## *F<sup>406</sup> General duties of local education authorities*

### **Textual Amendments**

**F406** S. 332A and preceding cross-heading inserted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 2 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

### **332A Advice and information for parents**

- (1) A local education authority must arrange for the parent of any child in their area with special educational needs to be provided with advice and information about matters relating to those needs.
- (2) In making the arrangements, the authority must have regard to any guidance given—
  - (a) for England, by the Secretary of State,
  - (b) for Wales, by the National Assembly for Wales.
- (3) The authority must take such steps as they consider appropriate for making the services provided under subsection (1) known to—
  - (a) the parents of children in their area,
  - (b) the head teachers and proprietors of schools in their area, and
  - (c) such other persons as they consider appropriate.

### ***F<sup>407</sup>* 332B Resolution of disputes**

- (1) A local education authority must make arrangements with a view to avoiding or resolving disagreements between authorities (on the one hand) and parents of children in their area (on the other) about the exercise by authorities of functions under this Part.
- (2) A local education authority must also make arrangements with a view to avoiding or resolving, in each relevant school, disagreements between the parents of a relevant child and the proprietor of the school about the special educational provision made for that child.
- (3) The arrangements must provide for the appointment of independent persons with the function of facilitating the avoidance or resolution of such disagreements.
- (4) In making the arrangements, the authority must have regard to any guidance given—
  - (a) for England, by the Secretary of State,
  - (b) for Wales, by the National Assembly for Wales.
- (5) The authority must take such steps as they consider appropriate for making the arrangements made under subsections (1) and (2) known to—
  - (a) the parents of children in their area,
  - (b) the head teachers and proprietors of schools in their area, and
  - (c) such other persons as they consider appropriate.
- (6) The arrangements cannot affect the entitlement of a parent to appeal to the Tribunal.
- (7) In this section—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“authorities” means the governing bodies of maintained schools and the local education authority,

“relevant child” means a child who has special educational needs and is a registered pupil at a relevant school.

- (8) For the purposes of this section a school is a relevant school in relation to a child if it is—
- (a) a maintained school or a maintained nursery school,
  - (b) a pupil referral unit,
  - (c) a city technology college, a city college for the technology of the arts or [<sup>F408</sup>an Academy] ,
  - (d) an independent school named in the statement maintained for the child under section 324, or
  - (e) a school approved under section 342.]]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F407** S. 332B inserted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 3 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

**F408** Words in s. 332B(8)(c) substituted (25.5.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(3), Sch. 3 para. 8; S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)

### *Special Educational Needs Tribunal*

#### **333 Constitution of Tribunal.**

[<sup>F409</sup>(1Z) In this section and sections 334 to 336, “the Tribunal” means the Special Educational Needs and Disability Tribunal.]

[<sup>F410</sup>(1) The Tribunal shall exercise the jurisdiction conferred on it by this Part.]

- (2) There shall be appointed—
  - (a) a President of the Tribunal (referred to in this Part as “the President”),
  - (b) a panel of persons (referred to in this Part as “the chairmen’s panel”) who may serve as chairman of the Tribunal, and
  - (c) a panel of persons (referred to in this Part as “the lay panel”) who may serve as the other two members of the Tribunal apart from the chairman.
- (3) The President and the members of the chairmen’s panel shall each be appointed by the Lord Chancellor.
- (4) The members of the lay panel shall each be appointed by the Secretary of State.
- (5) Regulations may—
  - (a) provide for the jurisdiction of the Tribunal to be exercised by such number of tribunals as may be determined from time to time by the President, and
  - (b) make such other provision in connection with the establishment and continuation of the Tribunal as the Secretary of State considers necessary or desirable.
- (6) The Secretary of State may, with the consent of the Treasury, provide such staff and accommodation as the Tribunal may require.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F409** S. 333(1Z) inserted (31.3.2003) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 195, 216(3), **Sch. 18 para 4** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4), **Sch. 18 para. 17**); S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 5**, Sch. Pt. II
- F410** S. 333(1) substituted (1.9.2002) by [2001 c. 10](#), ss. 42(1), 43(3), **Sch. 8 para. 3** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, **art. 3**, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C44** S. 333(5)(6) applied (with modifications) (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/672](#), **art. 5**, **Sch. 2**

### 334 The President and members of the panels.

- (1) No person may be appointed President or member of the chairmen’s panel unless he <sup>[**F411**]</sup> satisfies the judicial-appointment eligibility condition on a 5-year basis.]
- (2) No person may be appointed member of the lay panel unless he satisfies such requirements as may be prescribed.
- (3) If, in the opinion of the Lord Chancellor <sup>[**F412**]</sup> and of the Lord Chief Justice], the President is unfit to continue in office or is incapable of performing his duties, the Lord Chancellor may <sup>[**F413**]</sup>, with the concurrence of the Lord Chief Justice, ] revoke his appointment.
- (4) Each member of the chairmen’s panel or lay panel shall hold and vacate office under the terms of the instrument under which he is appointed.
- (5) The President or a member of the chairmen’s panel or lay panel—
  - (a) may resign office by notice in writing to the Lord Chancellor or (as the case may be) the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) is eligible for re-appointment if he ceases to hold office.

#### Textual Amendments

- F411** Words in s. 334(1) substituted (21.7.2008) by [Tribunals, Courts and Enforcement Act 2007 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 148, **Sch. 10 para. 28**; S.I. 2008/1653, **art. 2(d)** (with arts. 3, 4)
- F412** Words in s. 334(3) inserted (3.4.2006) by [Constitutional Reform Act 2005 \(c. 4\)](#), s. 148(1), **Sch. 4 para. 259(a)**; S.I. 2006/1014, **art. 2(a)**, Sch. 1 para. 11(v)
- F413** Words in s. 334(3) inserted (3.4.2006) by [Constitutional Reform Act 2005 \(c. 4\)](#), s. 148(1), **Sch. 4 para. 259(b)**; S.I. 2006/1014, **art. 2(a)**, Sch. 1 para. 11(v)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C45** S. 334(2) applied (with modifications) (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/672](#), **art. 5**, **Sch. 2**

### 335 Remuneration and expenses.

- (1) The Secretary of State may pay to the President, and to any other person in respect of his service as a member of the Tribunal, such remuneration and allowances as the Secretary of State may, with the consent of the Treasury, determine.
- (2) The Secretary of State may defray the expenses of the Tribunal to such amount as he may, with the consent of the Treasury, determine.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C46** S. 335 applied (with modifications) (1.7.1999) by **S.I. 1999/672, art. 5, Sch. 2**

**336 Tribunal procedure.**

- (1) Regulations may make provision about the proceedings of the Tribunal on an appeal under this Part and the initiation of such an appeal.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, include provision—
  - (a) as to the period within which, and the manner in which, appeals are to be instituted,
  - (b) where the jurisdiction of the Tribunal is being exercised by more than one tribunal—
    - (i) for determining by which tribunal any appeal is to be heard, and
    - (ii) for the transfer of proceedings from one tribunal to another,
  - (c) for enabling any functions which relate to matters preliminary or incidental to an appeal to be performed by the President, or by the chairman,
  - <sup>F414</sup>(d) .....
  - (e) for hearings to be conducted in the absence of any member other than the chairman,
  - (f) as to the persons who may appear on behalf of the parties,
  - (g) for granting any person such [<sup>F415</sup>disclosure] or inspection of documents or right to further particulars as might be granted by a county court,
  - (h) requiring persons to attend to give evidence and produce documents,
  - (i) for authorising the administration of oaths to witnesses,
  - (j) for the determination of appeals without a hearing in prescribed circumstances,
  - (k) as to the withdrawal of appeals,
  - (l) for the award of costs or expenses,
  - (m) for taxing or otherwise settling any such costs or expenses (and, in particular, for enabling such costs to be taxed in the county court),
  - (n) for the registration and proof of decisions and orders, and
  - (o) for enabling the Tribunal to review its decisions, or revoke or vary its orders, in such circumstances as may be determined in accordance with the regulations.
- <sup>F416</sup>(2A) Proceeding before the Tribunal shall be held in private, except in prescribed circumstances.]
- (3) The Secretary of State may pay such allowances for the purpose of or in connection with the attendance of persons at the Tribunal as he may, with the consent of the Treasury, determine.
- (4) Part I of the <sup>M5</sup>Arbitration Act 1996 shall not apply to any proceedings before the Tribunal but regulations may make provision corresponding to any provision of [<sup>F417</sup>that Part].
- <sup>F418</sup>(4A) The regulations may make provision for an appeal under this Part to be heard, in prescribed circumstances, with a claim under Chapter 1 of Part 4 of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995.]



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Any person who without reasonable excuse fails to comply with—
- (a) any requirement in respect of the discovery or inspection of documents imposed by the regulations by virtue of subsection (2)(g), or
  - (b) any requirement imposed by the regulations by virtue of subsection (2)(h),
- is guilty of an offence.
- (6) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (5) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

#### Textual Amendments

- F414** Section 336(2)(d) repealed (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1)(6), 43(4)(e), Sch. 8 para. 13(2)(a), **Sch. 9** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**
- F415** Word in s. 336(2)(g) substituted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1), 43(4)(e), **Sch. 8 para. 13(2)(b)** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**
- F416** S. 336(2A) inserted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1), 43(4)(e), **Sch. 8 para. 13(3)** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**
- F417** Words in s. 336(4) substituted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1), 43(4)(e), **Sch. 8 para. 13(4)** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**
- F418** S. 336(4A) inserted (1.7.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 42(1), Sch. 8 para. 13(5) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/1721, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C47** S. 336 applied (with modifications) (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/672, art. 5, **Sch. 2**

#### Marginal Citations

- M5** 1996 c. 23.

### [<sup>F419</sup>336Z] Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales

- (1) There shall be a tribunal to be known as Tribiwnlys Anghenion Addysgol Arbennig Cymru or the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales.
- (2) Sections 333 to 336 shall apply in relation to that tribunal as they apply in relation to the Special Educational Needs and Disability Tribunal, but as if—
- (a) functions of the Secretary of State were functions of the National Assembly for Wales,
  - (b) references to the Secretary of State were references to the National Assembly for Wales,
  - (c) requirements for the Treasury's consent were omitted.
- (3) The powers of the National Assembly for Wales under sections 333(4) and (5) and 334(2) are exercisable only with the agreement of the Secretary of State.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F419** S. 336ZA inserted (31.3.2003) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 195, 216(3), **Sch. 18 para. 5** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4), [Sch. 18 para. 17](#)); S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 5**, Sch. Pt. II

### [<sup>F420</sup>**336A** Compliance with orders

(1) If the Tribunal makes an order, the local education authority concerned must comply with the order before the end of the prescribed period beginning with the date on which it is made.

[<sup>F421</sup>(2) In subsection (1), “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations made—

- (a) as to orders of the Special Educational Needs and Disability Tribunal, by the Secretary of State,
- (b) as to orders of the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales, by the National Assembly for Wales with the agreement of the Secretary of State.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F420** S. 336A inserted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by [2001 c. 10](#), ss. 4, 43(4)(a) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, **art. 5**, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, **art. 4**); S.I. 2001/3992, **art. 5**, **Sch. Pt. II**

**F421** S. 336A(2) substituted (1.9.2003) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(3), **Sch. 18 para. 6** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4), [Sch. 18 para. 17](#)); S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 6**, Sch. Pt. III

## CHAPTER II

### SCHOOLS PROVIDING FOR SPECIAL EDUCATIONAL NEEDS

#### *Special schools*

### [<sup>F422</sup>**337** Special schools.

(1) A school is a special school if it is specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with special educational needs.

(2) There are the following categories of special school—

- (a) special schools maintained by local education authorities, comprising—
  - (i) community special schools, and
  - (ii) foundation special schools; and
- (b) special schools which are not so maintained but are for the time being approved by the Secretary of State under section 342.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F422** S. 337 substituted (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.80** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, **art. 2(1)**, **Sch.1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Establishment etc. of special schools*

<sup>F423</sup>**338** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F423** S. 338 omitted (1.4.1999) by virtue of 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 81** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; ss. 338-341 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 81, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

<sup>F424</sup>**339** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F424** S. 339 repealed (1.4.1999 so far as relating to the omission of s. 339(2) and certain words in s. 339(4) (a) and 1.9.1999 otherwise) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 81, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

<sup>F425</sup>**340** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F425** S. 340 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para.81, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **regs. 7, 8, 14(2)(g)**); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

<sup>F426</sup>**341** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F426** S. 341 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 81, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/704, **regs. 8, 14(2)(g)** and S.I. 1999/2323, **art. 17(b)**); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

<sup>F427</sup> *Approval of non-maintained special schools]*

**Textual Amendments**

**F427** S. 342 and crossheading substituted for s. 342 (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 82** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

[<sup>F428X1</sup>**342** **Approval of non-maintained special schools.**

(1) The Secretary of State may approve under this section any school which—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) is specially organised to make special educational provision for pupils with special educational needs, and
  - (b) is not a community or foundation special school,
- and may give his approval before or after the school is established.
- (2) Regulations may make provision as to the requirements which are to be complied with as a condition of approval under subsection (1) above.
- (3) Any school which was a special school immediately before 1st April 1994 shall be treated, subject to subsection (4) below, as approved under this section.
- (4) Regulations may make provision as to—
- (a) the requirements which are to be complied with by a school while approved under this section, and
  - (b) the withdrawal of approval from a school (including approval treated as given under subsection (3)) at the request of the proprietor or on the ground that there has been a failure to comply with any prescribed requirement.
- (5) Without prejudice to the generality of subsections (2) and (4), the requirements which may be imposed by the regulations include requirements—
- (a) which call for arrangements to be approved by the Secretary of State, or
  - (b) as to the organisation of any special school as a primary school or as a secondary school.
- (6) Regulations shall make provision for securing that, so far as practicable, every pupil attending a special school approved under this section—
- (a) receives religious education and attends religious worship, or
  - (b) is withdrawn from receiving such education or from attendance at such worship in accordance with the wishes of his parent.]

**Editorial Information**

**X1** S. 342: With effect from 1.9.1999 s. 342 became subsumed by new cross-heading "Approval of non-maintained special schools". Versions of this provision as it stood at any time before that date cannot be accessed directly by navigation from this version. To view those versions, it is recommended that users either conduct an 'advanced search' specifying an 'as at' date earlier than 1.9.1999 or navigate via the Chapter II heading.

**Textual Amendments**

**F428** S. 342 and cross-heading substituted for s. 342 (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 82** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

X2F429 **343** .....

**Editorial Information**

**X2** S. 343: With effect from 1.9.1999, a new cross-heading "Approval of non-maintained special schools" was inserted before s. 342. Versions of s. 343 as it stood at any time before that date cannot now be accessed directly by navigation from this version. To view those versions, it is recommended that users either conduct an 'advanced search' specifying an 'as at' date earlier than 1.9.1999 or navigate via the Chapter II heading.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F429** S. 343 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 83, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Government etc. of special schools*

<sup>F430</sup>**344** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F430** S. 344 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 83, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, art. 5, Sch. 7 paras. 2, **10**); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

*Maintained special school becoming grant-maintained*

<sup>F431</sup>**345** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F431** S. 345 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 83, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Grouping of grant-maintained special schools*

<sup>F432</sup>**346** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F432** S. 346 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 83, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt.I**

*Independent schools providing special education*

**347 Approval of independent schools.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may approve an independent school as suitable for the admission of children for whom statements are maintained under section 324.
- (2) Regulations may make provision as to—
  - (a) the requirements which are to be complied with by a school as a condition of its approval under this section,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the requirements which are to be complied with by a school while an approval under this section is in force in respect of it, and
  - (c) the withdrawal of approval from a school at the request of the proprietor or on the ground that there has been a failure to comply with any prescribed requirement.
- (3) An approval under this section may be given subject to such conditions (in addition to those prescribed) as the Secretary of State sees fit to impose.
- (4) In any case where there is a failure to comply with such a condition imposed under subsection (3), the Secretary of State may withdraw his approval.
- (5) No person shall so exercise his functions under this Part that a child with special educational needs is educated in an independent school unless—
- (a) the school is for the time being approved by the Secretary of State as suitable for the admission of children for whom statements are maintained under section 324, or
  - (b) the Secretary of State <sup>[F433]</sup> is satisfied that there is a place available for the child at the school and <sup>]</sup> consents to the child being educated there.
- <sup>[F434]</sup>(5A) But that does not apply to a local education authority deciding, for the purposes of section 324(5), whether a parent has made suitable arrangements.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F433** Words in s. 347(5)(b) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 174, 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**F434** S. 347(5A) inserted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by [2001 c. 10](#), s. 42(1), Sch. 8 para. 12 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

### 348 Provision of special education at non-maintained schools.

- (1) This section applies where—
- (a) special educational provision in respect of a child with special educational needs is made at a school which is not a maintained school, and
  - (b) either the name of the school is specified in a statement in respect of the child under section 324 or the local education authority are satisfied—
    - (i) that his interests require the necessary special educational provision to be made for him at a school which is not a maintained school, and
    - (ii) that it is appropriate for the child to be provided with education at the particular school.
- (2) Where this section applies, the local education authority shall pay the whole of the fees payable in respect of the education provided for the child at the school, and if—
- (a) board and lodging are provided for him at the school, and
  - (b) the authority are satisfied that the necessary special educational provision cannot be provided for him at the school unless the board and lodging are also provided,
- the authority shall pay the whole of the fees payable in respect of the board and lodging.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F435</sup>(3) In this section “maintained school” means a school maintained by a local education authority.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F435** S. 348(3) substituted (1.9.1999) for s. 348(3)(a)-(c) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.84** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6))

*Variation of deeds*

**349 Variation of trust deeds etc. by order.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order make such modifications of any trust deed or other instrument relating to a school as, after consultation with the governing body or other proprietor of the school, appear to him to be necessary to enable the governing body or proprietor to meet any requirement imposed by regulations under section 342 or 347.
- (2) Any modification made by an order under this section may be made to have permanent effect or to have effect for such period as may be specified in the order.

**PART V**

THE CURRICULUM

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C48** Pt. V (ss. 350-410) modified (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2262, **reg. 57**

**CHAPTER I**

PRELIMINARY

**350 Meaning of “maintained school” etc. in Part V.**

<sup>F436</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F436** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

**351 General duties in respect of the curriculum.**

<sup>F437</sup> .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F437** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

**352 Basic curriculum for every maintained school.**

**F438** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F438** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

**CHAPTER II**

**SECULAR EDUCATION**

*The National Curriculum: general*

**353 The National Curriculum.**

**F439** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F439** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

**354 The core subjects and other foundation subjects.**

**F440** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F440** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

**355 The key stages.**

**F441** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F441** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**356 Establishment of the National Curriculum by order.**

F442 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F442** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

**357 Implementation of the National Curriculum in schools.**

F443 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F443** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

*The School Curriculum and Assessment Authority*

F444 **358** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F444** S. 358 repealed (1.3.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1)(4), Sch. 7 para. 26, **Sch. 8**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I**

F445 **359** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F445** S. 359 repealed (1.3.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1)(4), Sch. 7 para. 26, **Sch. 8**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I**

*The Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales*

F446 **360** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F446** S. 360 repealed (1.10.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1)(4), Sch. 7 para. 26, **Sch. 8**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. I**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F447 **361** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F447** S. 361 repealed (1.10.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1)(4), Sch. 7 para. 26, **Sch. 8**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. I**

*The National Curriculum: special cases*

**362 Development work and experiments.**

F448 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F448** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

**363 Exceptions by regulations.**

F449 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F449** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

**364 Pupils with statements of special educational needs.**

F450 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F450** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

**365 Temporary exceptions for individual pupils.**

F451 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F451** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **366 Information concerning directions under section 365.**

F452 .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F452** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

### **367 Appeals against directions under section 365 etc.**

F453 .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F453** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

*The National Curriculum: supplementary provisions*

### **368 Procedure for making certain orders and regulations.**

F454 .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F454** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

### **369 Programmes of research etc. in relation to Wales.**

F455 .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F455** Ss. 350-369 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(2), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

*General functions of LEA, governing body and head teacher in relation to curriculum*

<sup>F456</sup>**370** .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F456** S. 370 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 91, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt.I**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

*Changes to legislation:* Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F457 **371** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F457** S. 371 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 91, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt.I**

F458 **372** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F458** S. 372 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 91, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt.I**

F459 **373** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F459** S. 373 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 91, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt.I**

F460 **374** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F460** S. 374 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 91, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

## CHAPTER III

### RELIGIOUS EDUCATION AND WORSHIP

#### *Agreed syllabuses*

#### **375 Agreed syllabuses of religious education.**

- (1) Subject to the provisions of Schedule 31, any agreed syllabus in force immediately before the commencement of this Act shall continue to have effect.
- (2) In this Act “agreed syllabus” means a syllabus of religious education—
  - (a) prepared before the commencement of this Act in accordance with Schedule 5 to the <sup>M6</sup>Education Act 1944 or after commencement in accordance with Schedule 31, and
  - (b) adopted by a local education authority under that Schedule,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

whether it is for use in all the schools maintained by them or for use in particular such schools or in relation to any particular class or description of pupils in such schools.

- (3) Every agreed syllabus shall reflect the fact that the religious traditions in Great Britain are in the main Christian whilst taking account of the teaching and practices of the other principal religions represented in Great Britain.
- (4) Any reference in this Act to an agreed syllabus adopted by a local education authority includes a reference to an agreed syllabus deemed to be adopted by such an authority by virtue of paragraph 11 of Schedule 5 to the <sup>M7</sup>Education Act 1944 or paragraph 14 of Schedule 31; and accordingly, in relation to an agreed syllabus deemed to be so adopted, any reference to the date on which an agreed syllabus was adopted is a reference to the date of deemed adoption specified by the Secretary of State in a direction under that paragraph.
- (5) Subsection (3) does not apply to any agreed syllabus adopted before 29th September 1988.

**Marginal Citations**

- M6 1944 c. 31.
- M7 1944 c. 31.

*Required provision for religious education*

<sup>F461</sup>**376** .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F461 S. 376 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

<sup>F462</sup>**377** .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F462 S. 377 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

<sup>F463</sup>**378** .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F463 S. 378 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F464 **379** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F464** S. 379 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

F465 **380** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F465** S. 380 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

F466 **381** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F466** S. 381 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

F467 **382** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F467** S. 382 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

F468 **383** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F468** S. 383 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

F469 **384** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F469** S. 384 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Religious worship

F470 **385** .....

#### Textual Amendments

F470 S. 385 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

F471 **386** .....

#### Textual Amendments

F471 S. 386 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

F472 **387** .....

#### Textual Amendments

F472 S. 387 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

F473 **388** .....

#### Textual Amendments

F473 S. 388 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

### Exceptions and special arrangements

F474 **389** .....

#### Textual Amendments

F474 S. 389 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 92, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Constitution of standing advisory councils on religious education*

#### **390 Constitution of advisory councils.**

- (1) A local education authority shall constitute a standing advisory council on religious education for the purposes mentioned in section 391(1).
- [<sup>F475</sup>(2) The council shall consist of such groups of persons appointed by the authority as representative members (“representative groups”) as are required by subsection (4).]
- (3) The council may also include co-opted members (that is, persons co-opted as members of the council by members of the council who have not themselves been so co-opted).
- (4) The representative groups required by this subsection are—
  - (a) a group of persons to represent such Christian denominations and other religions and denominations of such religions as, in the opinion of the authority, will appropriately reflect the principal religious traditions in the area;
  - (b) except in the case of an area in Wales, a group of persons to represent the Church of England;
  - (c) a group of persons to represent such associations representing teachers as, in the opinion of the authority, ought to be represented, having regard to the circumstances of the area; and
  - (d) a group of persons to represent the authority.
- (5) Where a representative group is required by subsection (4)(b), the representative group required by subsection (4)(a) shall not include persons appointed to represent the Church of England.
- (6) The number of representative members appointed to any representative group under subsection (4)(a) to represent each denomination or religion required to be represented shall, so far as consistent with the efficient discharge of the group’s functions, reflect broadly the proportionate strength of that denomination or religion in the area.
- (7) On any question to be decided by the council only the representative groups on the council shall be entitled to vote, and each representative group shall have a single vote.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F475** S. 390(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.93** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### **391 Functions of advisory councils.**

- (1) The purposes referred to in section 390(1) are—
  - [<sup>F476</sup>(a) to advise the local education authority on such matters connected with—
    - (i) religious worship in community schools or in foundation schools which (within the meaning of Part II of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998) do not have a religious character, and
    - (ii) the religious education to be given in accordance with an agreed or other syllabus in accordance with Schedule 19 to that Act,
 as the authority may refer to the council or as the council may see fit, and]



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) to carry out the functions conferred on them by section 394.
- (2) The matters referred to in subsection (1)(a) include, in particular, methods of teaching, the choice of materials and the provision of training for teachers.
- (3) The representative groups on the council required by section 390(4), other than the group consisting of persons appointed to represent the authority, may at any time require a review of any agreed syllabus for the time being adopted by the authority.
- (4) Each representative group concerned shall have a single vote on the question of whether to require such a review.
- (5) Paragraph 3 of Schedule 31 has effect to require the authority, on receiving written notification of any such requirement, to cause a conference constituted in accordance with that Schedule to be convened for the purpose of reconsidering any agreed syllabus to which the requirement relates.
- (6) The council shall in each year publish a report as to the exercise of their functions and any action taken by representative groups on the council under subsection (3) during the last preceding year.
- (7) The council’s report shall in particular—
  - (a) specify any matters in respect of which the council have given advice to the authority,
  - (b) broadly describe the nature of the advice given, and
  - (c) where any such matter was not referred to the council by the authority, give the council’s reasons for offering advice on that matter.
- <sup>F477</sup>(8) .....
- <sup>F477</sup>(9) .....
- (10) The council shall send a copy of each report published by them under subsection (6)—
  - (a) in the case of a council for an area in England, to [<sup>F478</sup>the Qualifications and Curriculum Authority], and
  - (b) in the case of a council for an area in Wales, to [<sup>F479</sup>the National Assembly for Wales].

**Textual Amendments**

**F476** S. 391(1)(a)(i)(ii) substituted (1.9.1999) for s. 391(1)(a) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 94(2)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F477** S. 391(8)(9) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 94(3), Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F478** Words in s. 391(10) substituted (1.10.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 29(a)**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. III**

**F479** Words in s. 391(10)(b) substituted (1.4.2006) by **The Qualifications, Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales (Transfer of Functions to the National Assembly for Wales and Abolition) Order 2005** (S.I. 2005/3239), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 5** (with art. 7)

**392 Advisory councils: supplementary provisions.**

- (1) In this section “the council” means the standing advisory council on religious education constituted by a local education authority under section 390.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Before appointing a person to represent any religion, denomination or associations as a member of the council, the authority shall take all reasonable steps to assure themselves that he is representative of the religion, denomination or associations in question.
- (3) A member of the council who was appointed by the authority may be removed from membership by the authority if, in their opinion, he ceases to be representative of the religion, denomination or associations which he was appointed to represent or (as the case may be) he ceases to be representative of the authority.
- <sup>F480</sup>(4) .....
- (5) A person co-opted as a member of the council shall hold office on such terms as may be determined by the members co-opting him.
- (6) A member of the council may at any time resign his office.
- (7) Subject to section 390(7), the council and, in relation to any question falling to be decided by members of the council of any particular category, the members of that category, may regulate their own proceedings.
- (8) The validity of proceedings of the council or of the members of the council of any particular category shall not be affected—
  - (a) by a vacancy in the office of any member of the council required by section 390(2), or
  - (b) on the ground that a member of the council appointed to represent any religion, denomination or associations does not at the time of the proceedings represent the religion, denomination or associations in question.

**Textual Amendments**  
**F480** S. 392(4) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 95, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

<sup>F481</sup>**393** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F481** S. 393 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 96, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Determinations by standing advisory councils*

**394 Determination of cases in which requirement for Christian collective worship is not to apply.**

- (1) The council constituted by a local education authority under section 390 shall, on an application made by the head teacher of—
  - (a) any [<sup>F482</sup>community school] maintained by the authority, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- <sup>F483</sup>[(b) any foundation school which has not been designated under section 69(3) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 by the Secretary of State as having a religious character,]  
consider whether it is appropriate for the requirement imposed by [<sup>F484</sup>paragraph 3(2) of Schedule 20 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (requirement for Christian collective worship)] to apply in the case of the school or in the case of any class or description of pupils at the school.
- (2) In determining whether it is appropriate for that requirement to apply as mentioned in subsection (1), the council shall have regard to any circumstances relating to the family backgrounds of the pupils at the school, or of the pupils of the particular class or description in question, which are relevant for determining the character of the collective worship appropriate in their case.
- (3) The council shall give the head teacher written notification of their decision on the application.
- (4) Where the council determine that it is not appropriate for the requirement to apply as mentioned in subsection (1), the determination shall take effect for the purposes of [<sup>F485</sup>paragraph 4 of Schedule 20 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (disapplication of requirement for Christian collective worship)] on such date as may be specified in the notification of the council's decision under subsection (3).
- (5) Before making an application under subsection (1), the head teacher of a school shall consult the governing body.
- (6) On being consulted by the head teacher, the governing body may if they think fit take such steps as they consider appropriate for consulting all persons appearing to them to be parents of registered pupils at the school.
- (7) An application under subsection (1) shall be made in such manner and form as the council may require.
- (8) Where an application is made under subsection (1)(a) in respect of [<sup>F486</sup>a community school which becomes a foundation school [<sup>F487</sup>(by virtue of the relevant enactments)]] before the application is determined, it shall, unless withdrawn by the head teacher, continue as if made under subsection (1)(b).
- <sup>F488</sup>(9) In subsection (8) “the relevant enactments” means—
- (a) in relation to England, sections 18 to 24 of the Education and Inspections Act 2006;
  - (b) in relation to Wales, section 35 of, and Schedule 8 to, the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F482** Words in s. 394(1)(a) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 97(2)(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F483** S. 394(1)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 97(2)(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F484** Words in s. 394(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 97(2)(c)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F485** Words in s. 394(4) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 97(3)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F486** Words in s. 394(8) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 97(4)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F487** Words in s. 394(8) substituted (25.5.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(3), **Sch. 3 para. 9(2)**; S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)
- F488** S. 394(9) inserted (25.5.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(3), **Sch. 3 para. 9(3)**; S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)

### 395 Review of determinations under section 394.

- (1) Any determination by a council under section 394 by virtue of which the requirement imposed by [<sup>F489</sup>paragraph 3(2) of Schedule 20 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998] does not for the time being apply in the case of a school or a class or description of pupils at a school shall be reviewed by the council—
  - (a) at any time on an application made by the head teacher, and
  - (b) in any event not later than the end of the period of five years beginning with the date on which the determination first took effect or (where it has since been reviewed under this section) with the effective date of the decision on the last review.
- (2) On any review under subsection (1)(b) the council shall give the head teacher an opportunity of making representations as to the determination under review.
- (3) On a review under this section, the council may—
  - (a) confirm the determination, with or without variation, or
  - (b) revoke it (without prejudice to any further determination under section 394).
- (4) The council shall give the head teacher written notification of their decision, specifying the effective date of that decision for the purposes of subsection (1)(b).
- (5) Any determination which is required to be reviewed under subsection (1)(b) shall cease to have effect, if not confirmed on such a review, at the end of the period there mentioned.
- (6) The head teacher of a school shall consult the governing body before making an application under subsection (1)(a) or any representations under subsection (2).
- (7) On being consulted by the head teacher, the governing body may if they think fit take such steps as they consider appropriate for consulting all persons appearing to them to be parents of registered pupils at the school.
- (8) An application under subsection (1)(a) shall be made in such manner and form as the council may require.

#### Textual Amendments

- F489** Words in s. 395(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.98** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **396 Power of Secretary of State to direct advisory council to revoke determination or discharge duty.**

- (1) Where the Secretary of State is satisfied, either on complaint by any person or otherwise, that any standing advisory council on religious education constituted by a local education authority under section 390—
  - (a) have acted, or are proposing to act, unreasonably in determining for the purposes of section 394 or 395 whether it is appropriate for the requirement imposed by [F490 paragraph 3(2) of Schedule 20 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998] to apply in the case of any school or any class or description of pupils at a school, or
  - (b) have failed to discharge any duty imposed under section 394 or 395,he may give the council such directions as to the revocation of the determination, or the withdrawal of the proposed determination or (as the case may be) the discharge of the duty as appear to him to be expedient; and the council shall comply with the directions.
- (2) Directions under subsection (1) may provide for the making by the council of a new determination to take effect in place of the determination or proposed determination to be revoked or withdrawn by them.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F490** Words in s. 396(1)(a) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.99** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### *Access to meetings and documents*

### **397 Religious education: access to meetings and documents.**

- (1) This section applies to—
  - (a) any conference convened under any of paragraphs 1 to 3 of Schedule 31, and
  - (b) any standing advisory council on religious education constituted under section 390.
- (2) Regulations may make provision—
  - (a) for meetings of conferences or councils to be, subject to prescribed exceptions, open to members of the public,
  - (b) requiring conferences or councils to give notice, in such manner as may be prescribed, of the time and place of such meetings, and
  - (c) requiring conferences or councils, at such time or times as may be prescribed—
    - (i) to make available for inspection, or
    - (ii) to provide on payment of such fee as they think fit (not exceeding the cost of supply),copies of the agendas and reports for such meetings to members of the public.
- (3) Regulations made under subsection (2) may apply to—
  - (a) committees appointed by local education authorities under paragraph 4 of Schedule 31,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) sub-committees appointed by conferences under that Schedule, and
  - (c) representative groups on councils appointed under section 390(4),
- as they apply to conferences and councils.

*Miscellaneous*

**398 No requirement of attendance at Sunday school etc.**

[<sup>F491</sup>(1)] It shall not be required, as a condition of—

- (a) a pupil attending a maintained school, or
- (b) a person attending such a school to receive further education or [<sup>F492</sup>any training for members of the school workforce] ,

that he must attend or abstain from attending a Sunday school or a place of religious worship.

[<sup>F493</sup>(2) In subsection (1)(b), the reference to training for members of the school workforce is to be read in accordance with sections 75(5) and 96(1) of the Education Act 2005.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F491** S. 398(1): s. 398 renumbered as s. 398(1) (1.9.2005) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(3)(a), [Sch. 14 para. 16\(3\)](#)

**F492** Words in s. 398(b) substituted (1.9.2005) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(3)(a), [Sch. 14 para. 16\(2\)](#)

**F493** S. 398(2) inserted (1.9.2005) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(3)(a), [Sch. 14 para. 16\(3\)](#)

**399 Determination of question whether religious education in accordance with trust deed.**

Where any trust deed relating to [<sup>F494</sup>a foundation or voluntary school] makes provision whereby a bishop or any other ecclesiastical or denominational authority has power to decide whether the religious education given in the school which purports to be in accordance with the provisions of the trust deed does or does not accord with those provisions, that question shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of the trust deed.

**Textual Amendments**

**F494** Words in s. 399 substituted (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), s. 140(1), [Sch. 30 para.100](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER IV

### MISCELLANEOUS AND SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

#### *Courses leading to external qualifications*

F495 **400** .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F495** S. 400 repealed (1.9.2001) by 1997 c. 44, ss. 57(1)(4), **Sch.8**; S.I. 2001/1215, **art. 2**

F496 **401** .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F496** S. 401 repealed (1.9.2001) by 1997 c. 44, ss. 57(1)(4), 58(3), **Sch.8**; S.I. 2001/1215, **art. 2**

#### *Obligation to enter pupils for public examinations*

#### **402 Obligation to enter pupils for public examinations.**

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) and (3), the governing body of a maintained school shall secure that each registered pupil at the school is entered, at such time as they consider appropriate, for each prescribed public examination for which he is being prepared at the school at the time in question in each syllabus for that examination for which he is being so prepared.
- (2) The governing body are not required to secure that a pupil is entered for any examination, or for an examination in any syllabus for that examination, if either—
  - (a) they consider that there are educational reasons in the case of that particular pupil for not entering him for that examination or (as the case may be) for not entering him for that examination in that syllabus, or
  - (b) the parent of the pupil requests in writing that the pupil should not be entered for that examination or (as the case may be) for that examination in that syllabus;but this subsection does not apply to an examination which is part of the assessment arrangements for the fourth key stage and applies in the case of that pupil.
- (3) The governing body are not required to secure that a pupil is entered for any examination in any syllabus for that examination if they have secured his entry for another prescribed public examination in a corresponding syllabus.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3) a syllabus for a prescribed public examination shall be regarded as corresponding to a syllabus for another prescribed public examination if the same course of study is provided at the school in preparation for both syllabuses.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) As soon as practicable after determining whether or not to secure the entry of any pupil for a prescribed public examination in any syllabus for which he is being prepared at the school, the governing body shall notify the pupil's parent in writing of their determination in relation to each such syllabus.
- (6) In this section—
- (a) “maintained school” includes [<sup>F497</sup>a community or foundation special school] established in a hospital;
- [<sup>F498</sup>(aa) “assessment arrangements” and “fourth key stage”—
- (i) in relation to a school maintained by a local education authority in England, have the same meaning as in Part 6 of the Education Act 2002 (the curriculum in England), and
- (ii) in relation to a school maintained by a local education authority in Wales, have the same meaning as in Part 7 of that Act (the curriculum in Wales); and]
- (b) references to a prescribed public examination shall be construed in accordance with section 462.

#### Textual Amendments

**F497** Words in s. 402(6) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.101** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F498** S. 402(6)(aa) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. for certain purposes, 19.12.2002 for W. and otherwise prosp.) for word at the end of s. 402(6)(a) by **Education Act 2002 (c. 32)**, ss. 215(1), 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 45** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. 1

### *Sex education*

#### **403 Sex education: manner of provision.**

- (1) The <sup>F499</sup> . . . , governing body and head teacher shall take such steps as are reasonably practicable to secure that where sex education is given to any registered pupils at a maintained school, it is given in such a manner as to encourage those pupils to have due regard to moral considerations and the value of family life.
- [<sup>F500</sup>(1A) The Secretary of State must issue guidance designed to secure that when sex education is given to registered pupils at maintained schools—
- (a) they learn the nature of marriage and its importance for family life and the bringing up of children, and
- (b) they are protected from teaching and materials which are inappropriate having regard to the age and the religious and cultural background of the pupils concerned.
- (1B) In discharging their functions under subsection (1) governing bodies and head teachers must have regard to the Secretary of State's guidance.
- (1C) Guidance under subsection (1A) must include guidance about any material which may be produced by NHS bodies for use for the purposes of sex education in schools.
- (1D) The Secretary of State may at any time revise his guidance under subsection (1A).]



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(2) In [<sup>F501</sup>this section]“maintained school” includes [<sup>F502</sup>a community or foundation special school] established in a hospital [<sup>F503</sup>and “NHS body” has the same meaning as in [<sup>F504</sup>section 28(6) of the National Health Service Act 2006] .]

#### Textual Amendments

- F499** Words in s. 403(1) repealed (1.11.2000 (E.) 1.9.2001 (W.)) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 148(3), 153, **Sch. 11** (with s. 150); S.I. 2000/2559, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II**; S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II**
- F500** S. 403(1A)-(1D) inserted (1.11.2000 (E.) 1.9.2001 (W.)) by 2000 c. 21, s. 148(4) (with s. 150); S.I. 2000/2559, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II**; S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II**
- F501** Words in s. 403(2) substituted (1.11.2000 (E.) 1.9.2001 (W.)) by 2000 c. 21, s. 148(5)(a) (with s. 150); S.I. 2000/2559, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II**; S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II**
- F502** Words in s. 403(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 102** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F503** Words in s. 403(2) inserted (1.11.2000 (E.) 1.9.2001 (W.)) by 2000 c. 21, s. 148(5)(b) (with s. 150); S.I. 2000/2559, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II**; S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II**
- F504** Words in s. 403(2) substituted (1.3.2007) by National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43), s. 8(2), **Sch. 1 para. 183** (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)

#### 404 Sex education: statements of policy.

- (1) The governing body of a maintained school shall—
- make, and keep up to date, a separate written statement of their policy with regard to the provision of sex education, and
  - make copies of the statement available for inspection (at all reasonable times) by parents of registered pupils at the school and provide a copy of the statement free of charge to any such parent who asks for one.

[<sup>F505</sup>(1A) A statement under subsection (1) must include a statement of the effect of section 405.]

- (2) In subsection (1) “maintained school” includes, in relation to pupils who are provided with secondary education, [<sup>F506</sup>a community or foundation special school] established in a hospital.

<sup>F507</sup>(3) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F505** S. 404(1A) inserted (1.11.2000 (E.), 1.9.2001 (W.)) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 148(6), 154 (with s. 150); S.I. 2000/2559, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II**; S.I. 2001/1274 art. 2(2) Sch. Pt. II
- F506** Words in s. 404(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 103(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F507** S. 404(3) repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 103(b), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. I**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C49** S. 404 applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.9.2005) by The Education (Pupil Referral Units) (Application of Enactments) (England) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/2039), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 1**
- C50** S. 404 applied (W.) (23.4.2007) by The Education (Pupil Referral Units) (Application of Enactments) (Wales) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/1069), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C51** S. 404 applied (E.) (1.2.2008) by [The Education \(Pupil Referral Units\) \(Application of Enactments\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2979\)](#), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 3**

#### **405 Exemption from sex education.**

If the parent of any pupil in attendance at a maintained school requests that he may be wholly or partly excused from receiving sex education at the school, the pupil shall, except so far as such education is comprised in the National Curriculum, be so excused accordingly until the request is withdrawn.

##### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C52** S. 405 applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.9.2005) by [The Education \(Pupil Referral Units\) \(Application of Enactments\) \(England\) Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/2039\)](#), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 2**
- C53** S. 405 applied (with modifications) (W.) (23.4.2007) by [The Education \(Pupil Referral Units\) \(Application of Enactments\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1069\)](#), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 2**
- C54** S. 405 applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.2.2008) by [The Education \(Pupil Referral Units\) \(Application of Enactments\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2979\)](#), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 4**

#### *Politics*

#### **406 Political indoctrination.**

- (1) The local education authority, governing body and head teacher shall forbid—
  - (a) the pursuit of partisan political activities by any of those registered pupils at a maintained school who are junior pupils, and
  - (b) the promotion of partisan political views in the teaching of any subject in the school.
- (2) In the case of activities which take place otherwise than on the school premises, subsection (1)(a) applies only where arrangements for junior pupils to take part in the activities are made by—
  - (a) any member of the school’s staff (in his capacity as such), or
  - (b) anyone acting on behalf of the school or of a member of the school’s staff (in his capacity as such).
- (3) In this section “maintained school” includes <sup>F508</sup>a community or foundation special school] established in a hospital.

##### **Textual Amendments**

- F508** Words in s. 406(3) substituted (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\)](#), **Sch. 30 para.104** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### **407 Duty to secure balanced treatment of political issues.**

- (1) The local education authority, governing body and head teacher shall take such steps as are reasonably practicable to secure that where political issues are brought to the attention of pupils while they are—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in attendance at a maintained school, or
  - (b) taking part in extra-curricular activities which are provided or organised for registered pupils at the school by or on behalf of the school,
- they are offered a balanced presentation of opposing views.
- (2) In this section “maintained school” includes <sup>F509</sup>a community or foundation special school] established in a hospital.

#### Textual Amendments

**F509** Words in s. 407(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.105** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

### Information

#### 408 Provision of information.

- (1) Regulations may require, in relation to every maintained school, the local education authority, the governing body or the head teacher to make available either generally or to prescribed persons, in such form and manner and at such times as may be prescribed—
- (a) such information (including information as to the matters mentioned in subsection (2)) relevant for the purposes of any of the relevant provisions of this Part <sup>F510</sup>or Part V of the Education Act 1997<sup>F511</sup>or section 96 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000<sup>F512</sup>or the relevant provisions of the Education Act 2002], and
  - <sup>F513</sup>[(b) such copies of the documents mentioned in subsection (3), as may be prescribed.]
- (2) The matters referred to in subsection (1)(a) are—
- (a) the curriculum for maintained schools,
  - (b) the educational provision made by the school for pupils at the school and any syllabuses to be followed by those pupils,
  - (c) the educational achievements of pupils at the school (including the results of any assessments of those pupils, whether under this Part or otherwise, for the purpose of ascertaining those achievements), and
  - (d) the educational achievements of <sup>F514</sup>such classes or descriptions of pupils] as may be prescribed (including results of the kind mentioned in paragraph (c)). <sup>F515</sup>, and
  - <sup>F515</sup>(e) arrangements relating to external qualifications (within the meaning given by section 96(5) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000) and to courses leading to such qualifications.]
- <sup>F516</sup>[(3) The documents referred to in subsection (1)(b) are—
- (a) any written statement made by the local education authority under section 370,
  - (b) any written statement made by the governing body in pursuance of provision made under section 371,
  - (c) any written statement made by the governing body of their policy as to the curriculum for the school, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) any report prepared by the governing body under section 161 or paragraph 7 of Schedule 23 (governors' annual reports).]
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (1) the relevant provisions of this Part are—
- (a) <sup>F517</sup> . . . . .
- <sup>F518</sup> [(b) sections 375(3) and 384;]
- [(c) sections 385 and 388 and, so far as relating to county schools, sections 386 and 387;]
- (d) sections [<sup>F519</sup>390] to 392;
- (e) sections 394 to 396;
- (f) sections 398 <sup>F520</sup> . . . and 405; and
- (g) section 409.
- <sup>F521</sup>(4A) For the purposes of subsection (1) the relevant provisions of the Education Act 2002 are—
- (a) Part 6 (the curriculum in England), and
- (b) sections 97 to 117 (the curriculum in Wales).]
- (5) Before making any regulations under this section, the Secretary of State shall consult any persons with whom consultation appears to him to be desirable.
- (6) Regulations under this section shall not require information as to the results of an individual pupil's assessment (whether under <sup>F522</sup>Part 6 or 7 of the Education Act 2002] or otherwise) to be made available to any persons other than—
- (a) the parents of the pupil concerned,
- (b) the pupil concerned,
- (c) in the case of a pupil who has transferred to a different school, the head teacher of that school,
- (d) the governing body of the school, or
- (e) the local education authority;
- and shall not require such information to be made available to the governing body, the head teacher or the local education authority except where relevant for the purposes of the performance of any of their functions.
- (7) Regulations under this section may authorise local education authorities, governing bodies and head teachers to make a charge (not exceeding the cost of supply) for any documents supplied by them in pursuance of the regulations.
- (8) In relation to any maintained school, the local education authority and the governing body shall exercise their functions with a view to securing that the head teacher complies with any regulations made under this section.
- <sup>F523</sup>(9) In this section “maintained school” includes a maintained nursery school.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F510** Words in s. 408(1)(a) inserted (1.10.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 30(a)**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. III**

**F511** Words in s. 408(1)(a) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.9.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154, **Sch. 9 para. 57(2)** (with s.150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. III** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F512** Words in s. 408(1)(a) inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 19.12.2002 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(1), 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 46(2)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**; S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 4**; Sch. Pt. I
- F513** S. 408(1)(b) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 106(a), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F514** Words in s. 408(2)(d) substituted (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 106(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. I**
- F515** S. 408(2)(e) and preceding ", and" inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.9.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154, **Sch. 9 para. 57(3)** (with 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(3), **Sch. Pt. III** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II**
- F516** S. 408(3) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 106(c), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F517** S. 408(4)(a) repealed (1.10.2002 for E., 19.12.2002 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215, 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 46(3)**, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**; S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 4**, Sch. Pt. I
- F518** S. 408(4)(b)(c) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 106(d)(i), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F519** Word in s. 408(4)(d) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 106(d)(ii)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6))
- F520** Words in s. 408(4)(f) repealed (1.9.2001) by 1997 c. 44, ss. 57(1)(4), Sch. 7 para. 30(b), **Sch. 8**; S.I. 2001/1215, **art. 2**
- F521** S. 408(4A) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. for certain purposes, 19.12.2002 for W. and otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215, 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 46(4)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**; S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 4**, Sch. Pt. I
- F522** Words in s. 408(6) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. for certain purposes, 19.12.2002 for W. and otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215, 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 46(5)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**; S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 4**, Sch. Pt. I
- F523** S. 408(9) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 1.8.2008 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 46(6)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2008/1728, art. 3, Sch. Pt. 2

### *Complaints and enforcement*

#### **409** [<sup>F524</sup>**Complaints and enforcement: maintained schools.** ]

- (1) A local education authority shall, <sup>F525</sup> . . . after consultation with governing bodies [<sup>F526</sup>of foundation and voluntary aided schools,] make arrangements for the consideration and disposal of any complaint to which subsection (2) applies.
- (2) This subsection applies to any complaint which is to the effect that the authority, or the governing body of [<sup>F527</sup>any community, foundation or voluntary school maintained by the authority [<sup>F528</sup>, any maintained nursery school so maintained] or any community or foundation special school] so maintained which is not established in a hospital—
- (a) have acted or are proposing to act unreasonably in relation to the exercise of a power conferred on them by or under a relevant enactment, or
- (b) have acted or are proposing to act unreasonably in relation to the performance of, or have failed to discharge, a duty imposed on them by or under a relevant enactment.
- (3) In subsection (2) “relevant enactment” means—
- (a) any provision which by virtue of section 408(4) is a relevant provision of this Part for the purposes of section 408(1),

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F529</sup>(aa) any provision which by virtue of section 408(4A) is a relevant provision of the Education Act 2002 for the purposes of section 408(1),] and
- (b) any other enactment (whether contained in this Part or otherwise) so far as relating to the curriculum for, or religious worship in, maintained schools
- <sup>F530</sup>  
 . . .
- (4) The Secretary of State shall not entertain under section 496 (power to prevent unreasonable exercise of functions) or 497 (powers where a local education authority or governing body fail to discharge their duties) any complaint to which subsection (2) applies, unless a complaint concerning the same matter has been made and disposed of in accordance with arrangements made under subsection (1).

#### Textual Amendments

- F524** S. 409 sidenote substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 107(d)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F525** Words in s. 409(1) repealed (1.10.2002 for E., 19.12.2002 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215, 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 47(2)**, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**; S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 4**, Sch. Pt. I
- F526** Words in s. 409(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 107(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F527** Words in s. 409(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 107(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F528** Words in s. 409(2) inserted (1.9.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 47(3)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4
- F529** S. 409(3)(aa) inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 19.12.2002 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(1), 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 47(4)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**; S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 4**, Sch. Pt. I
- F530** Words in s. 409(3)(b) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 107(c)**, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### *Nursery education*

#### 410 Application of Part V in relation to nursery education.

[<sup>F531</sup>Nothing in this Part applies in relation to a nursery school or in relation to a nursery class in a primary school.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F531** S. 410 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., 1.8.2008 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 205, 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2008/1728, art. 3, Sch. Pt. 2

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART VI

### SCHOOL ADMISSIONS, ATTENDANCE AND CHARGES

#### CHAPTER I

##### [<sup>F532</sup>ADMISSION, REGISTRATION AND WITHDRAWAL OF PUPILS]

###### Textual Amendments

**F532** Words in cross-heading substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.108** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**

##### *Parental preferences*

##### <sup>F533</sup>**411 Parental preferences.**

.....

###### Textual Amendments

**F533** S. 411 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 109, Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, **Sch. 4 paras. 2, 12** (as added (31.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2484, **art. 2(4)**) and in S.I. 1999/2800, **reg. 8(3)(4)**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

##### <sup>F534</sup>**411A** .....

###### Textual Amendments

**F534** S. 411A repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 109, Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, **Sch. 4 paras. 2, 12** (as added (31.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2484, **art. 2(4)**), and in S.I. 1999/2800, **reg. 8(3)**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

##### *Admission arrangements for county and voluntary schools*

##### <sup>F535</sup>**412** .....

###### Textual Amendments

**F535** S. 412 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 109, Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

##### <sup>F536</sup>**413** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F536** S. 413 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, Sch. 4 paras. 11, 12 (as added (31.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2484, **art. 2(4)**) and in S.I. 1999/2800, **reg. 8(3)**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

<sup>F537</sup>**413A** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F537** S. 413A repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, Sch. 4 para. 12 (as added (31.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2484, **art. 2(4)**) and in S.I. 1999/2800, **reg. 8(3)**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

<sup>F538</sup>**413B** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F538** S. 413B repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, Sch. 4 para. 12 (as added (31.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2484, **art. 2(4)**) and in S.I. 1999/2800, **reg. 8(3)**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

<sup>F539</sup>**414** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F539** S. 414 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, Sch. 4 para. 12 (as added (31.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2484, **art. 2(4)**) and in S.I. 1999/2800, **reg. 8(3)**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

*Admission numbers for county and voluntary schools*

<sup>F540</sup>**415** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F540** S. 415 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, **Sch. 4 para. 11**); S.,I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), Sch. 3.

<sup>F541</sup>**416** .....



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F541** S. 416 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**.

<sup>F542</sup>**417** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F542** S. 417 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**.

<sup>F543</sup>**418** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F543** S. 418 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

<sup>F544</sup>**419** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F544** S. 419 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**.

<sup>F545</sup>**420** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F545** S. 420 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, **Sch. 4 para. 6**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**.

<sup>F546</sup>**421** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F546** S. 421 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F547 **421A** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F547** S. 421A repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

*New county and voluntary schools*

F548 **422** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F548** S. 422 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, Sch. 4 paras. 11, 12 (as added (31.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2484, **art. 2(4)**), and savings in S.I. 1999/2800, **reg. 8(3)**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**.

*Admissions appeals relating to county and voluntary schools*

F549 **423** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F549** S. 423 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, Sch. 4 paras. 8, 12 (as added (31.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2484, **art. 2(4)**) and in S.I. 1999/2800, **reg. 8(3)**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

F550 **423A** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F550** S. 423A repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, Sch. 4 paras. 8, 12 (as added (31.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2484, **art. 2(4)**) and in S.I. 1999/2800, **reg. 8(3)**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

*Nursery and special schools, etc.*

F551 **424** .....

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

*Changes to legislation:* Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F551** S. 424 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, **Sch. 4 para. 11**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**.

*Admission arrangements for grant-maintained schools*

<sup>F552</sup>**425** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F552** S. 425 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**.

<sup>F553</sup>**425A** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F553** S. 425A repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, Sch. 4 paras. 8, **11**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**.

<sup>F554</sup>**425B** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F554** S. 425B repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, **Sch. 4 para. 2**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

*Admission numbers for grant-maintained schools*

<sup>F555</sup>**426** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F555** S. 426 repealed (1.4.1999 to the extent of the repeal of s. 426(6) and 1.9.1999 to the extent of the repeal of s. 426(1)-(5)) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, **Sch. 4 para. 7**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1)(3), Sch. 1, **Sch. 3**

<sup>F556</sup>**426A** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F556** S. 426A repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9),144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

<sup>F557</sup>**427** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F557** S. 427 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**.

<sup>F558</sup>**428** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F558** S. 428 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

*Admissions appeals relating to grant-maintained schools*

<sup>F559</sup>**429** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F559** S. 429 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, Sch. 4 paras. 8, **11**);S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**.

*Co-ordinated arrangements for admissions*

<sup>F560</sup>**430** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F560** S. 430 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, Sch. 4 paras. 2, **11**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**.

*Power to direct admission of child to school*

<sup>F561</sup>**431** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F561** S. 431 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, Sch. 4 paras. 10, **11**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

<sup>F562</sup>**432** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F562** S. 432 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 109, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, **Sch. 4 para. 10**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

*Time for admission of pupils*

**433 Time for admission of pupils.**

- (1) Section 14 (which requires a local education authority to secure that sufficient schools for providing primary and secondary education are available for their area) shall not be construed as imposing any obligation on the proprietor of a school to admit children as pupils otherwise than at the beginning of a school term.
- (2) Where, however, a child was prevented from entering a school at the beginning of a term—
  - (a) by his being ill or by other circumstances beyond his parent’s control, or
  - (b) by his parent’s having been then resident at a place from which the school was not accessible with reasonable facility,the school’s proprietor is not entitled by virtue of subsection (1) to refuse to admit him as a pupil during the currency of the term.
- (3) In cases where subsection (2) does not apply, the governing body of a school maintained by a local education authority shall comply with any general directions given by the authority as to the time of admission of children as pupils.

<sup>F563</sup>(4) .....

- (5) Despite section 7 (duty of parent of child of compulsory school age to cause him to receive full-time education), a parent is not under a duty to cause a child to receive full-time education during any period during which, having regard to subsections (1) and (2), it is not practicable for the parent to arrange for him to be admitted as a pupil at a school.

**Textual Amendments**

**F563** S. 433(4) repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), Sch. 30 para. 110, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch.1 Pt. I**.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Registration of pupils*

#### **434 Registration of pupils.**

- (1) The proprietor of a school shall cause to be kept, in accordance with regulations, a register containing the prescribed particulars in respect of all persons who are pupils at the school.
- (2) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1), the prescribed particulars shall include particulars of the name and address of every person known to the proprietor to be a parent of a pupil at the school.
- (3) The regulations shall prescribe the grounds on which names are to be deleted from a register kept under this section; and the name of a person entered in such a register as a pupil at a school—
  - (a) shall, when any of the prescribed grounds is applicable, be deleted from the register on that ground; and
  - (b) shall not be deleted from the register otherwise than on any such ground.
- (4) The regulations may make provision—
  - (a) for enabling registers kept under this section to be inspected;
  - (b) for enabling extracts from such registers to be taken for the purposes of this Act by persons authorised to do so under the regulations; and
  - (c) for requiring the person by whom any such register is required to be kept to make to—
    - (i) the Secretary of State, [<sup>F564</sup>and]
    - <sup>F565</sup>(ii) .....
    - (iii) local education authorities,
 such periodical or other returns as to the contents of the register as may be prescribed.
- (5) In this Act—
 

“registered pupil”, in relation to a school, means a person registered as a pupil at the school in the register kept under this section; and

“registered”, in relation to the parents of pupils at a school or in relation to the names or addresses of such parents or pupils, means shown in that register.
- (6) A person who contravenes or fails to comply with any requirement imposed on him by regulations under this section is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 1 on the standard scale.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F564** Word in s. 434(4)(c)(i) inserted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 111(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

**F565** S. 434(4)(c)(ii) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 111(b)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Withdrawal of pupils from primary school for secondary education*

**435 Withdrawal of pupils from a primary school for secondary education.**

A local education authority may make arrangements in respect of a primary school maintained by them (other than one that is for the time being organised for the provision of both primary and secondary education) under which any registered pupils who are under the age of 12 but have attained the age of 10 years and six months may be required to be withdrawn from the school for the purpose of receiving secondary education.

*Supplementary*

<sup>F566</sup>**436** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F566** S. 436 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 112, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, **Sch. 4 para. 11**); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

**CHAPTER II**

SCHOOL ATTENDANCE

*<sup>F567</sup>Children not receiving suitable education*

**Textual Amendments**

**F567** S. 436A and cross-heading inserted (27.2.2007 for E., 1.9.2009 for W.) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), **ss. 4(1), 188(3)**; S.I. 2006/3400, art. 6(a); S.I. 2009/1027, art. 3(a)

**436A Duty to make arrangements to identify children not receiving education**

- (1) A local education authority must make arrangements to enable them to establish (so far as it is possible to do so) the identities of children in their area who are of compulsory school age but—
  - (a) are not registered pupils at a school, and
  - (b) are not receiving suitable education otherwise than at a school.
- (2) In exercising their functions under this section a local education authority must have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (3) In this Chapter, “suitable education”, in relation to a child, means efficient full-time education suitable to his age, ability and aptitude and to any special educational needs he may have.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *School attendance orders*

#### **437 School attendance orders.**

- (1) If it appears to a local education authority that a child of compulsory school age in their area is not receiving suitable education, either by regular attendance at school or otherwise, they shall serve a notice in writing on the parent requiring him to satisfy them within the period specified in the notice that the child is receiving such education.
- (2) That period shall not be less than 15 days beginning with the day on which the notice is served.
- (3) If—
  - (a) a parent on whom a notice has been served under subsection (1) fails to satisfy the local education authority, within the period specified in the notice, that the child is receiving suitable education, and
  - (b) in the opinion of the authority it is expedient that the child should attend school,
 the authority shall serve on the parent an order (referred to in this Act as a “school attendance order”), in such form as may be prescribed, requiring him to cause the child to become a registered pupil at a school named in the order.
- (4) A school attendance order shall (subject to any amendment made by the local education authority) continue in force for so long as the child is of compulsory school age, unless—
  - (a) it is revoked by the authority, or
  - (b) a direction is made in respect of it under section 443(2) or 447(5).
- (5) Where a maintained <sup>F568</sup> . . . school is named in a school attendance order, the local education authority shall inform the governing body and the head teacher.
- (6) Where a maintained <sup>F568</sup> . . . school is named in a school attendance order, the governing body (and, in the case of a maintained school, the local education authority) shall admit the child to the school.
- (7) Subsection (6) does not affect any power to exclude from a school a pupil who is already a registered pupil there.
- (8) In this Chapter—
 

[<sup>F569</sup>“maintained school” means any community, foundation or voluntary school or any community or foundation special school not established in a hospital; and]

<sup>F570</sup> . . .

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F568** Words in s. 437(5)(6) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 113(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F569** Definition substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 113(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F570** Words in s. 437(8) repealed (27.2.2007 for E., 1.9.2009 for W.) by **Education and Inspections Act 2006** (c. 40), ss. 4(2), 188(3), **Sch. 18 Pt. 6**; S.I. 2006/3400, art. 6(a)(g); S.I. 2009/1027, art. 3(a)(d)



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **438 Choice of school: child without statement of special educational needs.**

- (1) This section applies where a local education authority are required by virtue of section 437(3) to serve a school attendance order in respect of a child, other than a child for whom they maintain a statement under section 324.
- (2) Before serving the order, the authority shall serve on the parent a notice in writing—
  - (a) informing him of their intention to serve the order,
  - (b) specifying the school which the authority intend to name in the order and, if they think fit, one or more other schools which they regard as suitable alternatives, and
  - (c) stating the effect of subsections (3) to (6).
- (3) If the notice specifies one or more alternative schools and the parent selects one of them within the period of 15 days beginning with the day on which the notice is served, the school selected by him shall be named in the order.
- (4) If—
  - <sup>F571</sup>(a) within the period mentioned in subsection (3) the parent applies for the child to be admitted to a school maintained by a local education authority and, where that authority are not the authority by whom the notice was served, notifies the latter authority of the application, and
  - (b) the child is offered a place at the school as a result of the application,that school shall be named in the order.
- <sup>F572</sup>(5) If—
  - (a) within the period mentioned in subsection (3), the parent applies to the local education authority by whom the notice was served for education to be provided at a school which is not a school maintained by a local education authority, and
  - (b) the child is offered a place at the school and the authority are required by virtue of regulations under section 18(3) to pay the fees payable in respect of the education provided for him at the school,that school shall be named in the order.]
- (6) If, within the period mentioned in subsection (3)—
  - (a) the parent—
    - (i) applies for the child to be admitted to a school which is not maintained by a local education authority <sup>F573</sup> . . ., and in respect of which no application is made under subsection (5), and
    - (ii) notifies the local education authority by whom the notice was served of the application,
  - (b) the child is offered a place at the school as a result of the application, and
  - (c) the school is suitable to his age, ability and aptitude and to any special educational needs he may have,that school shall be named in the order.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F571** S. 438(4)(a) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 114(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F572** S. 438(5) substituted (1.9.1999 for certain purposes, otherwise prosp.) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1), 145(3), **Sch. 30 para. 114(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F573** Words in s. 438(6)(a)(i) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 114(c)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

### 439 Specification of schools in notices under section 438(2).

- (1) Subject to subsection (3), a local education authority shall not, if it appears to them that subsection (2) applies in relation to any school, specify the school in a notice under section 438(2) unless they are responsible for determining the arrangements for the admission of pupils to the school.
- (2) This subsection applies where, if the child concerned were admitted to the school in accordance with a school attendance order resulting from the notice, the number of pupils at the school in the child's age group would exceed the number <sup>F574</sup>[<sup>F575</sup>determined in accordance with section 89 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (determination of admission numbers)] as the number] of pupils in that age group which it is intended to admit to the school in the school year in which he would be admitted.
- (3) Subsection (1) does not prevent a local education authority specifying in a notice under section 438(2) any maintained <sup>F576</sup>. . . school if—
  - (a) there is no maintained <sup>F576</sup>. . . school in their area which—
    - (i) the authority are not (apart from this subsection) prevented by subsection (1) from specifying, and
    - (ii) is, in the opinion of the authority, a reasonable distance from the home of the child concerned, and
  - (b) in the opinion of the authority, the school in question is a reasonable distance from the home of the child concerned.
- (4) A local education authority shall not specify in a notice under section 438(2) a school from which the child concerned is permanently excluded.
- <sup>F577</sup>[(4A) A local education authority shall not specify a school in a notice under section 438(2) if the admission of the child concerned would result in prejudice of the kind referred to in section 86(3)(a) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (parental preferences) by reason of measures required to be taken as mentioned in subsection (4) of that section.]
- (5) Before deciding to specify a particular maintained <sup>F576</sup>. . . school in a notice under section 438(2) a local education authority shall consult—
  - (a) the governing body, and
  - (b) if another local education authority are responsible for determining the arrangements for the admission of pupils to the school, that authority.
- (6) Where a local education authority decide to specify a particular maintained <sup>F576</sup>. . . school in a notice under section 438(2) they shall, before serving the notice, serve notice in writing of their decision on—
  - (a) the governing body and head teacher of the school, and
  - (b) if another local education authority are responsible for determining the arrangements for the admission of pupils to the school, that authority.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) A governing body or local education authority on whom notice is served under subsection (6) may, within the period of 15 days beginning with the day on which the notice was received, apply to the Secretary of State for a direction under this section and, if they do so, shall inform the local education authority which served the notice.
- (8) Where the Secretary of State gives a direction under this section, the school or schools to be specified in the notice under section 438(2) shall be determined in accordance with the direction.

#### Textual Amendments

- F574** Words in s. 439(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 115(2)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F575** Words in s. 439(2) substituted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.2.2006 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 4 para. 14** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with art. 4, Sch. paras. 310); S.I. 2006/172, art. 4, Sch.
- F576** Words in s. 439(3)(5)(6) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 115(3), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.
- F577** S. 439(4A) inserted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 115(4)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C55** S. 439 modified (temp. from 1.9.1998) by S.I. 1998/1948, reg. 3, **Sch. para. 8**
- C56** S. 439 applied (with modifications) (18.10.1999) by S.I. 1999/2666, reg. 8, Sch. paras. 1(a), **2-8**  
s. 439 applied (with modifications) (1.9.1999) by S.I. 1999/2800, reg. 7, Sch. paras. 1, **2-8**
- C57** S. 439 applied (with modifications) (E.) (8.5.2003) by The New School (Admissions) (England) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/1041), regs. 1(1), 9, **Sch. para. 1(a)**
- C58** S. 439 applied (with modifications) (W.) (1.2.2006) by The New School (Admissions) (Wales) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/175), regs. 1(1), 9, **Sch.** (with reg. 2(2))
- C59** S. 439(2) transitional provisions for effects of 2002 c. 32, Sch. 4 para. 14 (W.) (1.2.2006) by The Education Act 2002 (Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments) (Wales) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/173), regs. 1(1), **9**

#### **440 Amendment of order at request of parent: child without statement of special educational needs.**

- (1) This section applies where a school attendance order is in force in respect of a child, other than a child for whom the local education authority maintain a statement under section 324.
- (2) If at any time—
- the parent applies for the child to be admitted to a school maintained by a local education authority<sup>F578</sup> . . . which is different from the school named in the order,
  - the child is offered a place at the school as a result of the application, and
  - the parent requests the local education authority by whom the order was served to amend it by substituting that school for the one currently named,
- the authority shall comply with the request.
- (3) If at any time—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- <sup>F579</sup>[(a) the parent applies to the authority for education to be provided for the child at a school which is not a school maintained by a local education authority and which is different from the school named in the order,
- (b) the child is offered a place at the school and the authority are required by virtue of regulations under section 18(3) to pay the fees payable in respect of the education provided for him at the school, and]
- (c) the parent requests the authority to amend the order by substituting that school for the one currently named,

the authority shall comply with the request.

(4) If at any time—

- (a) the parent applies for the child to be admitted to a school which is not maintained by a local education authority <sup>F580</sup> . . . , which is different from the school named in the order and in respect of which no application is made under subsection (3),
- (b) as a result of the application, the child is offered a place at the school, being a school which is suitable to his age, ability and aptitude and to any special educational needs he may have, and
- (c) the parent requests the authority to amend the order by substituting that school for the one currently named,

the authority shall comply with the request.

#### Textual Amendments

**F578** Words in S. 440(2)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 116(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

**F579** S. 440(3)(a)(b) substituted (1.9.1999 for certain purposes, otherwise prosp.) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1), 145(3), **Sch. 30 para. 116(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F580** Words in S. 440(4)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 116(c), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### 441 Choice of school: child with statement of special educational needs.

- (1) Subsections (2) and (3) apply where a local education authority are required by virtue of section 437(3) to serve a school attendance order in respect of a child for whom they maintain a statement under section 324.
- (2) Where the statement specifies the name of a school, that school shall be named in the order.
- (3) Where the statement does not specify the name of a school—
- (a) the authority shall, <sup>F581</sup> . . . , amend the statement so that it specifies the name of a school, and
- (b) that school shall then be named in the order.

[<sup>F582</sup>(3A) An amendment to a statement required to be made under subsection (3)(a) shall be treated for the purposes of Schedule 27 as if it were an amendment proposed following a periodic review (within the meaning of that Schedule).]

(4) Where—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a school attendance order is in force in respect of a child for whom the local education authority maintain a statement under section 324, and
  - (b) the name of the school specified in the statement is changed,
- the local education authority shall amend the order accordingly.

#### Textual Amendments

- F581** Words in s. 441(3)(a) repealed (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 42(1)(6), Sch. 8 para. 15(2), Sch. 9 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F582** S. 441(3A) inserted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 42(1), Sch. 8 para. 15(3) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

#### 442 Revocation of order at request of parent.

- (1) This section applies where a school attendance order is in force in respect of a child.
- (2) If at any time the parent applies to the local education authority requesting that the order be revoked on the ground that arrangements have been made for the child to receive suitable education otherwise than at school, the authority shall comply with the request, unless they are of the opinion that no satisfactory arrangements have been made for the education of the child otherwise than at school.
- (3) If a parent is aggrieved by a refusal of the local education authority to comply with a request under subsection (2), he may refer the question to the Secretary of State.
- (4) Where a question is referred to the Secretary of State under subsection (3), he shall give such direction determining the question as he thinks fit.
- (5) Where the child in question is one for whom the authority maintain a statement under section 324—
  - (a) subsections (2) to (4) do not apply if the name of a school or other institution is specified in the statement, and
  - (b) in any other case a direction under subsection (4) may require the authority to make such amendments in the statement as the Secretary of State considers necessary or expedient in consequence of his determination.

*School attendance: offences and education supervision orders*

#### 443 Offence: failure to comply with school attendance order.

- (1) If a parent on whom a school attendance order is served fails to comply with the requirements of the order, he is guilty of an offence, unless he proves that he is causing the child to receive suitable education otherwise than at school.
- (2) If, in proceedings for an offence under this section, the parent is acquitted, the court may direct that the school attendance order shall cease to be in force.
- (3) A direction under subsection (2) does not affect the duty of the local education authority to take further action under section 437 if at any time the authority are of the opinion that, having regard to any change of circumstances, it is expedient to do so.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

**444 Offence: failure to secure regular attendance at school of registered pupil.**

- (1) If a child of compulsory school age who is a registered pupil at a school fails to attend regularly at the school, his parent is guilty of an offence.

[<sup>F583</sup>(1A) If in the circumstances mentioned in subsection (1) the parent knows that his child is failing to attend regularly at the school and fails <sup>F584</sup>... to cause him to do so, he is guilty of an offence.]

[<sup>F585</sup>(1B) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under subsection (1A) to prove that he had a reasonable justification for his failure to cause the child to attend regularly at the school.]

- (2) Subsections [<sup>F586</sup>(2A)] to (6) below apply in proceedings for an offence under this section in respect of a child who is not a boarder at the school at which he is a registered pupil.

[<sup>F587</sup>(2A) The child shall not be taken to have failed to attend regularly at the school by reason of his absence from the school at any time if the parent proves that at that time the child was prevented from attending by reason of sickness or any unavoidable cause.]

- (3) The child shall not be taken to have failed to attend regularly at the school by reason of his absence from the school—

- (a) with leave, [<sup>F588</sup> or]
- <sup>F589</sup>(b) .....
- (c) on any day exclusively set apart for religious observance by the religious body to which his parent belongs.

[<sup>F590</sup>(3A) Subsections (3B) and (3D) apply where the child's home is in England.

- (3B) The child shall not be taken to have failed to attend regularly at the school if the parent proves that—

- (a) the local education authority have a duty to make travel arrangements in relation to the child under section 508B(1) for the purpose of facilitating the child's attendance at the school and have failed to discharge that duty, or
- (b) the local education authority have a duty to make travel arrangements in relation to the child by virtue of subsection (2)(c) of section 508E (school travel schemes) for the purpose of facilitating the child's attendance at the school and have failed to discharge that duty.

- (3C) For the purposes of subsection (3B)—

- (a) the reference to “travel arrangements” in paragraph (a) has the same meaning as in section 508B, and
- (b) the reference to “travel arrangements” in paragraph (b) has the same meaning as in paragraph 3 of Schedule 35C.

- (3D) Where the school is an independent school which is not a qualifying school, the child shall not be taken to have failed to attend regularly at the school if the parent proves—

- (a) that the school is not within walking distance of the child's home,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) that no suitable arrangements have been made by the local education authority for boarding accommodation for him at or near the school, and
  - (c) that no suitable arrangements have been made by the local education authority for enabling him to become a registered pupil at a qualifying school nearer to his home.
- (3E) For the purposes of subsection (3D), “qualifying school” has the same meaning as it has for the purposes of Schedule 35B (meaning of “eligible child” for the purposes of section 508B).
- (3F) Subsection (4) applies where the child's home is in Wales.]
- (4) The child shall not be taken to have failed to attend regularly at the school if the parent proves—
- (a) that the school at which the child is a registered pupil is not within walking distance of the child's home, and
  - (b) that no suitable arrangements have been made by the local education authority<sup>F591</sup> . . . for any of the following—
    - (i) his transport to and from the school,
    - (ii) boarding accommodation for him at or near the school, or
    - (iii) enabling him to become a registered pupil at a school nearer to his home.
- (5) In [<sup>F592</sup>subsections (3D) and (4)] “walking distance”—
- (a) in relation to a child who is under the age of eight, means 3.218688 kilometres (two miles), and
  - (b) in relation to a child who has attained the age of eight, means 4.828032 kilometres (three miles),
- in each case measured by the nearest available route.
- (6) If it is proved that the child has no fixed abode, [<sup>F593</sup>subsections (3B), (3D) and (4)] shall not apply, but [<sup>F594</sup>it is a defence for the parent to prove] —
- (a) that he is engaged in a trade or business of such a nature as to require him to travel from place to place,
  - (b) that the child has attended at a school as a registered pupil as regularly as the nature of that trade or business permits, and
  - (c) if the child has attained the age of six, that he has made at least 200 attendances during the period of 12 months ending with the date on which the proceedings were instituted.
- (7) In proceedings for an offence under this section in respect of a child who is a boarder at the school at which he is a registered pupil, the child shall be taken to have failed to attend regularly at the school if he is absent from it without leave during any part of the school term [<sup>F595</sup>unless the parent proves that at that time the child was] prevented from being present by reason of sickness or any unavoidable cause.
- [<sup>F596</sup>(7A) Where—
- (a) a child of compulsory school age has been excluded for a fixed period on disciplinary grounds from a school in England which is—
    - (i) a maintained school,
    - (ii) a pupil referral unit,
    - (iii) an Academy,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (iv) a city technology college, or
  - (v) a city college for the technology of the arts,
  - (b) he remains for the time being a registered pupil at the school,
  - (c) the appropriate authority make arrangements for the provision of full-time education for him at the school during the period of exclusion, and
  - (d) notice in writing of the arrangements has been given to the child's parent,
- the exclusion does not affect the application of subsections (1) to (7) to the child's attendance at the school on any day to which the arrangements relate.
- (7B) In subsection (7A)(c) “the appropriate authority” means—
- (a) in relation to a maintained school, the governing body of the school,
  - (b) in relation to a pupil referral unit, the local education authority, and
  - (c) in relation to any school mentioned in subsection (7A)(a)(iii) to (v), the proprietor of the school.]
- (8) A person guilty of an offence under [<sup>F597</sup>subsection (1)] is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.
- [<sup>F598</sup>(8A) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (1A) is liable on summary conviction—
- (a) to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale, or
  - (b) to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months, or both.
- (8B) If, on the trial of an offence under subsection (1A), the court finds the defendant not guilty of that offence but is satisfied that he is guilty of an offence under subsection (1), the court may find him guilty of that offence.]
- (9) In this section “leave”, in relation to a school, means leave granted by any person authorised to do so by the governing body or proprietor of the school.

#### Textual Amendments

- F583** S. 444(1A) inserted (1.3.2001) by 2000 c. 43, s. 72(1)(a)(2); S.I. 2001/562, art. 2
- F584** Words in s. 444(1A) repealed (8.11.2006) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 109(1), 188(1), Sch. 18 Pt. 1 (with s. 109(11))
- F585** S. 444(1B) inserted (8.11.2006) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 109(2), 188(1) (with s. 109(11))
- F586** Word in s. 444(2) substituted (8.11.2006) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 109(3), 188(1) (with s. 109(11))
- F587** S. 444(2A) inserted (8.11.2006) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 109(4), 188(1) (with s. 109(11))
- F588** Word in s. 444(3)(a) inserted (8.11.2006) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 109(5)(a), 188(1) (with s. 109(11))
- F589** S. 444(3)(b) repealed (8.11.2006) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 109(5)(b), 188(1), Sch. 18 Pt. 1 (with s. 109(11))
- F590** S. 444(3A)-(3F) inserted (1.9.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 82(2), 188(3) (with s. 82(5)); S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(d)
- F591** Words in S. 444(4)(b) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 117, Sch. 31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1.
- F592** Words in s. 444(5) substituted (1.9.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 82(3), 188(3) (with s. 82(5)); S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(d)



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F593** Words in s. 444(6) substituted (1.9.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 82(4), 188(3) (with s. 82(5)); S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(d)
- F594** Words in s. 444(6) substituted (8.11.2006) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 109(6), 188(1) (with s. 109(11))
- F595** Words in s. 444(7) substituted (8.11.2006) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 109(7), 188(1) (with s. 109(11))
- F596** S. 444(7A)(7B) inserted (1.9.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 109(8), 188(3) (with s. 109(11)); S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(i)
- F597** Words in s. 444(8) substituted (1.3.2001) by 2000 c. 43, s. 72(1)(b)(2); S.I. 2001/562, art. 2
- F598** S. 444(8A)(8B) inserted (1.3.2001) by 2000 c. 43, s. 72(1)(c)(2); S.I. 2001/562, art. 2

[<sup>F599</sup> **444ZA** **Application of section 444 to alternative educational provision**

- (1) Where, in the case of a child of compulsory school age who is not a registered pupil at any school—
- (a) a local education authority has made arrangements under section 19 for the provision of education for him otherwise than at a school or at his home, and
  - (b) notice in writing of the arrangements has been given to the child's parent,
- subsections (1) to (7) of section 444 have effect as if the place at which the education is provided were a school and the child were a registered pupil at that school.
- (2) Where—
- (a) a child of compulsory school age has been excluded from a relevant school,
  - (b) he remains for the time being a registered pupil at the school,
  - (c) he is required by the appropriate authority for the school to attend at a place outside the school premises for the purpose of receiving any instruction or training, and
  - (d) notice in writing of the requirement has been given to the child's parent,
- subsections (1) to (7) of section 444 have effect as if the place at which the child is required to attend were a school and the child were a registered pupil at that school (and not at the school mentioned in paragraph (b)).
- (3) In relation to a maintained school or a pupil referral unit—
- (a) the reference in subsection (2)(a) to exclusion is a reference to exclusion under section 52 of the Education Act 2002, and
  - (b) the requirement referred to in subsection (2)(c) is a requirement imposed under section 29(3) of that Act.
- (4) A child shall not be taken to have failed to attend regularly—
- (a) in a case falling within subsection (1), at the place at which education is provided for him, or
  - (b) in a case falling within subsection (2), at the place at which he is required to attend,
- unless he has failed to attend regularly since the giving of the notice mentioned in subsection (1)(b) or (2)(d).
- (5) Section 572, which provides for the methods by which notices may be served under this Act, does not preclude the notice mentioned in subsection (1)(b) or (2)(d) from being given to a child's parent by any other effective method.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) In proceedings for an offence under section 444 in a case falling within subsection (1) of this section, [<sup>F600</sup>it is a defence for the parent to prove] that the child is receiving suitable education otherwise than by regular attendance at a school or at the place mentioned in subsection (1).
- (7) In section 444 “leave”—
- (a) in relation to a place at which education is provided as mentioned in subsection (1) of this section, means leave granted by any person authorised to do so by the local education authority;
  - (b) in relation to a place at which a child is required to attend as mentioned in subsection (2)(c) of this section, means leave granted by any person authorised to do so by the appropriate authority for the school.
- (8) In this section—
- (a) “relevant school” means—
    - (i) a maintained school,
    - (ii) a pupil referral unit,
    - (iii) an Academy,
    - (iv) a city technology college, or
    - (v) a city college for the technology of the arts;
  - (b) “appropriate authority” means—
    - (i) in relation to a maintained school, the governing body,
    - (ii) in relation to a pupil referral unit, the local education authority, and
    - (iii) in relation to a school falling within paragraph (a)(iii), (iv) or (v), the proprietor of the school.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F599** S. 444ZA inserted (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), **ss. 116**, 125(4); [S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3, Sch. 1](#)

**F600** Words in s. 444ZA(6) substituted (8.11.2006) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 109(9)**, 188(1) (with s. 109(11))

#### [<sup>F601</sup>444A] **Penalty notice in respect of failure to secure regular attendance at school of registered pupil**

- (1) Where an authorised officer has reason to believe—
- (a) that a person has committed an offence under section 444(1), and
  - [<sup>F602</sup>(b) that the offence relates—
    - (i) to a relevant school in England,
    - (ii) in a case falling within subsection (1) of section 444ZA, to a place at which education is provided by a local education authority in England, or
    - (iii) in a case falling within subsection (2) of that section, to a place at which a child is required to attend by the appropriate authority (within the meaning of that section) for a relevant school in England,]
- he may give the person a penalty notice in respect of the offence.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) A penalty notice is a notice offering a person the opportunity of discharging any liability to conviction for the offence under section 444(1) to which the notice relates by payment of a penalty in accordance with the notice.
- (3) Where a person is given a penalty notice, proceedings for the offence to which the notice relates (or an offence under section 444(1A) arising out of the same circumstances) may not be instituted before the end of such period as may be prescribed.
- (4) Where a person is given a penalty notice, he cannot be convicted of the offence to which the notice relates (or an offence under section 444(1A) arising out of the same circumstances) if he pays a penalty in accordance with the notice.
- (5) Penalties under this section shall be payable to local education authorities in England.
- [<sup>F603</sup>(6) Sums received by a local education authority under this section may be used by the authority for the purposes of any of its functions which may be specified in regulations but, to the extent that they are not so used, must be paid in accordance with regulations to the Secretary of State.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F601** Ss. 444A, 444B inserted (E.W.) (27.2.2004) by [Anti-social Behaviour Act 2003 \(c. 38\)](#), **ss. 23(1)**, 93; [S.I. 2003/3300](#), art. 3(a)(ii)
- F602** S. 444A(1)(b) substituted (1.9.2005) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), **Sch. 18 para. 3** (with s. 119); [S.I. 2005/2034](#), art. 5
- F603** S. 444A(6) substituted (1.9.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 110**, 188(3); [S.I. 2007/1801](#), art. 4(i)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C60** S. 444A: power to amend conferred (27.2.2004) by [Anti-social Behaviour Act 2003 \(c. 38\)](#), **ss. 23(9)**, 93; [S.I. 2003/3300](#), art. 3(a)(ii)

### 444B Penalty notices: supplemental

- (1) Regulations may make—
  - (a) provision as to the form and content of penalty notices,
  - (b) provision as to the monetary amount of any penalty and the time by which it is to be paid,
  - (c) provision for determining the local education authority to which a penalty is payable,
  - (d) provision as to the methods by which penalties may be paid,
  - (e) provision as to the records which are to be kept in relation to penalty notices,
  - (f) provision as to the persons who may be authorised by a local education authority or a head teacher to give penalty notices,
  - (g) provision limiting the circumstances in which authorised officers of a prescribed description may give penalty notices,
  - (h) provision for or in connection with the withdrawal, in prescribed circumstances, of a penalty notice, including—
    - (i) repayment of any amount paid by way of penalty under a penalty notice which is withdrawn, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) prohibition of the institution or continuation of proceedings for the offence to which the withdrawn notice relates (and any offence under section 444(1A) arising out of the same circumstances),
  - (i) provision for a certificate—
    - (i) purporting to be signed by or on behalf of a prescribed person, and
    - (ii) stating that payment of any amount paid by way of penalty was or, as the case may be, was not received on or before a date specified in the certificate,
 to be received in evidence of the matters so stated,
  - (j) provision as to the action to be taken if a penalty is not paid in accordance with a penalty notice,
  - (k) provision for or in connection with the preparation of codes of conduct in relation to the giving of penalty notices,
  - (l) such other provision in relation to penalties or penalty notices as the Secretary of State thinks necessary or expedient.
- (2) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1) or section 569(4), regulations under subsection (1)(b) may make provision for penalties of different amounts to be payable in different cases or circumstances (including provision for the penalty payable under a penalty notice to differ according to the time by which it is paid).
- (3) Local education authorities, head teachers and authorised officers shall, in carrying out their functions in relation to penalty notices, have regard to any guidance which is published by the Secretary of State from time to time in relation to penalty notices.
- (4) In this section and section 444A—
- “authorised officer” means—
    - (a) a constable,
    - (b) an officer of a local education authority in England who is authorised by the authority to give penalty notices, or
    - (c) an authorised staff member,
  - “authorised staff member” means—
    - (a) a head teacher of a relevant school in England, or
    - (b) a member of the staff of a relevant school in England who is authorised by the head teacher of the school to give penalty notices,
  - “penalty” means a penalty under a penalty notice,
  - “penalty notice” has the meaning given by section 444A(2),
  - “relevant school” means—
    - (a) a maintained school,
    - (b) a pupil referral unit,
    - (c) an Academy,
    - (d) a city technology college, or
    - (e) a city college for the technology of the arts.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F601** Ss. 444A, 444B inserted (E.W.) (27.2.2004) by [Anti-social Behaviour Act 2003 \(c. 38\)](#), **ss. 23(1), 93**; [S.I. 2003/3300](#), art. 3(a)(ii)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C61 S. 444B: power to amend conferred (27.2.2004) by [Anti-social Behaviour Act 2003 \(c. 38\)](#), [ss. 23\(9\), 93](#); [S.I. 2003/3300](#), [art. 3\(a\)\(ii\)](#)

**445 Presumption of age.**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of any proceedings for an offence under section 443 or 444.
- (2) In so far as it is material, the child in question shall be presumed to have been of compulsory school age at any time unless the parent proves the contrary.
- (3) Where a court is obliged by virtue of subsection (2) to presume a child to have been of compulsory school age, section 565(1) (provisions as to evidence) does not apply.

**446 Institution of proceedings.**

Proceedings for an offence under section 443 or 444 shall not be instituted except by a local education authority.

**447 Education supervision orders.**

- (1) Before instituting proceedings for an offence under section 443 or 444, a local education authority shall consider whether it would be appropriate (instead of or as well as instituting the proceedings) to apply for an education supervision order with respect to the child.
- (2) The court—
  - (a) by which a person is convicted of an offence under section 443, or
  - (b) before which a person is charged with an offence under section 444,may direct the local education authority instituting the proceedings to apply for an education supervision order with respect to the child unless the authority, having consulted the appropriate local authority, decide that the child's welfare will be satisfactorily safeguarded even though no education supervision order is made.
- (3) Where, following such a direction, a local education authority decide not to apply for an education supervision order, they shall inform the court of the reasons for their decision.
- (4) Unless the court has directed otherwise, the information required under subsection (3) shall be given to the court before the end of the period of eight weeks beginning with the date on which the direction was given.
- (5) Where—
  - (a) a local education authority apply for an education supervision order with respect to a child who is the subject of a school attendance order, and
  - (b) the court decides that section 36(3) of the <sup>M8</sup>Children Act 1989 (education supervision orders) prevents it from making the order,the court may direct that the school attendance order shall cease to be in force.
- (6) In this section—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“the appropriate local authority” has the same meaning as in section 36(9) of the <sup>M9</sup>Children Act 1989, and

“education supervision order” means an education supervision order under that Act.

**Marginal Citations**

**M8** 1989 c. 41.

**M9** 1989 c. 41.

*Exemption*

<sup>F604</sup>**448** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F604** S. 448 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 118, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

[<sup>F605</sup>**CHAPTER III**

CHARGES IN CONNECTION WITH EDUCATION AT MAINTAINED SCHOOLS]

**Textual Amendments**

**F605** Crossheading substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.119** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

[<sup>F606</sup> *Preliminary*]

**Textual Amendments**

**F606** S. 449 and cross-heading substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 119** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

[<sup>F607</sup>**449** **Meaning of “maintained school” in Chapter III.**

In this Chapter “maintained school” means any school maintained by a local education authority.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F607** S. 449 substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 119** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Prohibition of charges*

#### **450 Prohibition of charges for admission.**

- (1) No charge shall be made in respect of admission to a maintained school.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply to the admission of any person to any maintained school for the purpose of—
  - (a) part-time education suitable to the requirements of persons of any age over compulsory school age;
  - (b) full-time education suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of 19; or
  - [<sup>F608</sup>(c) training for members of the school workforce.]
- [<sup>F609</sup>(3) In subsection (2)(c), the reference to training for members of the school workforce is to be read in accordance with sections 75(5) and 96(1) of the Education Act 2005.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F608** S. 450(2)(c) substituted (1.9.2005) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(3)(a), [Sch. 14 para. 17\(2\)](#)

**F609** S. 450(3) inserted (1.9.2005) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(3)(a), [Sch. 14 para. 17\(3\)](#)

#### **451 Prohibition of charges for provision of education.**

- (1) <sup>F610</sup> . . . , this section applies in relation to education provided at any maintained school for a registered pupil at the school.
- (2) Where the education is provided for the pupil during school hours no charge shall be made in respect of it.
- [<sup>F611</sup>(2A) Regulations may, in relation to England, prescribe circumstances in which subsection (2) does not apply in relation to education which is early years provision (as defined by section 20 of the Childcare Act 2006) other than —
  - (a) early years provision provided in pursuance of the duty imposed by section 7 of that Act, or
  - (b) early years provision for a pupil who is of compulsory school age.]
- (3) [<sup>F612</sup>Regulations may prescribe circumstances in which subsection (2) does not apply in relation to tuition in singing or in playing a musical instrument.]
- (4) Where the education is provided for the pupil outside school hours no charge shall be made in respect of it if it is—
  - (a) required as part of a syllabus for a prescribed public examination which is a syllabus for which the pupil is being prepared at the school, or
  - (b) provided in pursuance of a duty imposed by [<sup>F614</sup>section 88 or 109 of the Education Act 2002] or [<sup>F615</sup>section 69 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998][<sup>F616</sup>or
  - (c) provided in pursuance of the duty imposed by section 7 of the Childcare Act 2006.]
- <sup>F617</sup>(5) . . . . .

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F610** Words in s. 451(1) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 120(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F611** S. 451(2A) inserted (1.10.2007) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), **ss. 17(2)**, 109(2); S.I. 2007/2717, art. 2(a)
- F612** S. 451(3) substituted (25.5.2007 for E.) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), **ss. 56(1)**, 188(3); S.I. 2007/935, art. 6(b) (with transitional provisions and savings in S.I. 2007/1271, art. 5)
- F613** Words in s. 451(3)(b) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. for certain purposes, 19.12.2002 for W. and otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(1), 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 48(2)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**; S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 4**, Sch. Pt. I
- F614** Words in s. 451(4)(b) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. for certain purposes, 19.12.2002 for W. and otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(1), 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 48(3)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**; S.I. 2002/3185, **art. 4**, Sch. Pt. I
- F615** Words in s. 451(4)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 120(c)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F616** S. 451(4)(c) and word inserted (1.10.2007) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), **ss. 17(3)**, 109(2); S.I. 2007/2717, art. 2(a)
- F617** S. 451(5) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 120(d), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

## 452 Application of section 451 where education is provided partly during and partly outside school hours etc.

- (1) Where a period allowed for any educational activity at a maintained school falls partly during school hours and partly outside school hours, then—
  - (a) if 50 per cent. or more of the time occupied by that period together with any connected school travelling time falls during school hours, so much of the education provided during that period as is provided outside school hours shall be treated for the purposes of section 451 as provided during school hours, and
  - (b) in any other case, so much of the education provided during that period as is provided during school hours shall be treated for those purposes as provided outside school hours.
- (2) In subsection (1) “connected school travelling time” means time spent during school hours by the pupils taking part in the educational activity concerned in getting to or from the place where the activity takes place.
- (3) Where any education provided at a maintained school is provided on a residential trip, then—
  - (a) if the number of school sessions taken up by the trip is equal to or greater than 50 per cent. of the number of half days spent on the trip, any education provided on the trip which is provided outside school hours shall be treated for the purposes of section 451 as provided during school hours, and
  - (b) in any other case, any education provided on the trip which is provided during school hours shall be treated for those purposes as provided outside school hours.
- (4) In this section “half day” means any period of 12 hours ending with noon or midnight on any day.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (3)—



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) where 50 per cent. or more of a half day is spent on a residential trip, the whole of that half day shall be treated as spent on the trip, and
  - (b) a school session on any day on which such a session takes place at the school concerned shall be treated as taken up by a residential trip if the time spent on the trip occupies 50 per cent. or more of the time allowed for that session at the school.
- (6) Nothing in section 451 shall be read as prohibiting the making of a charge in respect of board and lodging provided for a registered pupil at a maintained school on a residential trip.

**453 Examinations: prohibition of charges and recovery of wasted fees.**

- (1) No charge shall be made in respect of the entry of a registered pupil at a maintained school for a prescribed public examination in any syllabus for that examination for which the pupil has been prepared at the school.
- (2) Despite subsection (1), where—
- (a) the governing body of a maintained school or the local education authority have paid or are liable to pay a fee in respect of the entry of a registered pupil at the school for a public examination in any syllabus for that examination, and
  - (b) the pupil fails without good reason to meet any examination requirement for that syllabus,
- that body or authority may recover the amount of the fee from the pupil's parent.
- (3) It shall be for the body or authority who have paid or are liable to pay the fee in question to determine for the purposes of this section any question whether a pupil who has failed to meet an examination requirement had good reason for the failure.

**454 Prohibition of incidental charges.**

- (1) Neither the parent of a registered pupil at a maintained school nor the pupil himself shall be required to pay for or supply any materials, books, instruments or other equipment for use for the purposes of or in connection with—
- (a) education provided for the pupil at the school in respect of which, by virtue of section 451, no charge may be made, or
  - (b) a syllabus for a prescribed public examination which is a syllabus for which the pupil has been prepared at the school.
- (2) Nothing in subsection (1) shall prevent the parent of a pupil from being required to pay for or supply any materials for use for the purposes of the production, in the course of the provision of education for the pupil at the school, of any article incorporating those materials, where the parent has indicated before that requirement is made that he wishes the article to be owned by him or by the pupil.
- (3) No charge shall be made in respect of transport provided for a registered pupil at a maintained school where the transport is either—
- (a) incidental to education provided for the pupil at the school in respect of which, by virtue of section 451, no charge may be made, or
  - (b) provided for the purpose of enabling him to meet any examination requirement for any syllabus for a prescribed public examination which is a syllabus for which he has been prepared at the school.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3)(a) transport is incidental to education provided for registered pupils at a school if it is provided for the purpose of carrying such pupils—
- (a) to or from any part of the school premises in which education is provided for those pupils, from or to any other part of those premises, or
  - (b) to or from any place outside the school premises in which education is provided for those pupils under arrangements made by or on behalf of the governing body or the local education authority, from or to the school premises or any other such place.

### *Permitted charges*

#### **455 Permitted charges.**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), a charge may be made in respect of—
- (a) education provided for a registered pupil at a maintained school other than education in respect of which, by virtue of section 451, no charge may be made,
  - (b) the entry of a registered pupil at a maintained school for a public examination in any syllabus for that examination otherwise than in circumstances in which, by virtue of section 453(1), no charge may be made,
  - (c) transport provided for a registered pupil at a maintained school other than transport in respect of which, by virtue of section 454(3) or [F618 508B(1), 508F(3) or 509(2), or section 508E(2)(d) and paragraph 5(2) of Schedule 35C,] , no charge may be made, and
  - (d) board and lodging provided for a registered pupil at a maintained school on a residential trip.
- (2) A charge may not be made—
- (a) by virtue of subsection (1)(a) in respect of the provision for a pupil of education,
  - (b) by virtue of subsection (1)(b) in respect of the entry of a pupil for an examination in any syllabus for that examination, or
  - (c) by virtue of subsection (1)(c) in respect of the provision for a pupil of transport,
- unless the education is provided, the pupil is entered for the examination in that syllabus, or the transport is provided, by agreement with the pupil’s parent.
- (3) Any education, examination entry or transport in respect of which a charge may be made by virtue of subsection (1) is referred to in this Chapter as an “optional extra”.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F618** Words in s. 455(1)(c) substituted (1.9.2007 for specified purposes) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), [Sch. 10 para. 3](#); S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(1)

#### **456 Regulation of permitted charges.**

- (1) This section applies in relation to any charge permitted under section 455<sup>F619</sup> . . . ; and a charge to which this section applies is referred to in this section as a “regulated charge”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The amount of any regulated charge shall be payable by the parent of the pupil concerned.
- (3) A regulated charge shall not exceed the cost of the provision of the optional extra or the board and lodging in question.
- (4) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (3), the cost of the provision of an optional extra includes costs, or an appropriate proportion of the costs—
  - (a) incurred in respect of the provision of any materials, books, instruments or other equipment used for the purposes of or in connection with the provision of the optional extra, or
  - (b) attributable to the provision of non-teaching staff for any purpose connected with the provision of the optional extra, or
  - (c) attributable to the provision of teaching staff engaged under contracts for services for the purpose of providing it.
- (5) Subject to subsection (6), the cost of the provision of an optional extra shall not be taken to include any costs attributable to the provision of teaching staff other than staff engaged as mentioned in subsection (4)(c).
- (6) Where the optional extra in question consists of tuition in [<sup>F620</sup> singing or in] playing a musical instrument, the cost of its provision shall include costs, or an appropriate proportion of the costs, attributable to the provision of teaching staff employed for the purpose of providing the tuition.
- (7) Where charging is permitted under section 455 and the charge would be a regulated charge, the question whether any charge should be made, and the amount of any charge to be made, shall be determined—
  - (a) in a case where the cost of the provision of the optional extra or board and lodging in question is met by or from funds at the disposal of the governing body, by the governing body, and
  - (b) in any other case, by the local education authority.
- (8) The whole or any part of the amount of any charge which the local education authority determine under subsection (7)(b) to make—
  - (a) shall, if the governing body so determine, be met by or from funds at the disposal of the governing body, and
  - (b) to the extent that it is so met, shall not be payable by the parent of the pupil concerned.

#### Textual Amendments

**F619** Words in s. 456(1) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 121, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F620** Words in s. 456(6) inserted (25.5.2007 for E.) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 56(2), 188(3); S.I. 2007/935, art. 6(b)

#### 457 Charges and remissions policies.

- (1) Every governing body of a maintained school and every local education authority shall determine and keep under review a policy with respect to—
  - (a) the provision of, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(b) the classes or descriptions of case in which they propose to make charges for, any optional extra or board and lodging in respect of which charges are permitted by section 455.

F621 . . .

- (2) No such body or authority shall make such a charge unless they have both—
- (a) determined a policy under subsection (1)(b) (their “charging policy”), and
  - (b) determined a policy (their “remissions policy”) setting out any circumstances in which they propose to remit (in whole or in part) any charge which would otherwise be payable to them in accordance with their charging policy.
- (3) A remissions policy determined by the governing body of a school <sup>F622</sup> . . . shall set out any circumstances in which the governing body propose to meet (in whole or in part) any charge payable to the local education authority, in accordance with the authority’s charging policy, for an optional extra or board and lodging provided for a registered pupil at the school.
- (4) A remissions policy shall provide for complete remission of any charges otherwise payable in respect of board and lodging provided for a pupil on a residential trip if—
- (a) the education provided on the trip is education in respect of which, by virtue of section 451, no charge may be made, and
  - [<sup>F623</sup>(b) the pupil’s parent is—
    - (i) in receipt of income support,
    - (ii) in receipt of an income-based jobseeker’s allowance (payable under the Jobseekers Act 1995), or
    - [<sup>F624</sup>(iia) in receipt of an income-related employment and support allowance,]
    - (iii) in receipt of any other benefit or allowance, or entitled to any tax credit under the Tax Credits Act 2002 or element of such a tax credit, prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph, in such circumstances as may be so prescribed,
 in respect of any period wholly or partly comprised in the time spent on the trip.]
- (5) A remissions policy shall be kept under review by the governing body or local education authority by whom it was determined.

#### Textual Amendments

- F621** Words in s. 457(1) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 122(a), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.
- F622** Words in s. 457(3) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 122(b), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.
- F623** S. 457(4)(b) substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 6.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), **ss. 200, 216(4)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 5
- F624** S. 457(4)(b)(iia) inserted (27.10.2008) by Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), s. 70(2), **Sch. 3 para. 16(2)**; S.I. 2008/787, art. 2(4)(f)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### 458 Charges for board and lodging at boarding schools.

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) to (5), where a registered pupil at a maintained school is provided at the school with board and lodging, there shall be payable in respect of the board and lodging by the parent of the <sup>F625</sup>pupil concerned, to the local education authority, charges] not exceeding the cost to the authority <sup>F626</sup> . . . of providing the board and lodging.
- (2) Where—  
<sup>F627</sup>(a) . . . . .  
(b) the local education authority <sup>F628</sup>for that pupil’s area] are of the opinion that education suitable to his age, ability and aptitude and to any special educational needs he may have cannot otherwise be provided for him,  
then, where the school is maintained by the local education authority for his area, that authority shall remit the whole of the charges payable under this section and, in any other case, that authority shall pay the whole of the charges payable under this section to the authority which maintain the school.
- <sup>F629</sup>(3) . . . . .
- (4) Where the local education authority for the pupil’s area are satisfied that payment of the full charges payable under this section would involve financial hardship to the parent of the pupil concerned, the authority—  
(a) in the case of charges payable to the authority, shall remit so much of those charges as falls in accordance with subsection (5) to be so remitted, and  
(b) in the case of charges payable to another local education authority <sup>F630</sup> . . . in respect of board and lodging, shall pay so much of those charges as falls in accordance with subsection (5) to be so paid.
- (5) The amount that falls to be remitted or paid by a local education authority by virtue of subsection (4)(a) or (b) is—  
(a) such part of the charges in question as the authority consider ought not to be paid by the pupil’s parent in order to avoid such hardship as is mentioned in subsection (4), or  
(b) the whole of those charges if, in their opinion, such hardship cannot otherwise be avoided.

#### Textual Amendments

- F625** Words in s. 458(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 123(a)(i)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F626** Words in s. 458(1) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 123(a)(ii), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.
- F627** S. 458(2)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 123(b)(i), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F628** Words in s. 458(2)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 123(b)(ii)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F629** S. 458(3) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 123(c), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F630** Words in s. 458(4)(b) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 123(d), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Supplementary*

#### **459 Provision of information.**

Regulations may require, in relation to every maintained school, the local education authority, the governing body or the head teacher to make available either generally or to prescribed persons, in such form and manner and at such times as may be prescribed—

- (a) such information relevant for the purposes of this Chapter as to the school hours at the school, and
- (b) such information as to the policies determined under section 457 which apply in relation to the school,

as may be prescribed.

#### **460 Contributions and charges unaffected by Chapter III.**

- (1) Nothing in this Chapter shall be read as prohibiting or in any way restricting or regulating any request or invitation by or on behalf of the governing body of a maintained school or a local education authority for voluntary contributions for the benefit of the school or any school activities.
- (2) Any request or invitation made by or on behalf of such a body or authority for contributions for the benefit of a school or school activities shall not be regarded for the purposes of subsection (1) as a request or invitation for voluntary contributions unless it is clear from the terms in which it is made—
  - (a) that there is no obligation to make any contribution, and
  - (b) that registered pupils at the school will not be treated differently according to whether or not their parents have made any contribution in response to the request or invitation.
- (3) Nothing in this Chapter relating to charges in respect of a registered pupil at a maintained school shall be read as relating to—
  - (a) charges made by persons other than the governing body or the local education authority, or
  - (b) charges to be paid by persons other than the parent of the pupil or the pupil himself.

#### **461 Recovery of sums as civil debt.**

Any sum payable under section 453(2), 455 or 458 by the parent of a registered pupil at a maintained school shall be recoverable summarily as a civil debt.

#### **462 Interpretation of Chapter III.**

- (1) In this Chapter—
  - “equipment” does not include clothing;
  - “examination requirement”, in relation to a syllabus for an examination, means a requirement which a pupil must meet in order to qualify for assessment for the purposes of determining his achievements in that examination in that syllabus.
- (2) In this Chapter “residential trip” means any trip—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) which is arranged for registered pupils at a maintained school by or on behalf of the governing body or the local education authority, and
  - (b) which requires the pupils taking part to spend one or more nights away from their usual overnight accommodation.
- (3) For the purposes of this Chapter, a pupil shall be regarded as having been prepared at a school for a syllabus for a prescribed public examination if any part of the education provided with a view to preparing him for that examination in that syllabus has been provided for him at that school.
- (4) In this Chapter references to a public examination (or a prescribed public examination) are references to such an examination as it applies in relation to persons who are entered for a syllabus for that examination with a view to meeting the examination requirements for that syllabus so as to qualify for assessment for the purposes of determining their achievements in that examination on any particular occasion in any year when an assessment takes place.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4)—
- (a) “an assessment” means an assessment for the purposes of determining the achievements of persons entered for the examination in question; and
  - (b) such an assessment is to be regarded as taking place on any occasion on which it is determined in relation to each person entered for any syllabus in that examination who has met the examination requirements for that syllabus—
    - (i) whether he has passed or failed, and
    - (ii) if grades are assigned for the purposes of the examination, the grade to be assigned in his case.

## PART VII

### INDEPENDENT SCHOOLS

#### CHAPTER I

##### PRELIMINARY

#### <sup>F631</sup>463 Alteration to definition of “independent school”

- (1) In this Act “independent school” means any school at which full-time education is provided for—
- (a) five or more pupils of compulsory school age, or
  - (b) at least one pupil of that age for whom a statement is maintained under section 324, or who is looked after by a local authority (within the meaning of section 22 of the Children Act 1989),
- and which is not a school maintained by a local education authority or a special school not so maintained.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(a) and (b) it is immaterial if full-time education is also provided at the school for pupils under or over compulsory school age.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F631** S. 463 substituted (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [ss. 172](#), [216\(4\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#); [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. Pt. III](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C62** S. 463 savings for effects of [2002 c. 32](#), [s. 172 \(W.\) \(19.11.2003\)](#) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) \(No.2\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2959\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\)](#), [8\(3\)](#)

## CHAPTER II

### REGISTRATION OF INDEPENDENT SCHOOLS

#### *Registration*

#### <sup>F632</sup>**464 Separate registration for England and for Wales.**

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F632** [Ss. 464-478](#) repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [s. 216\(4\)](#), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#); [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. Pt. III](#)

#### <sup>F632</sup>**465 Provisional and final registration of a school.**

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F632** [Ss. 464-478](#) repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [s. 216\(4\)](#), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#); [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. Pt. III](#)

#### <sup>F632</sup>**466 Enforcement of registration: offences.**

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F632** [Ss. 464-478](#) repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), [s. 216\(4\)](#), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#); [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. Pt. III](#)

#### <sup>F632</sup>**467 Provision of information about registered and provisionally registered schools.**

.....



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**F632** **468 School may be struck off for contravention of regulations about employment of teachers.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

*Complaints about registered and provisionally registered schools*

**F632** **469 Notice of complaint by Secretary of State.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**F632** **470 Determination of complaint by an Independent Schools Tribunal.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**F632** **471 Determination of complaint by Secretary of State.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**F632** **472 Effect of personal disqualification.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**F632 473 Enforcement of disqualification.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**F632 473A Removal of disqualification: persons no longer unsuitable to work with children.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**F632 473B Conditions for application under section 473A.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**F632 474 Removal of disqualification: other cases.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**F632 475 Duty of Registrar to comply with order for the deletion of a school from the register.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

*Independent Schools Tribunals*

**F632** **476 Constitution and proceedings of Independent Schools Tribunals.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

*Supplementary*

**F632** **477 Disqualification in Scotland.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**F632** **478 Offences: institution of proceedings and punishment.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F632** Ss. 464-478 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**CHAPTER III**

**ASSISTED PLACES AT INDEPENDENT SCHOOLS**

**F633** **479** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F633** S. 479 repealed (1.9.1997) by 1997 c. 59, ss. 1(1)(a)(b)(3), 6(3), 7(3)(a), **Sch.**, Pt.I.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F<sup>634</sup>480 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F634 S. 480** repealed (1.9.1997) by 1997 c. 59, ss. 1(1)(a)(b)(3), 6(3), 7(3), **Sch. Pt.I.**

F<sup>635</sup>481 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F635 S. 481** repealed (1.9.1997) by 1997 c. 59, ss. 1(1)(a)(b)(3), 6(3), 7(3), **Sch. Pt.I.**

## CHAPTER IV

### CITY COLLEGES

#### F<sup>636</sup>482 Academies

- (1) The Secretary of State may enter into an agreement with any person under which—
  - (a) that person undertakes to establish and maintain, and to carry on or provide for the carrying on of, an independent school in England with the characteristics mentioned in subsection (2) and such other characteristics as are specified in the agreement, and
  - (b) the Secretary of State agrees to make payments to that person in consideration of those undertakings.
- (2) The characteristics mentioned above are that the school—
  - (a) has a curriculum satisfying the requirements of section 78 of the Education Act 2002, but with an emphasis on a particular subject area, or particular subject areas, specified in the agreement, and
  - (b) provides education for pupils of different abilities who are wholly or mainly drawn from the area in which the school is situated.
- (3) Before entering into an agreement under this section, the Secretary of State must consult the following about the establishment of the school—
  - (a) the local education authority in whose area the school is to be situated; and
  - (b) if the Secretary of State thinks a significant proportion of the pupils at the school is likely to be resident within the area of another local education authority, that authority.
- (4) An agreement under this section shall make any payments by the Secretary of State dependent on the fulfilment of—
  - (a) conditions and requirements imposed for the purpose of securing that no charge is made in respect of admission to (or attendance at) the school or, subject to such exceptions as may be specified in the agreement, in respect of education provided at the school, and
  - (b) such other conditions and requirements in relation to the school as are specified in the agreement.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) A school to which an agreement under this section relates shall be known as an Academy.
- (6) Schedule 35A (which makes provision about land in relation to Academies) has effect.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F636** S. 482 substituted (26.7.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 65(1), 216(2) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 2

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C63** S. 482(3) excluded (1.6.2003) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(2), Sch. 8 para. 9(1) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1115, art. 2

**C64** S. 482(3) excluded (1.9.2006) by Education Act 2005 (c. 18), s. 125(4), Sch. 10 para. 15; S.I. 2006/2129, art. 4

**C65** S. 482(3) excluded (25.5.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(3), Sch. 2 para. 27; S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(n)

**C66** S. 482(3) excluded (E.) (25.5.2007) by The School Organisation (Transitional Provisions) (England) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/1355), reg. 1(1), Sch. 2 para. 5

**C67** S. 482(3) excluded (prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 70, 216(2), Sch. 8 para. 9(1) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4))

### 483 City colleges: financial provisions.

- (1) Payments under an agreement under section 482 may be in respect of capital or current expenditure.
- (2) In so far as such payments relate to current expenditure, the agreement shall provide for their continuance (subject to the fulfilment of the conditions and requirements falling within section 482(4))—
  - (a) for a period of not less than seven years, or
  - (b) for an indefinite period terminable by the Secretary of State by not less than seven years' written notice.
- (3) Where such payments relate to capital expenditure, the agreement [<sup>F637</sup>may] provide for the repayment to the Secretary of State, in the event of the school at any time discontinuing or ceasing to have the characteristics specified in the agreement and in section 482(2), of sums determined by reference to—
  - (a) the value at that time of the school premises and other assets held for the purposes of the school, and
  - (b) the extent to which expenditure incurred in providing those assets was met by payments under the agreement.

<sup>F638</sup> [<sup>F639</sup>(3A) [<sup>F640</sup>If the school is a city academy, subsection (3) shall apply with such modifications (if any) as may be specified by the Secretary of State by order.]]

- (4) Without prejudice to subsection (1), an agreement under section 482 may provide for indemnifying a person, in the event of the agreement being terminated by the Secretary of State, for expenditure—
  - (a) incurred by that person in carrying out the undertakings mentioned in section 482(1), or

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) incurred by that person (otherwise than by virtue of subsection (3)) in consequence of the termination of the agreement.

#### Textual Amendments

- F637** Word in s. 483(3) substituted (26.7.2002) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 65(2), 216(2) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 2](#)
- F638** S. 483(3A) repealed (1.10.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#); S.I. 2003/1718, [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- F639** S. 483(3A) inserted (1.10.2000) by [2000 c. 21](#), [s. 132](#) (with s. 150); S.I. 2000/2559, [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- F640** S. 483(3A) repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(2), 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C68** S. 483(3) modified (E.) (12.11.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3445](#), [art. 2](#)

### [<sup>F641</sup>483A] **City colleges and academies: special educational needs.**

- (1) This section applies in relation to any child falling within subsection (2) if the condition in subsection (3) is satisfied.
- (2) A child falls within this subsection if—
  - (a) he is a child for whom a statement is maintained under section 324, and
  - (b) he attends (or proposes to attend) a school which is a city technology college, a city college for the technology of the arts or [<sup>F642</sup>an Academy] .
- (3) The condition in this subsection is satisfied if—
  - (a) the school is approved by the Secretary of State under section 347(1), or
  - (b) the Secretary of State consents to the child being educated at the school.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for securing that arrangements are made—
  - (a) for making the special educational provision specified in the statement;
  - (b) for making any non-educational provision specified in the statement.
- (5) Regulations under subsection (4) may require or authorise a local education authority—
  - (a) to make payments to the school in respect of the child, or
  - (b) to provide any other assistance to the school in respect of the child.
- (6) No condition or requirement imposed by virtue of section 482(4)(a) is to prevent a local education authority making payments or providing assistance by virtue of subsection (5).
- (7) [<sup>F643</sup>This section does not apply to schools in Wales.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F641** S. 483A inserted (1.10.2000) by [2000 c. 21](#), [s. 133](#) (with s. 150); S.I. 2000/2559, [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- F642** Words in s. 483A(2)(b) substituted (26.7.2002) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 65, 216; [Sch. 7 Pt. 2](#) para. 6(4)(a); (with savings in ss. 210(8), 214(4)) [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 2](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F643** S. 483A(7) ceased to have effect (26.7.2002) and repealed (1.10.2002 for E., otherwise prosp.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 65(3), 215, 216(4), **Sch. 7 para. 6(4)(b)**, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, **art. 2**; S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3**

## PART VIII

### GRANTS AND OTHER FINANCIAL MATTERS

#### Grants

#### 484 [F644 Education standards grants.]

- (1) The [F645 National Assembly for Wales] may pay grants, known as [F646 education standards grants,] to local education authorities [F647 in Wales] in respect of eligible expenditure incurred or to be incurred by them.
- (2) In this section “eligible expenditure” means expenditure of any class or description for the time being specified in regulations, being expenditure for or in connection with educational purposes which it appears to the [F645 National Assembly for Wales] that local education authorities should be encouraged to incur in the interests of education in F648 ... Wales.
- (3) The regulations shall provide that [F649 any education standards grant] payable in pursuance of the regulations—
  - (a) shall only be payable in respect of eligible expenditure incurred or to be incurred by a local education authority in a financial year to the extent to which that expenditure is approved for that year by the [F645 National Assembly for Wales] for the purposes of the regulations, and
  - (b) shall be payable at such rate as may be specified in the regulations.
- (4) The regulations may provide for the time and manner of payment of [F649 any education standards grant].
- (5) The regulations may provide for expenditure incurred or to be incurred by any local education authority in making payments, whether by way of maintenance, assistance or otherwise, to any body or persons who incur expenditure for or in connection with educational purposes (including another local education authority) to be treated, in such circumstances as may be specified in the regulations, as eligible expenditure.
- F650 (6) .....
- (7) Nothing in section 29(1) or 507 applies in relation to any function of the [F645 National Assembly for Wales] under this section or under section 489 so far as it relates to regulations under this section; and nothing in sections 495 to 497 applies in relation to any function arising by virtue of section 489 so far as it relates to such regulations.

#### Textual Amendments

**F644** S. 484 sidenote substituted (1.2.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 125(c)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/120, **art. 2**, **Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F645** Words in s. 484 substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 1.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 49(2)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 4 (with art. 7)
- F646** Words in s. 484(1) substituted (1.2.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 125(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/120, art. 2, **Sch. 1**
- F647** Words in s. 484(1) inserted (31.3.2003 for W., 1.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 49(3)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 4 (with art. 7)
- F648** Words in s. 484(2) repealed (31.3.2003 for W., 1.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 49(4)**, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 4 (with art. 7)
- F649** Words in s. 484(3)(4) substituted (1.2.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 125(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/120, art. 2, **Sch. 1**
- F650** S. 484(6) repealed (31.3.2003 for W., 1.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 21 para. 49(5)**, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 4 (with art. 7)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C69** S. 484 extended (E.) (1.9.2001) by S.I. 2001/2897, **reg. 23**
- C70** S. 484: power to extend conferred (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 30, **s. 19(8)** (with s. 42(8)); S.I. 1998/2215, **art. 2**
- C71** S. 484 amended (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, **s. 7(10)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1**
- C72** S. 484 restricted (31.3.2003 for W., 1.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), **ss. 18(2)**, 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 4 (with art. 7)

**485 Grants in aid of educational services or research.**

Regulations shall make provision for the payment by the Secretary of State to persons other than local education authorities of grants in respect of expenditure incurred or to be incurred by them—

- (a) for the purposes of, or in connection with, the provision (or proposed provision) of educational services, or
- (b) for the purposes of educational research.

<sup>F651</sup>**486 Grants to bodies whose objects are promotion of learning or research.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F651** Ss. 486-488 repealed (1.4.2003 for E. for specified purposes, 6.11.2006 for E. so far as not already in force, 2.1.2008 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), **ss. 18(1)(g)**, 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2006/2895, art. 2; S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

<sup>F651</sup>**487 Grants for education in Welsh.**

.....



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F651** Ss. 486-488 repealed (1.4.2003 for E. for specified purposes, 6.11.2006 for E. so far as not already in force, 2.1.2008 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 18(1)(g), 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2006/2895, art. 2; S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

### <sup>F651</sup>**488 Grants for education of travellers and displaced persons.**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F651** Ss. 486-488 repealed (1.4.2003 for E. for specified purposes, 6.11.2006 for E. so far as not already in force, 2.1.2008 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 18(1)(g), 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2006/2895, art. 2; S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

### **489 Conditions as to payment of grants under sections 484 to 488.**

- (1) Regulations made under any of sections 484 to 488 may provide—
  - (a) for the payment of grant under the regulations to be dependent on the fulfilment of such conditions as may be determined by or in accordance with the regulations, and
  - (b) for requiring persons to whom payments have been made under the regulations to comply with such requirements as may be so determined.
- (2) Conditions and requirements determined under subsection (1)(a) and (b) by or in accordance with regulations made under section 484 may include conditions and requirements obliging the local education authority in question to delegate decisions about the spending of—
  - (a) [<sup>F652</sup>education standards grant,] and
  - (b) amounts allocated by the authority to meet eligible expenditure (within the meaning of that section) which is approved by the Secretary of State, to such persons as may be determined by or in accordance with the regulations.
- (3) The Secretary of State may by order make such modifications of any trust deed or other instrument relating to or regulating any institution that—
  - (a) provides or is concerned in the provision of educational services, or
  - (b) is concerned in educational research,as, after consultation with the persons responsible for the management of the institution, appear to him to be requisite to enable them to fulfil any condition or meet any requirement imposed by regulations under section 485.
- (4) Any modification made by an order under subsection (3) may be made to have permanent effect or to have effect for such period as may be specified in the order.

#### Textual Amendments

**F652** Words in s. 489(2)(a) substituted (1.2.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\)](#), [Sch. 30 para.126](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/120, art. 2, [Sch. 1](#).

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

<sup>F653</sup> **490 Grants in respect of special provision for ethnic minorities.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F653** S. 490 repealed (1.4.2003 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 18(1)(g), 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I)

*Payment of fees etc.*

<sup>F654</sup> **491 Payment of school fees and expenses.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F654** S. 491 repealed (1.4.2003 for E., 2.1.2008 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 18(1)(h), 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

*Recoupment*

<sup>F655</sup> **492 Recoupment: adjustment between local education authorities.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F655** S. 492 repealed (1.4.2003 for E., 9.1.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 7, Sch. Pt. IV

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C73** S. 492 savings for effects of 2002 c. 32, s. 215, Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (W.) (19.11.2003) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) \(No.2\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2959\)](#), regs. 1(1), 9

**493 Recoupment: cross-border provisions.**

- (1) Regulations may make provision requiring or authorising payments of amounts determined by or under the regulations to be made by one authority to another where—
- (a) the authority receiving the payment makes, in such cases or circumstances as may be specified in the regulations, provision for education in respect of a person having such connection with the area of the paying authority as may be so specified, and
  - (b) one of the authorities is a local education authority and the other an education authority in Scotland.

[<sup>F656</sup>(2) Subsection (3) of section 207 of the Education Act 2002 (recoupment: adjustment between local education authorities) shall apply for the purposes of this section as it

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

applies for the purposes of that section, but with the omission of the reference to the National Assembly for Wales.

- (2A) The regulations may provide for the amounts payable by one authority to another, in such cases as may be specified by or under the regulations, to be such amounts as may be determined by the Secretary of State.]
- (3) Any question concerning the connection of any person with the area of a particular local education authority or education authority shall be decided in accordance with the regulations.
- (4) In subsection (1) “provision for education” includes provision of any benefits or services for which provision is made by or under this Act or any other enactment relating to education.

#### Textual Amendments

**F656** S. 493(2)(2A) substituted for s. 493(2) (1.4.2003 for E., 9.1.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002](#) (c. 32), **ss. 208(1), 216(4)** (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2003/124](#), art. 4; [S.I. 2003/2961](#), art. 7, [Sch. Pt. IV](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C74** Ss. 492-495: power to exercise functions modified (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/120](#), art. 5, [Sch. 2](#)

#### [<sup>F657</sup>494 **Recoupment: excluded pupils.**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where a pupil is permanently excluded from any school maintained by a local education authority (“the old authority”) and, in the [<sup>F658</sup>funding period] in which the exclusion first takes effect, he is subsequently provided with education by another local education authority (“the new authority”), whether at a school maintained by that authority or otherwise than at school.
- (2) The old authority shall pay to the new authority, in connection with the provision of education for that pupil in that [<sup>F659</sup>funding period] , such amount, if any, as is payable in accordance with regulations.
- (3) Where a pupil is permanently excluded from any school maintained by a local education authority and, in the [<sup>F660</sup>funding period] in which the exclusion first takes effect, the following events subsequently occur—
  - (a) he is first provided by another local education authority (“the intermediate authority”) with education in a pupil referral unit or otherwise than at school, and
  - (b) at any time afterwards he is provided with education by a local education authority other than the intermediate authority (“the last authority”), whether at a school maintained by that authority or otherwise than at school,then, in connection with the provision of the education mentioned in paragraph (b), subsection (2) shall apply to the intermediate authority and the last authority as if they were an old authority and a new authority respectively.
- (4) Any dispute as to whether any local education authority are entitled to be paid any amount under this section by any other such authority shall be determined by the Secretary of State.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(5) Regulations may prescribe the time when the permanent exclusion of a pupil is to be regarded as taking effect for the purposes of this section.]

[<sup>F661</sup>(6) In this section “funding period” has the meaning given by section 45(1B) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F657** S. 494 substituted (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.128** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(4), **Sch.1 Pt. IV**.

**F658** Words in s. 494(1) substituted (1.11.2005 for E., 1.4.2010 for W.) by Education Act 2005 (c. 18), s. 125(4), **Sch. 18 para. 5(2)** (with s. 119); S.I. 2005/2034, art. 8; S.I. 2010/735, art. 2(e)

**F659** Words in s. 494(2) substituted (1.11.2005 for E., 1.4.2010 for W.) by Education Act 2005 (c. 18), s. 125(4), **Sch. 18 para. 5(2)** (with s. 119); S.I. 2005/2034, art. 8; S.I. 2010/735, art. 2(e)

**F660** Words in s. 494(3) substituted (1.11.2005 for E., 1.4.2010 for W.) by Education Act 2005 (c. 18), s. 125(4), **Sch. 18 para. 5(2)** (with s. 119); S.I. 2005/2034, art. 8; S.I. 2010/735, art. 2(e)

**F661** S. 494(6) inserted (1.11.2005 for E., 1.4.2010 for W.) by Education Act 2005 (c. 18), s. 125(4), **Sch. 18 para. 5(3)** (with s. 119); S.I. 2005/2034, art. 8; S.I. 2010/735, art. 2(e)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C75** S. 494: transfer of functions (1.4.2003 for E., 9.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. **208(2)(3)**, 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 7, Sch. Pt. IV

**C76** Ss. 492-495: power to exercise functions modified (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/120, art. 5, **Sch. 2**

**C77** S. 494 modified (20.11.1998) by S.I. 1998/2670, **art.8**.

## PART IX

### ANCILLARY FUNCTIONS

#### CHAPTER I

#### ANCILLARY FUNCTIONS OF SECRETARY OF STATE

##### *General functions*

#### 495 Determination of disputes.

- (1) Except where this Act expressly provides otherwise, any dispute between a local education authority and the governing body of a school as to the exercise of any power conferred or the performance of any duty imposed by or under this Act may be referred to the Secretary of State (despite any enactment which makes the exercise of the power or the performance of the duty contingent upon the opinion of the authority or of the governing body).
- (2) The Secretary of State shall determine any dispute referred to him under subsection (1).
- (3) Any dispute between two or more local education authorities as to which of them is responsible for the provision of education for any pupil shall be determined by the Secretary of State.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C78** S. 495 modified (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 44(7) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- C79** Ss. 495-498 modified (1.4.2003 for E.; 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 34(7), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- C80** S. 495(1) extended (1.11.1996) by 1988 c. 40, s. 219(2) (as substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1), 583(2), Sch. 37 Pt. I para. 77 (with ss. 1(4), 561, 562, **Sch. 39**))
- C81** S. 495(1)(2) applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.2.2008) by The Education (Pupil Referral Units) (Application of Enactments) (England) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/2979), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 5**

#### 496 Power to prevent unreasonable exercise of functions.

- (1) If the Secretary of State is satisfied (either on a complaint by any person or otherwise) that a body to which this section applies have acted or are proposing to act unreasonably with respect to the exercise of any power conferred or the performance of any duty imposed by or under this Act, he may give such directions as to the exercise of the power or the performance of the duty as appear to him to be expedient (and may do so despite any enactment which makes the exercise of the power or the performance of the duty contingent upon the opinion of the body).
- (2) The bodies to which this section applies are—
- (a) any local education authority, [<sup>F662</sup>and]
- <sup>F663</sup>(b) the governing body of any community, foundation or voluntary school [<sup>F664</sup>, of any community or foundation special school, or of any maintained nursery school] .]

#### Textual Amendments

- F662** Word in s. 496(2)(a) inserted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 129(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F663** S. 496(2)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) for s. 496(2)(b)(c) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1), 145(3), **Sch. 30 para. 129(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F664** Words in s. 496(2)(b) substituted (8.1.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 168(1), 188(2)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C79** Ss. 495-498 modified (1.4.2003 for E.; 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 34(7), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- C82** S. 496 modified (1.11.1996) by 1988 c. 40, s. 219(3) (as substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1), 583(2), Sch. 37 Pt. I para. 77 (with ss. 1(4), 561, 562, **Sch. 39**))
- S. 496 modified (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 43(4); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt. IV**
- S. 496 modified (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 44(7) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- S. 496 modified (1.4.2001 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2000 c. 21, s. 113(3) (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/2705, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- C83** S. 496 extended (1.11.1996) by 1992 c. 13, s. 56(3) (as added (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1), 583(2), Sch. 37 Pt. I para. 112 (with ss. 1(4), 561, 562, **Sch. 39**))
- S. 496 extended (1.11.1996) by 1992 c. 13, s. 57(6)(a) (as substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1), 583(2), Sch. 37 Pt. I para. 113 (with ss. 1(4), 561, 562, **Sch. 39**))

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- S. 496 extended (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 24, **Sch. 4 para. 10** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- C84** S. 496: power to apply conferred (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, **s. 105(7)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1**
- C85** S. 496 applied (7.8.2000 for E., 1.11.2000 for W.) by 2000 c. 22, s. 23, **Sch. 1 para. 10(a)**; S.I. 2000/2187, **art. 2(c)**; S.I. 2000/2948, **art. 2**
- S. 496 applied (E.) (20.1.2003) by The Education (Co-ordination of Admission Arrangements) (Primary Schools) (England) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2903), regs. 1(2), **8**
- S. 496 applied (E.) (20.1.2003) by The Education (Co-ordination of Admission Arrangements) (Secondary Schools) (England) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2904), regs. 1(2), **8** (with reg. 9)
- C86** S. 496 continued (W.) (22.3.2001) by S.I. 2001/1274, **art. 3(4)(a)**
- C87** S. 496 modified by 2000 c. 21, s. 113A(10) (as inserted (1.4.2003 for E., 1.8.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), **ss. 72(1)**, 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2004/1728, art. 4, Sch. Pt. 1)
- C88** S. 497: power to apply conferred by 1998 c. 31, s. 89(2) (as inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.2.2006 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), **ss. 48**, 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2006/172, art. 4, Sch.)
- C89** S. 496 applied (E.) (27.2.2007) by The School Admissions (Co-ordination of Admission Arrangements) (England) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/194), regs. 1(1), **10**
- C90** S. 496 applied (1.4.2007) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), **ss. 15(1)**, 109(2); S.I. 2007/1019, art. 3
- C91** S. 496 applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.2.2008) by The Education (Pupil Referral Units) (Application of Enactments) (England) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/2979), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 6**
- C92** S. 496 applied (31.8.2008) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), **ss. 29(1)**, 109(2); S.I. 2008/17, art. 2(a)

#### 497 General default powers.

- (1) If the Secretary of State is satisfied (either on a complaint by any person interested or otherwise) that a body to which this section applies have failed to discharge any duty imposed on them by or for the purposes of this Act, he may make an order—
- (a) declaring the body to be in default in respect of that duty, and
  - (b) giving such directions for the purpose of enforcing the performance of the duty as appear to him to be expedient.
- (2) The bodies to which this section applies are—
- (a) any local education authority, [<sup>F665</sup>and]
  - <sup>F666</sup>(b) the governing body of any community, foundation or voluntary school [<sup>F667</sup>, of any community or foundation special school, or of any maintained nursery school] .]
- (3) Any directions given under subsection (1)(b) shall be enforceable, on an application made on behalf of the Secretary of State, by an order of mandamus.

#### Textual Amendments

- F665** Word in s. 497(2)(a) inserted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 130(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F666** S. 497(2)(b)(c) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 130(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F667** Words in s. 497(2)(b) substituted (8.1.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), **ss. 168(2)**, 188(2)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C79** Ss. 495-498 modified (1.4.2003 for E.; 31.10.2005 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 34\(7\), 216\(4\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2003/124, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.](#)
- C88** S. 497: power to apply conferred by 1998 c. 31, s. 89(2) (as inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.2.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 48, 216\(4\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#); [S.I. 2006/172, art. 4, Sch.](#))
- C93** S. 497 modified (1.11.1996) by 1988 c. 40, [s. 219\(3\)](#) (as substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, [ss. 582\(1\), 583\(2\), Sch. 37 Pt. I para. 77](#) (with [ss. 1\(4\), 561, 562, Sch. 39](#)))  
S. 497 modified (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, [s. 43\(4\)](#); [S.I. 1998/386, art. 2\(4\), Sch. 1 Pt. IV](#)  
S. 497 modified (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, [s. 44\(7\)](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#)
- C94** S. 497: power to apply conferred (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, [s. 105\(7\)](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1 Pt. I](#)
- C95** S. 497 applied (3.12.1998) by [S.I. 1998/2876, reg. 21](#)  
S. 497 applied (7.8.2000 (E.), 1.11.2000 (W.)) by 2000 c. 22, s. 23, [Sch. 1 para. 10\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2000/2187, art. 2\(c\), S.I. 2000/2948, art. 2](#)  
S. 497 applied (E.) (20.1.2003) by [The Education \(Co-ordination of Admission Arrangements\) \(Primary Schools\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2903\), regs. 1\(2\), 8](#)  
S. 497 applied (E.) (20.1.2003) by [The Education \(Co-ordination of Admission Arrangements\) \(Secondary Schools\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2904\), regs. 1\(2\), 8](#) (with [reg. 9](#))
- C96** S. 497 extended (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 24, [Sch. 4 para. 10](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#)
- C97** S. 497 modified by 2000 c. 21, s. 113A(10) (as inserted (1.4.2003 for E., 1.8.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 72\(1\), 216\(4\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2003/124, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2004/1728, art. 4, Sch. Pt. 1](#))
- C98** S. 497 applied (E.) (27.2.2007) by [The School Admissions \(Co-ordination of Admission Arrangements\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/194\), regs. 1\(1\), 10](#)
- C99** S. 497 applied (1.4.2007) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\), ss. 15\(2\), 109\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2007/1019, art. 3](#)
- C100** S. 497 modified (E.) (25.5.2007) by [The Education \(Supply of Information about the School Workforce\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1264\), regs. 1\(1\), 10](#)
- C101** S. 497 modified (E.) (1.9.2007) by [The Education \(Supply of Information about the School Workforce\) \(No.2\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2260\), regs. 1\(1\), 11](#)
- C102** S. 497 applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.2.2008) by [The Education \(Pupil Referral Units\) \(Application of Enactments\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2979\), reg. 1\(1\), Sch. 1 para. 6](#)
- C103** S. 497 applied (31.8.2008) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\), ss. 29\(2\), 109\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2008/17, art. 2\(a\)](#)

[<sup>F668</sup>497A] **Power to secure proper performance of LEA's functions.**

[<sup>F669</sup>(1) This section applies to a local education authority's functions under this Act and to other functions (of whatever nature) which are conferred on them in their capacity as a local education authority.]

(2) If the Secretary of State is satisfied (either on a complaint by any person interested or otherwise) that a local education authority are failing in any respect to perform any function to which this section applies to an adequate standard (or at all), he may exercise his powers under subsection ([<sup>F670</sup>(4), (4A) or (4B)]).

[ The Secretary of State may also exercise his powers under subsection (4), (4A) or <sup>F671</sup>(2A) (4B) where—

(a) he has given a previous direction under subsection (4), (4A) or (4B) in relation to a local education authority in respect of any function to which this section applies, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) he is satisfied that it is likely that if no further direction were given under subsection (4), (4A) or (4B) on the expiry or revocation of the previous direction the authority would fail in any respect to perform that function to an adequate standard (or at all).]
- (3) <sup>F672</sup> .....
- [<sup>F673</sup>(4) The Secretary of State may under this subsection give the authority or an officer of the authority such directions as the Secretary of State thinks expedient for the purpose of securing that the function is performed on behalf of the authority by such person as is specified in the direction; and such directions may require that any contract or other arrangement made by the authority with that person contains such terms and conditions as may be so specified.]
- [<sup>F674</sup>(4A) The Secretary of State may under this subsection direct that the function shall be exercised by the Secretary of State or a person nominated by him and that the authority shall comply with any instructions of the Secretary of State or his nominee in relation to the exercise of the function.
- (4B) The Secretary of State may under this subsection (whether or not he exercises the power conferred by subsection (4) or (4A) in relation to any function) give the authority or an officer of the authority such other directions as the Secretary of State thinks expedient for the purpose of securing that the function is performed to an adequate standard.]
- [<sup>F675</sup>(5) Where the Secretary of State considers it expedient that—
- (a) in the case of directions given under subsection (4), the person specified in the directions, or
- (b) in the case of directions given under subsection (4A), the Secretary of State or a person nominated by him,
- should perform other functions to which this section applies in addition to the function to which subsection (2) or (2A) applies, the directions under subsection (4) or (4A) may relate to the performance of those other functions as well; and in considering whether it is expedient that that person should perform any such additional functions, the Secretary of State may have regard to financial considerations.]
- (6) Any direction under this section may either—
- (a) have effect for an indefinite period until revoked by the Secretary of State, or
- [<sup>F676</sup>(b) have effect for a period specified in the direction unless revoked earlier by the Secretary of State.]
- (7) Any direction given under subsection [<sup>F677</sup>(4), (4A) or (4B)] shall be enforceable, on an application made on behalf of the Secretary of State, by an order of mandamus.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F668** S. 497A inserted (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 8 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch.1 Pt. I**.
- F669** S. 497A(1) substituted (26.7.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 60(2), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I
- F670** Words in s. 497A(2) substituted (26.7.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 60(3), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I
- F671** S. 497A(2A) inserted (26.7.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 60(4), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F672** S. 497A(3) repealed (26.7.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 60(5), 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I
- F673** S. 497A(4) substituted (26.7.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 60(6), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I
- F674** S. 497A(4A)(4B) inserted (26.7.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 60(7), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I
- F675** S. 497A(5) substituted (26.7.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 60(8), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I
- F676** S. 497A(6)(b) substituted (26.7.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 60(9), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I
- F677** Words in s. 497A(7) substituted (26.7.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 60(10), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C79** Ss. 495-498 modified (1.4.2003 for E.; 31.10.2005 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 34(7), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- C104** S. 497A applied (with modifications) (1.3.2005 for E.) by [Children Act 2004 \(c. 31\)](#), s. 50(1)-(3), (5)(6), 67(7)(e); S.I. 2005/394, art. 2(1)(f)
- C105** S. 497A modified (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 44(7) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- C106** S. 497A applied (with modifications) (1.4.2007) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 15(3)(5)(6), 109(2); S.I. 2007/1019, art. 3
- C107** S. 497A applied (with modifications) (31.8.2008) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 29(3)(5)(6), 109(2); S.I. 2008/17, art. 2(a)

#### [<sup>F678</sup>497AA] **Power to secure proper performance: duty of authority where directions contemplated**

Where, in relation to any function to which section 497A applies, the Secretary of State—

- (a) is satisfied as mentioned in subsection (2) or (2A)(b) of that section, and
- (b) has notified the local education authority that he is so satisfied and that he is contemplating the giving of directions under subsection (4) or (4A) of that section,

the authority shall give the Secretary of State, and any person authorised by him for the purposes of this section, all such assistance, in connection with the proposed exercise of the function by the Secretary of State or another person in pursuance of directions, as they are reasonably able to give.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F678** S. 497AA inserted (26.7.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 61, 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C79** Ss. 495-498 modified (1.4.2003 for E.; 31.10.2005 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 34(7), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- C108** S. 497AA applied (with modifications) (1.3.2005 for E.; 1.10.2006 for W.) by [Children Act 2004 \(c. 31\)](#), s. 50(4)(5), 67(7)(e); S.I. 2005/394, art. 2(1)(f); S.I. 2006/885, art. 4(e)
- C109** S. 497AA applied (with modifications) (1.4.2007) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 15(4)(5), 109(2); S.I. 2007/1019, art. 3

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C110** S. 497AA applied (with modifications) (31.8.2008) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\), s. 29\(4\)\(5\), 109\(2\); S.I. 2008/17, art. 2\(a\)](#)

**[<sup>F679</sup>497B Power to secure proper performance: further provisions.**

- (1) Where the Secretary of State gives directions under [<sup>F680</sup>section 497A(4) or (4A) to a local education authority or to an officer of such an authority, the specified person] shall, in the performance of the function or functions specified in the directions, be entitled to exercise the powers conferred by this section.

[ In this section “the specified person” means—

- <sup>F681</sup>(1A) (a) in relation to directions under section 497A(4), the person specified in the directions, and  
 (b) in relation to directions under section 497A(4A), the Secretary of State or the person nominated by him.]

- (2) The specified person shall have at all reasonable times—

- (a) a right of entry to the premises of the authority, and  
 (b) a right to inspect, and take copies of, any records or other documents kept by the authority, and any other documents containing information relating to the authority, which he considers relevant to the performance of the specified function or functions.

- (3) In exercising the right to inspect records or other documents under subsection (2), the specified person—

- (a) shall be entitled at any reasonable time to have access to, and inspect and check the operation of, any computer and any associated apparatus or material which is or has been in use in connection with the records or other documents in question, and  
 (b) may require—  
 (i) the person by whom or on whose behalf the computer is or has been so used, or  
 (ii) any person having charge of, or otherwise concerned with the operation of, the computer, apparatus or material,  
 to afford him such assistance as he may reasonably require (including, in particular, the making of information available for inspection or copying in a legible form).

- (4) Without prejudice to subsection (2), the authority shall give the specified person all assistance in connection with the performance of the specified function or functions which they are reasonably able to give.

- (5) Subsection (2) shall apply in relation to any school maintained by the authority as it applies in relation to the authority; and without prejudice to that subsection (as it so applies)—

- (a) the governing body of any such school shall give the specified person all assistance in connection with the exercise of his functions which they are reasonably able to give; and  
 (b) the governing body of any such school and the authority shall secure that all such assistance is also given by persons who work at the school.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) Any reference in this section to the specified person includes a reference to any person assisting him in the performance of the specified function or functions.
- (7) In this section “document” and “records” each include information recorded in any form.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F679** S. 497B inserted (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 8 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I

**F680** Words in s. 497B(1) substituted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 62(3), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I

**F681** S. 497B(1A) inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 62(3), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C79** Ss. 495-498 modified (1.4.2003 for E.; 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 34(7), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.

**C111** S. 497B applied (with modifications) (1.3.2005 for E.; 1.10.2006 for W.) by Children Act 2004 (c. 31), s. 50(4)(5), 67(7)(e); S.I. 2005/394, art. 2(1)(f); S.I. 2006/885, art. 4(e)

**C112** S. 497B modified (12.1.1999) by S.I. 1998/3217, reg.2(b)

S. 497B modified (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 44(7), 145(3) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6))

**C113** S. 497B applied (with modifications) (1.4.2007) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), s. 15(4)(5), 109(2); S.I. 2007/1019, art. 3

**C114** S. 497B applied (with modifications) (31.8.2008) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), s. 29(4)(5), 109(2); S.I. 2008/17, art. 2(a)

**C115** S. 497B(3) applied (1.10.2002 for E., 1.8.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 64(4), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I

#### *Appointment of governors, etc.*

#### **498 Powers where no properly constituted governing body.**

- (1) Where it appears to the Secretary of State that, by reason of the default of any person, there is no properly constituted governing body of a school to which this section applies, the Secretary of State—
- may make such appointments and give such directions as he thinks desirable for the purpose of securing that there is a properly constituted governing body of that school, and
  - may give directions rendering valid any acts or proceedings which in his opinion are invalid or otherwise defective by reason of the default.

<sup>F682</sup>[(2) This section applies to any community, foundation or voluntary school or any community or foundation special school.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F682** S. 498(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), Sch. 30 para.131 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C79** Ss. 495-498 modified (1.4.2003 for E.; 31.10.2005 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), ss. 34\(7\), 216\(4\)](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2003/124, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.](#)
- C116** S. 498 extended (1.11.1996) by [1988 c. 40, s. 219\(4\)](#) (as substituted (1.11.1996) by [1996 c. 56, ss. 582\(1\), 583\(2\), Sch. 37 Pt. 1 para. 77](#) (with [ss. 1\(4\), 561, 562, Sch. 39](#))).
- C117** S. 498 modified (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 44\(7\)](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#)

*Membership of education committees*

**499 Power to direct appointment of members of education committees.**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies to any local authorities which in accordance with section 102(1) of the<sup>M10</sup>Local Government Act 1972 have appointed any committees wholly or partly for the purpose of discharging any functions with respect to education which are conferred on them in their capacity as local education authorities.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by directions to any local authorities to which this subsection applies require—
  - (a) every such committee, or
  - (b) any such committee of a description specified in the direction,
 to include persons appointed, in accordance with the directions, for securing the representation on the committee of persons who appoint foundation governors for voluntary schools in the area for which the committee acts.
- (3) Subsection (4) applies to any two or more local authorities which in accordance with section 102(1) of the<sup>M11</sup>Local Government Act 1972 have appointed any committees wholly or partly for the purpose of discharging any functions with respect to education which are conferred on them in their capacity as local education authorities.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by directions to any local authorities to which this subsection applies require—
  - (a) every such committee, or
  - (b) any such committee of a description specified in the direction,
 to include persons appointed, in accordance with the directions, for securing the representation on the committee of persons who appoint foundation governors for voluntary schools in the area for which the committee acts or in such area as may be specified in the direction.
- (5) The power of the Secretary of State to give directions under subsection (2) or (4) shall be exercisable in relation to any sub-committees which—
  - (a) are appointed by the authorities concerned or any such committee as is mentioned in that subsection, and
  - (b) are so appointed wholly or partly for the purpose of discharging the authorities' functions as mentioned in subsection (1) or (3) or the committee's functions with respect to education,
 as it is exercisable in relation to the committees themselves.
- <sup>F683</sup>(6) Regulations may require—
  - (a) any such committee as is mentioned in subsection (1) or (3), and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) any sub-committee appointed by any authorities within subsection (1) or (3), or by any committee within paragraph (a) of this subsection, for the purpose mentioned in subsection (5)(b),

to include one or more persons elected, in accordance with the regulations, as representatives of parent governors at maintained schools in relation to which the committee or sub-committee acts.

(7) Regulations may make provision for—

- (a) the number of persons who are to be elected for the purposes of subsection (6) in the case of any local education authority;
- (b) the procedure to be followed in connection with the election of such persons and the persons who are entitled to vote at such an election;
- (c) the circumstances in which persons are qualified or disqualified for being so elected or for holding office once elected;
- (d) the term of office of persons so elected and their voting rights;
- (e) the application to any such committee or sub-committee, with or without any modification, of any provision made by or under any other enactment and relating to committees or (as the case may be) sub-committees of a local authority;
- (f) such other matters connected with such elections or persons so elected as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.

(8) Regulations may also make provision—

- (a) enabling the Secretary of State to determine, where he considers it expedient to do so in view of the small number of maintained schools in relation to which a committee or sub-committee acts, that the requirement imposed on the committee or sub-committee by virtue of subsection (6) is to have effect as if it referred to representatives of parents of registered pupils (rather than representatives of parent governors) at those schools;
- (b) for any regulations under subsection (7) to have effect, where the Secretary of State makes any such determination, with such modifications as may be prescribed.

[<sup>F684</sup>(9) In subsections (6) and (8)—

- (a) “maintained school” means a community, foundation or voluntary school, a community or foundation special school or a maintained nursery school, and
- (b) “parent governor” means a governor elected or appointed as a parent governor under regulations made under section 19 of the Education Act 2002 (governing bodies).]]

**Textual Amendments**

**F683** S. 499(6)-(9) added (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s.9 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, Sch. 1 Pt.I

**F684** S. 499(9) substituted (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 50 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/2071, art. 2 (with art. 2(2)); S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C118** S. 499(9) savings for effects of 2002 c. 32, Sch. 21 para. 50 (W.) (31.10.2005) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/2913\)](#), regs. 1(1), **9**

**Marginal Citations**

**M10** 1972 c. 70.  
**M11** 1972 c. 70.

*Rationalisation of school places*

<sup>F685</sup>**500** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F685** S. 500 repealed (1.4.1999 to the extent that it relates to s. 500(2) and words in s. 502(3)(4) and 1.9.1999 otherwise) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\)\(3\), Sch. 30 para. 132, Sch.31](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#); [S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#)

<sup>F686</sup>**501** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F686** S. 501 repealed (1.4.1999 to the extent that it relates to s. 501(1)(a) and 1.9.1999 otherwise) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\)\(3\), Sch. 30 para. 132, Sch.31](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#); [S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#)

<sup>F687</sup>**502** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F687** S. 502 repealed (1.4.1999 to the extent that it relates to s. 502(6) and 1.9.1999 otherwise) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\)\(3\), Sch. 30 para. 132, Sch.31](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1999/1016, Art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#); [S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#)

<sup>F688</sup>**503** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F688** S. 503 repealed (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\)\(3\), Sch. 30 para. 132, Sch.31](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F689 **504** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F689** S. 504 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 132, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

F690 **505** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F690** S. 505 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3) Sch. 30 para. 132, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Medical examinations*

**506 Power to require medical examination of pupils.**

- (1) Where—
  - (a) a question is referred to the Secretary of State under section 442(3) or 495, and
  - (b) in his opinion the examination of any pupil by a registered medical practitioner appointed by him for the purpose would assist in determining the question,he may serve a notice on the parent of that pupil requiring the parent to present the pupil for examination by such a practitioner.
- (2) Any parent who without reasonable excuse fails to comply with any requirements of a notice served on him under subsection (1) is guilty of an offence.
- (3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 1 on the standard scale.

*Local inquiries*

F691 **507 Power to direct local inquiries.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F691** S. 507 repealed (7.6.2005) by Inquiries Act 2005 (c. 12), s. 51(1), Sch. 2 para. 15, **Sch. 3** (with ss. 44, 50); S.I. 2005/1432, art. 2

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C119** S. 507 extended (1.11.1996) by 1992 c. 13, s. 57(6)(b) (as substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1), 583(2), Sch. 37 Pt. 1 para.113 (with ss. 1(4), 561, 562, **Sch. 39**)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C120** S. 507 applied (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.1.2001 (W.) 1.4.2001 (E.)) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154, **Sch. 9 para. 34** (with s. 150)); S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, **Sch.**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)

## CHAPTER II

### ANCILLARY FUNCTIONS OF LOCAL EDUCATION AUTHORITIES

#### *Provision of services*

#### **[<sup>F692</sup>507] LEAs in England: functions in respect of recreational and training facilities for children under 13**

- (1) A local education authority in England must secure that the facilities for primary and secondary education provided for their area include adequate facilities for recreation and social and physical training for children who have not attained the age of 13.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) a local education authority may—
  - (a) establish, maintain and manage, or assist the establishment, maintenance and management of—
    - (i) camps, holiday classes, playing fields, play centres, and
    - (ii) other places, including playgrounds, gymnasiums and swimming baths not appropriated to any school or other educational institution, at which facilities for recreation and social and physical training are available for persons receiving primary or secondary education;
  - (b) organise games, expeditions and other activities for such persons; and
  - (c) defray, or contribute towards, the expenses of such games, expeditions and other activities.
- (3) When making arrangements for the provision of facilities or the organisation of activities in the exercise of their powers under subsection (2), a local education authority must, in particular, have regard to the expediency of co-operating with any voluntary societies or bodies whose objects include the provision of facilities or the organisation of activities of a similar character.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F692** S. 507A - S. 507B inserted (8.1.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), ss. **6(1)**, 188(2)

#### **507B LEAs in England: functions in respect of leisure-time activities etc for persons aged 13 to 19 and certain persons aged 20 to 24**

- (1) A local education authority in England must, so far as reasonably practicable, secure for qualifying young persons in the authority's area access to—
  - (a) sufficient educational leisure-time activities which are for the improvement of their well-being, and sufficient facilities for such activities; and
  - (b) sufficient recreational leisure-time activities which are for the improvement of their well-being, and sufficient facilities for such activities.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) “Qualifying young persons”, for the purposes of this section, are—
  - (a) persons who have attained the age of 13 but not the age of 20; and
  - (b) persons who have attained the age of 20 but not the age of 25 and have a learning difficulty (within the meaning of section 13(5)(a) and (6) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000).
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (1)(a)—
  - (a) “sufficient educational leisure-time activities” which are for the improvement of the well-being of qualifying young persons in the authority's area must include sufficient educational leisure-time activities which are for the improvement of their personal and social development, and
  - (b) “sufficient facilities for such activities” must include sufficient facilities for educational leisure-time activities which are for the improvement of the personal and social development of qualifying young persons in the authority's area.
- (4) References in the remaining provisions of this section to “positive leisure-time activities” are references to any activities falling within paragraph (a) or (b) of subsection (1).
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (1) a local education authority may—
  - (a) provide facilities for positive leisure-time activities;
  - (b) assist others in the provision of such facilities;
  - (c) make arrangements for facilitating access for qualifying young persons to such facilities;
  - (d) organise positive leisure-time activities;
  - (e) assist others in the organisation of such activities;
  - (f) make arrangements for facilitating access for qualifying young persons to such activities;
  - (g) enter into agreements or make arrangements with any person in connection with anything done or proposed to be done under any of paragraphs (a) to (f);
  - (h) take any other action which the authority think appropriate.
- (6) For the purposes of subsection (5)—
  - (a) the provision mentioned in paragraph (a) may include establishing, maintaining and managing places at which facilities for positive leisure-time activities are provided;
  - (b) the assistance mentioned in paragraphs (b) and (e) may include the provision of financial assistance;
  - (c) the arrangements mentioned in paragraphs (c) and (f) may include the provision of transport, of financial assistance or of information to any person.
- (7) Before taking any action for the purposes of subsection (1) (“the proposed action”), a local education authority must—
  - (a) consider whether it is expedient for the proposed action to be taken by another person, and
  - (b) where the authority consider that it is so expedient, take all reasonable steps to enter into an agreement or make arrangements with such a person for that purpose.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) For the purposes of subsection (7)(a) a local education authority must consult such persons as the authority think appropriate as to whether it is expedient for the proposed action to be taken by another person.
- (9) In exercising their functions under this section a local education authority must—
- (a) take steps to ascertain the views of qualifying young persons in the authority's area about—
    - (i) positive leisure-time activities, and facilities for such activities, in the authority's area;
    - (ii) the need for any additional such activities and facilities; and
    - (iii) access to such activities and facilities; and
  - (b) secure that the views of qualifying young persons in the authority's area are taken into account.
- (10) A local education authority in England must—
- (a) publicise information about positive leisure-time activities, and facilities for such activities, in the authority's area, and
  - (b) keep the information publicised under paragraph (a) up to date.
- (11) A local education authority may charge in respect of anything provided by the authority under this section where the provision is to a qualifying young person (whether or not in the authority's area).
- (12) In exercising their functions under this section a local education authority must have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (13) In this section—
- “recreation” includes physical training (and “recreational” is to be construed accordingly);
- “sufficient”, in relation to activities or facilities, means sufficient having regard to quantity;
- “well-being”, in relation to a person, means his well-being so far as relating to—
- (a) physical and mental health and emotional well-being;
  - (b) protection from harm and neglect;
  - (c) education, training and recreation;
  - (d) the contribution made by him to society;
  - (e) social and economic well-being.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F692** S. 507A - S. 507B inserted (8.1.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 6(1), 188(2)**

#### **508 [F693 LEAs in Wales: functions] in respect of facilities for recreation and social and physical training.**

- (1) A local education authority [F694 in Wales] shall secure that the facilities for primary, [F695 and secondary education] provided for their area include adequate facilities for recreation and social and physical training.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F696</sup>(1A) A local education authority [<sup>F697</sup> in Wales] may provide facilities for recreation and social and physical training as part of the facilities for further education provided (whether or not by them) for their area.]
- (2) [<sup>F698</sup>For the purpose of subsection (1) or (1A)] a local education authority—
- (a) may establish, maintain and manage, or assist the establishment, maintenance and management of,—
    - (i) camps, holiday classes, playing fields, play centres, and
    - (ii) other places, including playgrounds, gymnasiums and swimming baths not appropriated to any school or other educational institution, at which facilities for recreation and social and physical training are available for persons receiving primary, secondary or further education;
  - (b) may organise games, expeditions and other activities for such persons; and
  - (c) may defray, or contribute towards, the expenses of such games, expeditions and other activities.
- (3) When making arrangements for the provision of facilities or the organisation of activities in the exercise of their powers under subsection (2), a local education authority shall, in particular, have regard to the expediency of co-operating with any voluntary societies or bodies whose objects include the provision of facilities or the organisation of activities of a similar character.

#### Textual Amendments

- F693** Word in s. 508 heading substituted (8.1.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(2), [Sch. 1 para. 4\(b\)](#)
- F694** Words in s. 508(1) inserted (8.1.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(2), [Sch. 1 para. 4\(a\)](#)
- F695** Words in s. 508(1) substituted (1.4.2001) by [2000 c. 21, s. 137\(2\)](#), (with s. 150); [S.I. 2001/654](#), art. 2(2), [Sch. Pt. II](#); [S.I. 2001/1274](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- F696** S. 508(1A) inserted (1.4.2001) by [2000 c. 21, s. 137\(3\)](#) (with s. 150); [S.I. 2001/654](#), art. 2(2), [Sch. Pt. II](#); [S.I. 2001/1274](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- F697** Words in s. 508(1A) inserted (8.1.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(2), [Sch. 1 para. 4\(a\)](#)
- F698** Words in s. 508(2) substituted (1.4.2001) by [2000 c. 21, s. 137\(4\)](#), (with s. 150); [S.I. 2001/654](#), art. 2(2), [Sch. Pt. II](#); [S.I. 2001/1274](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

#### [<sup>F699</sup>508] **ALEAs in England: duty to promote sustainable modes of travel etc**

- (1) A local education authority in England must—
- (a) prepare for each academic year a document containing their strategy to promote the use of sustainable modes of travel to meet the school travel needs of their area (“a sustainable modes of travel strategy”),
  - (b) publish the strategy in such manner and by such time as may be prescribed, and
  - (c) promote the use of sustainable modes of travel to meet the school travel needs of their area.
- (2) Before preparing a sustainable modes of travel strategy, an authority must in particular—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) assess the school travel needs of their area, and
  - (b) assess the facilities and services for sustainable modes of travel to, from and within their area.
- (3) “Sustainable modes of travel” are modes of travel which the authority consider may improve either or both of the following—
- (a) the physical well-being of those who use them;
  - (b) the environmental well-being of the whole or a part of their area.
- (4) The “school travel needs” of a local education authority's area are—
- (a) the needs of children and persons of sixth form age in the authority's area as regards travel mentioned in subsection (5), and
  - (b) the needs of other children and persons of sixth form age as regards travel mentioned in subsection (6).
- (5) The needs of children and persons of sixth form age in the authority's area as regards travel referred to in subsection (4)(a) are their needs as regards travel to and from—
- (a) schools at which they receive or are to receive education or training,
  - (b) institutions within the further education sector at which they receive or are to receive education or training, or
  - (c) any other places where they receive or are to receive education by virtue of arrangements made in pursuance of section 19(1).
- (6) The needs of other children and persons of sixth form age as regards travel referred to in subsection (4)(b) are their needs as regards travel to and from—
- (a) schools at which they receive or are to receive education or training,
  - (b) institutions within the further education sector at which they receive or are to receive education or training, or
  - (c) any other places where they receive or are to receive education by virtue of arrangements made in pursuance of section 19(1),
- in so far as that travel relates to travel within the authority's area.
- (7) The Secretary of State must issue, and may from time to time revise, guidance in relation to the discharge by a local education authority of their duties under this section.
- (8) Before issuing or revising guidance under subsection (7), the Secretary of State must consult such persons as he considers appropriate.
- (9) In discharging their duties under this section an authority must—
- (a) consult such persons as they consider appropriate, and
  - (b) have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State under subsection (7).
- (10) References in this section to persons of sixth form age are to be construed in accordance with subsection (1) of section 509AC.
- (11) In this section, “academic year” has the same meaning as in section 509AC in the case of local education authorities in England.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F699** S. 508A inserted (1.4.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 76**, 188(3); S.I. 2007/935, art. 5(1)

## [<sup>F700</sup>508] LEAs in England: travel arrangements for eligible children

- (1) A local education authority in England must make, in the case of an eligible child in the authority's area to whom subsection (2) applies, such travel arrangements as they consider necessary in order to secure that suitable home to school travel arrangements, for the purpose of facilitating the child's attendance at the relevant educational establishment in relation to him, are made and provided free of charge in relation to the child.
- (2) This subsection applies to an eligible child if—
  - (a) no travel arrangements relating to travel in either direction between his home and the relevant educational establishment in relation to him, or in both directions, are provided free of charge in relation to him by any person who is not the authority, or
  - (b) such travel arrangements are provided free of charge in relation to him by any person who is not the authority but those arrangements, taken together with any other such travel arrangements which are so provided, do not provide suitable home to school travel arrangements for the purpose of facilitating his attendance at the relevant educational establishment in relation to him.
- (3) “Home to school travel arrangements”, in relation to an eligible child, are travel arrangements relating to travel in both directions between the child's home and the relevant educational establishment in question in relation to that child.
- (4) “Travel arrangements”, in relation to an eligible child, are travel arrangements of any description and include—
  - (a) arrangements for the provision of transport, and
  - (b) any of the following arrangements only if they are made with the consent of a parent of the child—
    - (i) arrangements for the provision of one or more persons to escort the child (whether alone or together with other children) when travelling to or from the relevant educational establishment in relation to the child;
    - (ii) arrangements for the payment of the whole or any part of a person's reasonable travelling expenses;
    - (iii) arrangements for the payment of allowances in respect of the use of particular modes of travel.
- (5) “Travel arrangements”, in relation to an eligible child, include travel arrangements of any description made by any parent of the child only if those arrangements are made by the parent voluntarily.
- (6) “Travel arrangements”, in relation to an eligible child, do not comprise or include travel arrangements which give rise to additional costs and do not include appropriate protection against those costs.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (6)—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) travel arrangements give rise to additional costs only if they give rise to any need to incur expenditure in order for the child to take advantage of anything provided for him in pursuance of the arrangements, and
  - (b) travel arrangements include appropriate protection against those costs only if they include provision for any expenditure that needs to be incurred for the purpose mentioned in paragraph (a) in the case of the child to be met by the person by whom the arrangements are made.
- (8) Travel arrangements are provided free of charge if there is no charge for anything provided in pursuance of the arrangements.
- (9) Schedule 35B has effect for the purposes of defining “eligible child” for the purposes of this section.
- (10) References to a “relevant educational establishment”, in relation to an eligible child, are references to—
- (a) in the case of a child who is an eligible child by virtue of falling within any of paragraphs 2, 4, 6, 9, 11 and 12 of Schedule 35B, the qualifying school (within the meaning of that Schedule) at which the child is a registered pupil referred to in the paragraph in question, and
  - (b) in the case of a child who is an eligible child by virtue of falling within any of paragraphs 3, 5, 7, 10 and 13 of Schedule 35B, the place other than a school, where the child is receiving education by virtue of arrangements made in pursuance of section 19(1), referred to in the paragraph in question.
- (11) Regulations may modify subsections (1) and (2) to provide for their application in cases where there is more than one relevant educational establishment in relation to a child.

#### Textual Amendments

**F700** Ss. 508B-508D inserted (1.4.2007 for the insertion of ss. 508B(11), 508D, 1.9.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), [ss. 77\(1\)](#), [188\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2007/935](#), [art. 5\(m\)](#); [S.I. 2007/1801](#), [art. 4\(b\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C121** S. 508B(1)(2) modified (E.) (1.9.2007) by [The School Travel \(Pupils with Dual Registration\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1367\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)\(b\)](#), [2](#)

### 508C LEAs in England: travel arrangements etc for other children

- (1) A local education authority in England may make such school travel arrangements as they consider necessary, in relation to any child in the authority's area to whom this section applies, for the purpose of facilitating the child's attendance at any relevant educational establishment in relation to the child.
- (2) This section applies to a child who is not an eligible child for the purposes of section 508B.
- (3) “School travel arrangements”, in relation to such a child, are travel arrangements relating to travel in either direction between his home and any relevant educational establishment in relation to the child, or in both directions.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) “Travel arrangements”, in relation to such a child, are travel arrangements of any description and include—
- (a) arrangements for the provision of transport, and
  - (b) any of the following arrangements only if they are made with the consent of a parent of the child—
    - (i) arrangements for the provision of one or more persons to escort the child (whether alone or together with other children) when travelling to or from any relevant educational establishment in relation to the child;
    - (ii) arrangements for the payment of the whole or any part of a person's reasonable travelling expenses;
    - (iii) arrangements for the payment of allowances in respect of the use of particular modes of travel.
- (5) A local education authority in England may pay, in the case of a child in the authority's area to whom this section applies and in relation to whom no arrangements are made by the authority under subsection (1), the whole or any part, as they think fit, of a person's reasonable travelling expenses in relation to that child's travel in either direction between his home and any relevant educational establishment in relation to the child, or in both directions.
- (6) References to a “relevant educational establishment”, in relation to a child to whom this section applies, are references to—
- (a) any school at which he is a registered pupil,
  - (b) any institution within the further education sector at which he is receiving education, or
  - (c) any place other than a school where he is receiving education by virtue of arrangements made in pursuance of section 19(1).

#### Textual Amendments

**F700** Ss. 508B-508D inserted (1.4.2007 for the insertion of ss. 508B(11), 508D, 1.9.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), [ss. 77\(1\), 188\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2007/935](#), [art. 5\(m\)](#); [S.I. 2007/1801](#), [art. 4\(b\)](#)

#### **508D Guidance etc in relation to sections 508B and 508C**

- (1) The Secretary of State must issue, and may from time to time revise, guidance in relation to the discharge by a local education authority of their functions under sections 508B and 508C.
- (2) Before issuing or revising guidance under subsection (1), the Secretary of State must consult such persons as he considers appropriate.
- (3) In discharging their functions under sections 508B and 508C an authority must have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State under subsection (1).
- (4) Regulations may require a local education authority to publish, at such times and in such manner as may be prescribed, such information as may be prescribed with respect

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

to the authority's policy and arrangements relating to the discharge of their functions under section 508B or 508C.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F700** Ss. 508B-508D inserted (1.4.2007 for the insertion of ss. 508B(11), 508D, 1.9.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 77(1), 188(3)**; S.I. 2007/935, art. 5(m); S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(b)

#### [<sup>F701</sup>508E]LEAs in England: school travel schemes

- (1) Schedule 35C has effect in relation to school travel schemes.
- (2) Where a school travel scheme is in force under Schedule 35C, the local education authority in England by which the scheme is made must give effect to the scheme by—
  - (a) making the arrangements which are set out in the scheme as described in paragraph 2(1) of that Schedule as arrangements to be made by the authority,
  - (b) complying with the requirement of the scheme described in paragraph 2(5) of that Schedule (requirement to make suitable alternative arrangements),
  - (c) complying with the requirement of the scheme described in paragraph 3 of that Schedule (travel arrangements for eligible children), and
  - (d) complying with the scheme's policy applicable to charging and any other requirements of the scheme.
- (3) Where a school travel scheme is in force under Schedule 35C, the local education authority in England by which the scheme is made do not have any functions under section 508B or 508C in relation to children in their area.
- (4) The Secretary of State must issue, and may from time to time revise, guidance in relation to the discharge by a local education authority in England of any duty under subsection (2) or of any functions under Schedule 35C.
- (5) Before issuing or revising guidance under subsection (4), the Secretary of State must consult such persons as he considers appropriate.
- (6) In discharging any duty under subsection (2) and in exercising any functions under Schedule 35C, a local education authority in England must have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State under subsection (4).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F701** S. 508E inserted (1.4.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 78(1), 188(3)**; S.I. 2007/935, art. 5(n)

#### 509 [<sup>F702</sup>LEAs in Wales: provision] of transport etc.

- (1) A local education authority [<sup>F703</sup> in Wales] shall make such arrangements for the provision of transport and otherwise as they consider necessary, or as the [<sup>F704</sup>National Assembly for Wales] may direct, for the purpose of facilitating the attendance of persons [<sup>F705</sup>not of sixth form age] receiving education—
  - (a) at schools,



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) at any institution maintained or assisted by the authority which provides further education or higher education (or both),<sup>F706</sup> or;
  - (c) at any institution within the further education sector,<sup>F707</sup> . . .
  - <sup>F707</sup>(d) . . . . .
- <sup>F708</sup>(1A) A local education authority [<sup>F709</sup> in Wales] shall make such arrangements for the provision of transport and otherwise as they consider necessary, or as the [<sup>F710</sup>National Assembly for Wales] may direct, for the purpose of facilitating the attendance of persons [<sup>F705</sup>not of sixth form age] receiving education or training at an institution outside both the further education and higher education sectors.
- (1B) Arrangements under subsection (1A) may be made in relation to a person only if <sup>F711</sup>... the [<sup>F712</sup>National Assembly for Wales] has secured for him—
- (a) the provision of education or training at the institution, and
  - (b) the provision of boarding accommodation under section <sup>F713</sup>... 41 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.]
- (2) Any transport provided in pursuance of arrangements under subsection (1) [<sup>F714</sup>or (1A)] shall be provided free of charge.
- (3) A local education [<sup>F715</sup>or training] authority [<sup>F716</sup> in Wales] may pay the whole or any part, as they think fit, of the reasonable travelling expenses of any person [<sup>F717</sup>not of sixth form age] receiving education—
- (a) at a school, or
  - (b) at any such institution as is mentioned in subsection (1) [<sup>F718</sup>or (1A)],
- for whose transport no arrangements are made under [<sup>F719</sup>either of those subsections].
- (4) In considering whether or not they are required by subsection (1) [<sup>F720</sup>or (1A)] to make arrangements in relation to a particular person, a local education authority shall have regard (amongst other things)—
- (a) to the age of the person and the nature of the route, or alternative routes, which he could reasonably be expected to take; and
  - (b) to any wish of his parent for him to be provided with education [<sup>F721</sup>or training] at a school or institution in which the religious education provided is that of the religion or denomination to which his parent adheres.
- (5) Arrangements made by a local education authority under subsection (1) [<sup>F722</sup>or (1A)] shall—
- <sup>F723</sup>(a) . . . . .
  - (b) make provision for persons receiving full-time education at any institution within the further education sector which is no less favourable than the provision made in pursuance of the arrangements for pupils of the same age at schools maintained by a local education authority; and
  - <sup>F724</sup>(c) make provision for persons receiving full-time education or training at institutions mentioned in subsection (1A) which is no less favourable than the provision made in pursuance of the arrangements for persons of the same age with learning difficulties (within the meaning of [<sup>F725</sup>section 41] of the Learning and Skills Act 2000) for whom the authority secures the provision of education at any other institution.]
- <sup>F726</sup>(6) . . . . .

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F727</sup>(7) References in this section to persons not of sixth form age shall be construed in accordance with subsection (1) of section 509AC.]

### Textual Amendments

- F702** Words in s. 509 heading substituted (1.9.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), **Sch. 10 para. 4(7)**; S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(l) (with art. 5(1))
- F703** Words in s. 509(1) inserted (1.9.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), **Sch. 10 para. 4(2)(a)**; S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(l) (with art. 5(1))
- F704** Words in s. 509(1) substituted (1.9.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), **Sch. 10 para. 4(2)(b)**; S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(l) (with art. 5(1))
- F705** Words in s. 509(1)(1A) inserted (20.1.2003 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), **Sch. 19 para. 2(a)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F706** Word in s. 509(1)(b) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 59(2)(a)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F707** S. 509(1)(d) and preceding word repealed (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 153, **Sch. 9 para. 59(2)(b)**, **Sch. 11** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F708** S. 509(1A)(1B) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 59(3)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F709** Words in s. 509(1A) inserted (1.9.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), **Sch. 10 para. 4(3)(a)**; S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(l) (with art. 5(1))
- F710** Words in s. 509(1A) substituted (1.9.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), **Sch. 10 para. 4(3)(b)**; S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(l) (with art. 5(1))
- F711** Words in s. 509(1B) repealed (1.9.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), Sch. 10 para. 4(4)(a), **Sch. 18 Pt. 6**; S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(l)(m) (with art. 5(1))
- F712** Words in s. 509(1B) substituted (1.4.2006) by [The National Council for Education and Training for Wales \(Transfer of Functions to the National Assembly for Wales and Abolition\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/3238\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 33** (with art. 7)
- F713** Words in s. 509(1B)(b) repealed (1.9.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), Sch. 10 para. 4(4)(b), **Sch. 18 Pt. 6**; S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(l)(m) (with art. 5(1))
- F714** Words in s. 509(2) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 59(4)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F715** Words in s. 509(3) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 59(5)(a)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F716** Words in s. 509(3) inserted (1.9.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), **Sch. 10 para. 4(5)**; S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(l) (with art. 5(1))
- F717** Words in s. 509(3) inserted (20.1.2003 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), **Sch. 19 para. 2(b)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F718** Words in s. 509(3)(b) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 59(5)(b)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F719** Words in s. 509(3) substituted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 59(5)(c)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F720** Words in s. 509(4) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 59(6)(a)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F721** Words in s. 509(4) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 59(6)(b)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F722** Words in s. 509(5) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 59(7)(a)** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**
- F723** S. 509(5)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 133(a), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F724** S. 509(5)(c) substituted (20.1.2003 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 19 para. 2(c)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F725** Words in s. 509(5)(c) substituted (1.9.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(3), **Sch. 10 para. 4(6)**; S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(1) (with art. 5(1))
- F726** S. 509(6) repealed (20.1.2003 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F727** S. 509(7) inserted (20.1.2003 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 19 para. 2(d)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

[<sup>F728</sup>**509A** **Provision of transport etc. for persons of sixth form age**

- (1) A local education authority shall prepare for each academic year a transport policy statement complying with the requirements of this section.
- (2) The statement shall specify the arrangements for the provision of transport or otherwise that the authority consider it necessary to make for facilitating the attendance of persons of sixth form age receiving education or training—
  - (a) at schools,
  - (b) at any institution maintained or assisted by the authority which provides further education or higher education (or both),
  - (c) at any institution within the further education sector, or
  - (d) at any establishment (not falling within paragraph (b) or (c)) which is supported by the Learning and Skills Council for England or the [<sup>F729</sup>National Assembly for Wales] .
- (3) The statement shall specify the arrangements that the authority consider it necessary to make for the provision of financial assistance in respect of the reasonable travelling expenses of persons of sixth form age receiving education or training at any establishment such as is mentioned in subsection (2).
- (4) The statement shall specify the arrangements proposed to be made by the governing bodies of—
  - (a) schools maintained by the authority at which education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age is provided, and
  - (b) institutions within the further education sector in the authority's area,for the provision of transport for facilitating the attendance of persons of sixth form age receiving education or training at the schools and institutions and for the provision of financial assistance in respect of the travelling expenses of such persons.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Those governing bodies shall co-operate in giving the local education authority any information and other assistance that is reasonably required by the authority for the performance of their functions under this section and section 509AB.
- (6) The statement shall specify any travel concessions (within the meaning of Part 5 of the Transport Act 1985 (c. 67)) which are to be provided under any scheme established under section 93 of that Act to persons of sixth form age receiving education at any establishment such as is mentioned in subsection (2) above in the authority's area.
- (7) The authority shall—
- (a) publish the statement, in a manner which they consider appropriate, on or before 31st May in the year in which the academic year in question begins, and
  - (b) make, and secure that effect is given to, any arrangements specified under subsections (2) and (3).
- (8) Nothing in this section prevents a local education authority from making, at any time in an academic year, arrangements—
- (a) which are not specified in the transport policy statement published by the authority for that year, but
  - (b) which they have come to consider necessary for the purposes mentioned in subsections (2) and (3).
- (9) The [<sup>F730</sup>appropriate authority] may, if [<sup>F731</sup>it] considers it expedient to do so, direct a local education authority to make for any academic year—
- (a) arrangements for the provision of transport or otherwise for facilitating the attendance of persons of sixth form age receiving education or training at establishments such as are mentioned in subsection (2), or
  - (b) arrangements for providing financial assistance in respect of the reasonable travelling expenses of such persons,
- which have not been specified in the transport policy statement published by the authority for that academic year.

[ The “appropriate authority” means—

- <sup>F732</sup>(9A) (a) in the case of a local education authority in England, the Secretary of State, and
- (b) in the case of a local education authority in Wales, the National Assembly for Wales.]

- (10) The Secretary of State [<sup>F733</sup>(in relation to local education authorities in England) or the National Assembly for Wales (in relation to local education authorities in Wales)] may by order amend subsection (7)(a) by substituting a different date for 31st May.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F728** S. 509AA inserted (20.1.2003 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 19 para. 3](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2952](#), art. 2; [S.I. 2003/1718](#), art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F729** Words in s. 509AA(2)(d) substituted (1.4.2006) by [The National Council for Education and Training for Wales \(Transfer of Functions to the National Assembly for Wales and Abolition\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/3238\)](#), art. 1(1), [Sch. 1 para. 34](#) (with art. 7)
- F730** Words in s. 509AA(9) substituted (1.4.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), [ss. 83\(1\)\(a\)\(i\)](#), [188\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2007/935](#), art. 5(o)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F731** Word in s. 509AA(9) substituted (1.4.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 83(1)(a)(ii), 188(3); S.I. 2007/935, art. 5(o)
- F732** S. 509AA(9A) inserted (1.4.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 83(1)(b), 188(3); S.I. 2007/935, art. 5(o)
- F733** Words in s. 509AA(10) inserted (1.4.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 83(1)(c), 188(3); S.I. 2007/935, art. 5(o)

**[<sup>F734</sup>509AA] Further provision about transport policy statements**

- (1) A statement prepared under section 509AA shall state to what extent arrangements specified in accordance with subsection (2) of that section include arrangements for facilitating the attendance at establishments such as are mentioned in that subsection of disabled persons and persons with learning difficulties.
- (2) A statement prepared under that section shall—
- (a) specify arrangements for persons receiving full-time education or training at establishments other than schools maintained by the local education authority which are no less favourable than the arrangements specified for pupils of the same age attending such schools, and
  - (b) specify arrangements for persons with learning difficulties receiving education or training at establishments other than schools maintained by the authority which are no less favourable than the arrangements specified for pupils of the same age with learning difficulties attending such schools.
- (3) In considering what arrangements it is necessary to make for the purposes mentioned in subsections (2) and (3) of section 509AA the local education authority shall have regard (amongst other things) to—
- (a) the needs of those for whom it would not be reasonably practicable to attend a particular establishment to receive education or training if no arrangements were made,
  - (b) the need to secure that persons in their area have reasonable opportunities to choose between different establishments at which education or training is provided,
  - (c) the distance from the homes of persons of sixth form age in their area of establishments such as are mentioned in section 509AA(2) at which education or training suitable to their needs is provided, and
  - (d) the cost of transport to the establishments in question and of any alternative means of facilitating the attendance of persons receiving education or training there.

[ In considering whether or not it is necessary to make arrangements for those purposes <sup>F735</sup>(3A) in relation to a particular person, a local education authority in England shall have regard (amongst other things) to the nature of the route, or alternative routes, which he could reasonably be expected to take.]

- (4) In considering whether or not it is necessary to make arrangements for [<sup>F736</sup>the purposes mentioned in subsections (2) and (3) of section 509AA] in relation to a particular person, a local education authority [<sup>F737</sup>in Wales] shall have regard (amongst other things)—
- (a) to the nature of the route, or alternative routes, which he could reasonably be expected to take; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) to any wish of his parent for him to be provided with education or training at a school, institution or other establishment in which the religious education provided is that of the religion or denomination to which his parent adheres.
- (5) In preparing a statement under section 509AA a local education authority shall have regard to any guidance issued [<sup>F738</sup>under this section—
- (a) by the Learning and Skills Council for England (in the case of an authority in England), or
- (b) by the National Assembly for Wales (in the case of an authority in Wales).]
- (6) In preparing a statement under that section a local education authority shall consult—
- (a) any other local education authority that they consider it appropriate to consult,
- (b) the governing bodies mentioned in subsection (4) of that section,
- (c) the Learning and Skills Council for England (in the case of a local education authority in England) <sup>F739</sup>..., and
- (d) any other person specified [<sup>F740</sup>for the purposes of this section by the Learning and Skills Council for England (in the case of an authority in England) or the National Assembly for Wales (in the case of an authority in Wales).]
- (7) In preparing a statement under that section a local education authority shall also consult—
- (a) where they are the local education authority for a district in a metropolitan county, the Passenger Transport Authority for that county, and
- (b) where they are the local education authority for a London borough or the City of London, Transport for London.]
- [<sup>F741</sup>(8) Any guidance issued by the Learning and Skills Council for England under this section must be published in such manner as the Council thinks fit.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F734** S. 509AB inserted (20.1.2003 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), **Sch. 19 para. 4** (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), [214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2952](#), art. 2; [S.I. 2003/1718](#), art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F735** S. 509AB(3A) inserted (1.4.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), **Sch. 10 para. 5(a)**; [S.I. 2007/935](#), art. 5(ee)
- F736** Words in s. 509AB(4) substituted (1.4.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), **Sch. 10 para. 5(b)(i)**; [S.I. 2007/935](#), art. 5(ee)
- F737** Words in s. 509AB(4) inserted (1.4.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), **Sch. 10 para. 5(b)(ii)**; [S.I. 2007/935](#), art. 5(ee)
- F738** Words in s. 509AB(5) substituted (1.4.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 83(2)(a)**, 188(3); [S.I. 2007/935](#), art. 5(o) (with art. 8(6))
- F739** Words in s. 509AB(6)(c) omitted (1.4.2006) by virtue of [The National Council for Education and Training for Wales \(Transfer of Functions to the National Assembly for Wales and Abolition\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/3238\)](#), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 35** (with art. 7)
- F740** Words in s. 509AB(6)(d) substituted (1.4.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 83(2)(b)**, 188(3); [S.I. 2007/935](#), art. 5(o) (with art. 8(7))
- F741** S. 509AB(8) inserted (1.4.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 83(2)(c)**, 188(3); [S.I. 2007/935](#), art. 5(o)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## [<sup>F742</sup>509AC] Interpretation of sections 509AA and 509AB

- (1) For the purposes of sections 509AA and 509AB a person receiving education or training at an establishment is of sixth form age if he is over compulsory school age but—
    - (a) is under the age of 19, or
    - (b) has begun a particular course of education or training at the establishment before attaining the age of 19 and continues to attend that course.
  - (2) References in section 509AA to an establishment supported by the Learning and Skills Council for England are to any establishment at which education or training is provided by a person to whom that Council secures the provision of financial resources in any of the ways mentioned in section 5(2) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.
  - (3) References in section 509AA to an establishment supported by the [<sup>F743</sup>National Assembly for Wales] are to any establishment at which education or training is provided by a person to whom [<sup>F744</sup>the Assembly] secures the provision of financial resources in any of the ways mentioned in section 34(2) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.
  - (4) References in section 509AB to persons with learning difficulties are to be construed in accordance with section 13(5) and (6) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.
  - (5) In sections 509AA and 509AB and this section—
    - “academic year” means any period commencing with 1st August and ending with the next 31st July;
    - “disabled person” has the same meaning as in the Disability Discrimination Act 1995;
    - “establishment” means an establishment of any kind, including a school or institution;
    - “governing body”, in relation to an institution within the further education sector, has the same meaning as in the Further and Higher Education Act 1992.
  - (6) The Secretary of State may by order amend the definition of “academic year” in subsection (5) [<sup>F745</sup>in relation to its application in the case of local education authorities in England].
- [<sup>F746</sup>The National Assembly for Wales may by order amend the definition of “academic year” in subsection (5) in relation to its application in the case of local education authorities in Wales.]

### Textual Amendments

- F742** S. 509AC inserted (20.1.2003 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 19 para. 5** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F743** Words in s. 509AC(3) substituted (1.4.2006) by The National Council for Education and Training for Wales (Transfer of Functions to the National Assembly for Wales and Abolition) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/3238), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 36(a)** (with art. 7)
- F744** Words in s. 509AC(3) substituted (1.4.2006) by The National Council for Education and Training for Wales (Transfer of Functions to the National Assembly for Wales and Abolition) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/3238), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 36(b)** (with art. 7)
- F745** Words in s. 509AC(6) inserted (1.4.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), **ss. 83(3)(a)**, 188(3); S.I. 2007/935, art. 5(o)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F746** S. 509AC(7) inserted (1.4.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 83(3)(b)**, 188(3); S.I. 2007/935, art. 5(o)

**[<sup>F747</sup>509A] ~~IE~~As in England: duty to have regard to religion or belief in exercise of travel functions**

- (1) A local education authority in England must have regard, amongst other things, in exercising any of their travel functions in relation to or in connection with the travel of a person or persons to or from a school, institution or other place, to any wish of a parent of such a person for him to be provided with education or training at a particular school, institution or other place where that wish is based on the parent's religion or belief.
- (2) The “travel functions” of a local education authority in England are their functions under any of the following provisions—
  - section 508A (duty to promote sustainable modes of travel etc);
  - section 508B (travel arrangements for eligible children);
  - section 508C (travel arrangements etc for other children);
  - section 508E and Schedule 35C (school travel schemes);
  - section 508F (transport etc for certain adult learners);
  - section 509AA (transport etc for persons of sixth form age).
- (3) For the purposes of this section—
  - (a) “religion” means any religion,
  - (b) “belief” means any religious or philosophical belief,
  - (c) a reference to religion includes a reference to lack of religion, and
  - (d) a reference to belief includes a reference to lack of belief.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F747** S. 509AD inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.9.2007 for specified purposes) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 84**, 188(3); S.I. 2007/935, art. 5(p); S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(e)

**[<sup>F749</sup>509A] Travel arrangements for children receiving [<sup>F748</sup>early years education] otherwise than at school.**

- (1) A local education authority may provide a child with assistance under this section if they are satisfied that, without such assistance, he would be prevented from attending at any premises—
  - (a) which are not a school or part of a school, but
  - (b) at which relevant [<sup>F750</sup>early years education] is provided,
 for the purpose of receiving such education there.
- (2) The assistance which may be provided for a child under this section consists of either—
  - (a) making arrangements (whether for the provision of transport or otherwise) for the purpose of facilitating the child's attendance at the premises concerned, or
  - (b) paying the whole or any part of his reasonable travel expenses.



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) When considering whether to provide a child with assistance under this section in connection with his attendance at any premises, a local education authority may have regard (among other things) to whether it would be reasonable to expect alternative arrangements to be made for him to receive relevant [<sup>F751</sup>early years education] at any other premises (whether nearer to his home or otherwise).
- (4) Where the assistance to be provided for a child under this section consists of making arrangements for the provision of transport, the authority may, if they consider it appropriate to do so, determine that the assistance shall not be so provided unless—
- (a) the child’s parent, or
  - (b) the person providing the relevant [<sup>F751</sup>early years education] concerned, agrees to make to the authority such payments in respect of the provision of the transport (not exceeding the cost to the authority of its provision) as they may determine.
- [ Regulations may require a local education authority to publish, at such times and in <sup>F752</sup>(4A) such manner as may be prescribed, such information as may be prescribed with respect to the authority’s policy and arrangements relating to the making of provision under this section.]
- [<sup>F753</sup>(5) In this section “relevant early years education” means—
- (a) in relation to England, early years provision as defined by section 20 of the Childcare Act 2006 which is provided under arrangements made by a local authority in England in pursuance of the duty imposed by section 7 of that Act (whether or not the local authority provides the early years provision);
  - (b) in relation to Wales, nursery education which is provided—
    - (i) by a local education authority in Wales, or
    - (ii) by any other person who is in receipt of financial assistance given by a local authority under arrangements made by them in pursuance of the duty imposed by section 118 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F748** Words in s. 509A heading substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\), s. 109\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 23\(a\)](#); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)
- F749** S. 509A inserted (1.4.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 124](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(4), [Sch. 1 Pt. IV](#)
- F750** Words in s. 509A(1)(b) substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\), s. 109\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 23\(a\)](#); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)
- F751** Words in s. 509A(3) and 509A(4)(b) substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\), s. 109\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 23\(a\)](#); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)
- F752** S. 509A(4A) inserted (20.1.2003 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), s. 216\(4\), Sch. 19 para. 6](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F753** S. 509A(5) substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\), s. 109\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 23\(b\)](#); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)

#### 510 Provision of clothing.

- (1) A local education authority may provide clothing for—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any pupil who is a boarder at an educational institution maintained by the authority [<sup>F754</sup>or at a grant-maintained school],
  - (b) any pupil at a nursery school maintained by the authority, and
  - (c) any pupil in a nursery class at a school maintained by the authority [<sup>F754</sup>or at a grant-maintained school].
- (2) A local education authority may also provide clothing for any pupil—
- (a) for whom they are providing board and lodging elsewhere than at an educational institution maintained by them, and
  - (b) for whom special educational provision is made in pursuance of arrangements made by them.
- (3) Where it appears to a local education authority, in a case where neither subsection (1) nor subsection (2) applies, that a pupil at—
- (a) a school maintained by them [<sup>F755</sup>or a grant-maintained school], or
  - (b) a special school (whether maintained by them or not),
- is unable by reason of the inadequacy or unsuitability of his clothing to take full advantage of the education provided at the school, the authority may provide him with such clothing as in their opinion is necessary for the purpose of ensuring that he is sufficiently and suitably clad while he remains a pupil at the school.
- (4) A local education authority may provide—
- (a) for pupils at a school maintained by them [<sup>F756</sup>, at a grant-maintained school] or at an institution maintained by them which provides further education or higher education (or both),
  - (b) for persons who have not attained the age of 19 and who are receiving education at an institution within the further education sector, and
  - (c) for persons who make use of facilities for physical training [<sup>F757</sup>secured by the authority under section 507A or 507B (if the authority are in England) or made available by the authority for such persons under section 508(2) (if the authority are in Wales)] ,
- such articles of clothing as the authority may determine suitable for the physical training provided at that school or institution or under those facilities.
- (5) A local education authority may—
- (a) with the consent of the proprietor of a school not maintained by the authority, other than a [<sup>F758</sup>grant-maintained school or] special school, and
  - (b) on such financial and other terms, if any, as may be determined by agreement between the authority and the proprietor,
- make arrangements, in the case of any pupil at the school who is unable by reason of the inadequacy or unsuitability of his clothing to take full advantage of the education provided at the school, for securing for the pupil the provision of such clothing as is necessary for the purpose of ensuring that he is sufficiently and suitably clad while he remains a pupil at the school.
- (6) Any arrangements made under subsection (5) shall be such as to secure, so far as is practicable, that the expense incurred by the authority in connection with the provision of any article under the arrangements does not exceed the expense which would have been incurred by them in the provision of it if the pupil had been a pupil at a school maintained by them.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F754** Words in s. 510(1)(a)(c) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 134(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.
- F755** Words in s. 510(3)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 134(b), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.
- F756** Words in s. 510(4)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 134(c), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.
- F757** Words in s. 510(4)(c) substituted (8.1.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(2), **Sch. 1 para. 5**
- F758** Words in s. 510(5)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 134(d), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

## 511 Provisions supplementary to section 510.

- (1) Provision of clothing under section 510 may be made in such way as to confer either a right of property in the clothing or a right of user only (at the option of the providing authority), except in any circumstances for which the adoption of one or other of those ways of making such provision is prescribed.
- (2) Where a local education authority have provided a person with clothing under section 510, then, in such circumstances respectively as may be prescribed—
  - (a) the authority shall require his parent to pay to them in respect of its provision such sum (if any) as in their opinion he is able to pay without financial hardship, not exceeding the cost to the authority of its provision;
  - (b) the authority may require his parent to pay to them in respect of its provision such sum as is mentioned in paragraph (a) or any lesser sum; or
  - (c) his parent shall not be required to pay any sum in respect of its provision.
- (3) Any sum which a parent is duly required to pay by virtue of subsection (2)(a) or (b) may be recovered summarily as a civil debt.
- (4) Where a person who has attained the age of 18 (other than a registered pupil at a school) is provided with clothing under section 510, any reference in subsection (2) or (3) to his parent shall be read as a reference to him.

## [<sup>F759</sup>512 LEA functions concerning provision of meals, etc.

- (1) A local education authority may provide—
  - (a) registered pupils at any school maintained by the authority,
  - (b) other persons who receive education at such a school, and
  - (c) children who receive [<sup>F760</sup>relevant funded early years education] ,  
with milk, meals and other refreshments.
- (2) Where provision is made under subsection (1), it shall be made—
  - (a) in a case within paragraph (a) or (b) of that subsection, either on the school premises or at any other place where education is being provided, and
  - (b) in a case within paragraph (c) of that subsection, at any place where education is being provided.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) A local education authority shall exercise their power under subsection (1) to provide school lunches for any person within paragraph (a) or (c) of that subsection if—
- (a) any prescribed requirements are met,
  - (b) a request for the provision of school lunches has been made by or on behalf of that person to the authority, and
  - (c) either—
    - (i) that person is eligible for free lunches (within the meaning of section 512ZB(2)), or
    - (ii) in the case of a person within subsection (1)(a), it would not be unreasonable for the authority to provide the lunches.
- (4) Subject to <sup>[F761]</sup>section 114A(4) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (requirements for food and drink provided on school premises etc] , any school lunches provided by a local education authority pursuant to subsection (3) may take such form as the authority think fit.
- (5) A local education authority shall provide at any school maintained by them such facilities as they consider appropriate for the consumption of any meals or other refreshment brought to the school by registered pupils.
- (6) In this section—
- “prescribed” means prescribed by the Secretary of State by order;
- <sup>[F762]</sup>“relevant funded early years education”, in relation to a local education authority in England, means early years provision as defined by section 20 of the Childcare Act 2006 which is provided by a person, other than the governing body of a maintained school (within the meaning of section 20(7) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998) or a maintained nursery school, under arrangements made by a local authority in pursuance of the duty imposed by section 7 of the 2006 Act (duty to secure prescribed early years provision free of charge);
- “relevant funded early years education”, in relation to a local education authority in Wales, means education provided by a person other than the governing body of a maintained school (within the meaning of section 20(7) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998) or a maintained nursery school—
- (a) under arrangements made with that person by the authority in pursuance of the duty imposed on the authority by section 118 of that Act (duty of LEA to secure sufficient nursery education), and
  - (b) in consideration of financial assistance provided by the authority under those arrangements.]
- “school lunch”—
- (a) in relation to a pupil, means food made available for consumption by the pupil as his midday meal on a school day, and
  - (b) in relation to a child receiving relevant funded nursery education at an establishment other than a school, means food made available for consumption by the child as his midday meal on a day on which he receives that education,
- whether involving a set meal or the selection of items by him or otherwise; and references, in relation to a local education authority, to a school maintained by the authority are to a community, foundation or voluntary school, a community

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

or foundation special school, a maintained nursery school or a pupil referral unit maintained by the authority.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F759** Ss. 512-512ZB substituted for s. 512 (31.3.2003 for W. for specified purposes, 6.4.2003 for E. for specified purposes) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 201(1)**, 216(4) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), **Sch. Pt. II**; [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 5](#) (with [art. 6](#))
- F760** Words in s. 512(1)(c) substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 109(2), **Sch. 2 para. 24(a)**; [S.I. 2008/2261](#), [art. 2](#) (with [Sch. 1](#))
- F761** Words in s. 512(4) substituted (8.11.2006) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 86(2)**, 188(1) (with [s. 86\(3\)](#))
- F762** Words in s. 512(6) substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 109(2), **Sch. 2 para. 24(b)**; [S.I. 2008/2261](#), [art. 2](#) (with [Sch. 1](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C122** S. 512: certain functions transferred (with modifications) (1.4.1999) by [S.I. 1999/610](#), **arts. 2, 3**

#### [<sup>F759</sup>512Z<sup>F763</sup>A Power] to charge for meals etc.

- (1) A local education authority [<sup>F764</sup>may] charge for anything provided by them under subsection (1) or (3) of section 512.
- (2) [<sup>F765</sup>Where a local education authority exercise the power to charge under subsection (1), they must] charge every person the same price for the same quantity of the same item.
- (3) This section is subject to section 512ZB.

#### Textual Amendments

- F759** Ss. 512-512ZB substituted for s. 512 (31.3.2003 for W. for specified purposes, 6.4.2003 for E. for specified purposes) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), **ss. 201(1)**, 216(4) (with [ss. 210\(8\)](#), 214(4)); [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), **Sch. Pt. II**; [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 5](#) (with [art. 6](#))
- F763** Word in s. 512ZA heading substituted (8.11.2006) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 87(1)(c)**, 188(1)
- F764** Word in s. 512ZA(1) substituted (8.11.2006) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 87(1)(a)**, 188(1)
- F765** Words in s. 512ZA(2) substituted (8.11.2006) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), **ss. 87(1)(b)**, 188(1)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C123** S. 512ZA(1)(2) modified (temp. until 31.3.2007) (31.3.2004) by [The Kingston-upon-Hull City Council \(School Meals\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/592\)](#), **arts. 1(1), 2**

#### 512ZB Provision of free school lunches and milk

- (1) Where the local education authority provide a school lunch in accordance with section 512(3) to a person who is eligible for free lunches, the authority shall provide the meal free of charge.
- (2) For this purpose a person is eligible for free lunches if—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) he is within subsection (4), and
  - (b) a request that the school lunches be provided free of charge has been made by him or on his behalf to the authority.
- (3) Where a local education authority exercise their power under subsection (1) of section 512 to provide a person within paragraph (a) or (c) of that subsection with milk, the authority shall provide the milk free of charge if—
- (a) the person is within subsection (4), and
  - (b) a request that the milk be provided free of charge has been made by him or on his behalf to the authority.
- (4) A person is within this subsection if—
- (a) his parent is—
    - (i) in receipt of income support,
    - (ii) in receipt of an income-based jobseeker’s allowance (payable under the Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18)),
    - [ in receipt of an income-related employment and support allowance,]
    - <sup>F766</sup>(ia)
    - (iii) in receipt of support provided under Part 6 of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 (c. 33), or
    - (iv) in receipt of any other benefit or allowance, or entitled to any tax credit under the Tax Credits Act 2002 (c. 21) or element of such a tax credit, prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph, in such circumstances as may be so prescribed, or
  - (b) he, himself, is—
    - (i) in receipt of income support,
    - (ii) in receipt of an income-based jobseeker’s allowance, or
    - [ in receipt of an income-related employment and support allowance,]
    - <sup>F767</sup>(ia)
    - (iii) in receipt of any other benefit or allowance, or entitled to any tax credit under the Tax Credits Act 2002 (c. 21) or element of such a tax credit, prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph, in such circumstances as may be so prescribed.
- (5) In this section “prescribed” and “school lunch” have the same meaning as in section 512.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F759** Ss. 512-512ZB substituted for s. 512 (31.3.2003 for W. for specified purposes, 6.4.2003 for E. for specified purposes) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), **ss. 201(1), 216(4)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**; S.I. 2003/124, **art. 5** (with art. 6)

**F766** S. 512ZB(4)(a)(ia) inserted (27.10.2008) by Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), s. 70(2), **Sch. 3 para. 16(3)**; S.I. 2008/787, art. 2(4)(f)

**F767** S. 512ZB(4)(b)(ia) inserted (27.10.2008) by Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), s. 70(2), **Sch. 3 para. 16(3)**; S.I. 2008/787, art. 2(4)(f)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**[<sup>F768</sup>512A] Transfer of functions under section 512 to governing bodies.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order make provision for imposing on the governing body of any school to which the order applies a duty or duties corresponding to one or more of the duties of the local education authority which are mentioned in subsection (2).
- (2) Those duties are—
  - <sup>F769</sup>(a) the duty to provide school lunches in accordance with [<sup>F770</sup>section 512(3) and (4)];
  - <sup>F771</sup>(b) the duty to provide school lunches free of charge in accordance with [<sup>F772</sup>section 512ZB(1)]; and
  - <sup>F773</sup>(c) the duty to provide milk free of charge in accordance with [<sup>F774</sup>section 512ZB(3)].
- (3) An order under this section may (subject to subsection (6)) apply to—
  - (a) all maintained schools; or
  - (b) any specified class of such schools; or
  - (c) all such schools, or any specified class of such schools, maintained by specified local education authorities.
- (4) Where any duty falls to be performed by the governing body of a school by virtue of an order under this section—
  - (a) the corresponding duty mentioned in subsection (2) shall no longer fall to be performed by the local education authority in relation to the school; and
  - <sup>F775</sup>(b) if the duty corresponds to the one mentioned in subsection (2)(b) or (c)—
    - (i) the order may provide that, notwithstanding the other provisions of the order, the function of determining whether pupils at the school fall within section 512ZB(4) is to be exercisable by the local education authority, and
    - (ii) section 533(3) shall not apply to school lunches or milk provided by the governing body in pursuance of the order.]
- (5) An order under this section may provide for section 513(2) not to apply—
  - (a) to local education authorities generally, or
  - (b) to any specified local education authority,either in relation to all pupils for whom provision is made by the authority under section 513 or in relation to all such pupils who are of such ages as may be specified.
- <sup>F776</sup>(6) An order under this section shall not operate to—
  - (a) impose any duty on the governing body of a school, or
  - (b) relieve a local education authority of any duty in relation to a school,at any time when the school does not have a delegated budget; and such an order may provide for [<sup>F777</sup>section 512ZA(2)] above to have effect, in relation to any provision made at any such time by the local education authority for pupils at the school, with such modifications as may be specified.
- (7) In this section—

<sup>F778cc</sup>“delegated budget” has the same meaning as in the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“maintained school” means a maintained school as defined by section 20(7) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 or a maintained nursery school;]

“school lunch” has the same meaning as in section 512 above;

“specified” means specified in an order under this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F768** S. 512A inserted (1.2.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 116 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/3198, art. 2(2), Sch.
- F769** Words in s. 512A(2)(a) substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 6.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 201(2)(a)(i), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 5 (with art. 6)
- F770** Words in s. 512A(2)(a) substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 6.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 201(2)(a)(i), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 5 (with art. 6)
- F771** Words in s. 512A(2)(b) substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 6.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 201(2)(a)(ii), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 5 (with art. 6)
- F772** Words in s. 512A(2)(b) substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 6.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 201(2)(a)(ii), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 5 (with art. 6)
- F773** Words in s. 512A(2)(c) substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 6.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 201(2)(a)(iii), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 5 (with art. 6)
- F774** Words in s. 512A(2)(c) substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 6.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 201(2)(a)(iii), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 5 (with art. 6)
- F775** S. 512A(4)(b) substituted (7.6.2005) by Education Act 2005 (c. 18), ss. 112, 125(2)
- F776** Words in s. 512A(6) substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 6.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 201(2)(b), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 5 (with art. 6)
- F777** Words in s. 512A(6) substituted (31.3.2003 for W., 6.4.2003 for E.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 201(2)(b), 216(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II; S.I. 2003/124, art. 5 (with art. 6)
- F778** Words in s. 512A(7) substituted (1.9.2003 for E.; 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 52 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.

### 513 Provision of meals etc. at schools not maintained by local education authorities.

- (1) A local education authority may, with the consent of the proprietor of a school in their area which is not maintained by them, make arrangements for securing the provision of milk, meals and other refreshment for pupils in attendance at the school.
- (2) Any arrangements under this section—
  - (a) shall be on such financial and other terms, if any, as may be determined by agreement between the authority and the proprietor of the school; and
  - (b) shall be such as to secure, so far as is practicable, that the expense incurred by the authority in connection with the provision of any service or item under the arrangements shall not exceed the expense which would have been incurred



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

by them in providing it if the pupil had been a pupil at a school maintained by them.

#### **514 Provision of board and lodging otherwise than at school.**

- (1) Where a local education authority are satisfied with respect to any pupil—
  - (a) that primary or secondary education suitable to his age, ability and aptitude and to any special educational needs he may have can best be provided for him at a [<sup>F779</sup>particular community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school, but]
  - (b) that such education cannot be so provided unless boarding accommodation is provided for him otherwise than at the school,they may provide such board and lodging for him under such arrangements as they think fit.
- (2) Where a local education authority are satisfied with respect to a pupil with special educational needs that provision of board and lodging for him is necessary for enabling him to receive the required special educational provision, they may provide such board and lodging for him under such arrangements as they think fit.
- (3) In making any arrangements under this section, a local education authority shall, so far as practicable, give effect to the wishes of the pupil's parent as to the religion or religious denomination of the person with whom the pupil will reside.
- (4) Subject to subsection (5), where a local education authority have provided a pupil with board and lodging under arrangements under this section, they shall require the pupil's parent to pay them such sums, if any, in respect of the board and lodging as in their opinion he is able to pay without financial hardship.
- (5) No sum is recoverable under subsection (4) if the arrangements were made by the authority on the ground that in their opinion education suitable to the pupil's age, ability and aptitude or special educational needs could not otherwise be provided for him.
- (6) The sums recoverable under subsection (4) shall not exceed the cost to the authority of providing the board and lodging.
- (7) Any sum payable under subsection (4) may be recovered summarily as a civil debt.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F779** Words in s. 514(1)(a) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.135** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

#### **515 Provision of teaching services for day nurseries.**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), a local education authority may, in accordance with arrangements made by them for that purpose, make available to a day nursery [<sup>F780</sup>in England or Wales or to a registered early years provider in England] the services of any teacher who—
  - (a) is employed by them in a nursery school or in a primary school having one or more nursery classes, and
  - (b) has agreed to provide his services for the purposes of the arrangements.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Arrangements under subsection (1) in respect of a teacher in a [F781 foundation or voluntary school] require the concurrence of the governing body of the school.
- (3) Arrangements under this section may make provision—
- (a) for the supply of equipment for use in connection with the teaching services made available under the arrangements;
  - (b) for regulating the respective functions of any teacher whose services are made available under the arrangements, the head teacher of his school and the person in charge of the day nursery [F782 or (as the case may be) the registered early years provider] ; and
  - (c) for any supplementary or incidental matters connected with the arrangements, [F783 including—
    - (i) in relation to England, any charges to be imposed in connection with the arrangements, and
    - (ii) in relation to Wales, where the teacher's school and the day nursery are in the areas of different local education authorities, financial adjustments between those authorities.]
- [F784 (4) In this section—
- “day nursery” means a day nursery provided under section 18 of the Children Act 1989 (provision by local authorities of day care for pre-school and other children);
- “registered early years provider” means a person registered under Part 3 of the Childcare Act 2006.]
- (5) A teacher shall not be regarded as ceasing to be a member of the teaching staff of his school and subject to the general directions of his head teacher by reason only of his services being made available in pursuance of arrangements under this section.

#### Textual Amendments

- F780** Words in s. 515(1) inserted (1.9.2008) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\), s. 109\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 25\(2\); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 \(with Sch. 1\)](#)
- F781** Words in s. 515(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\), Sch. 30 para.136 \(with ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)\); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1.](#)
- F782** Words in s. 515(3)(b) inserted (1.9.2008) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\), s. 109\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 25\(3\) \(a\); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 \(with Sch. 1\)](#)
- F783** Words in s. 515(3)(c) substituted (1.9.2008) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\), s. 109\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 25\(3\)\(b\); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 \(with Sch. 1\)](#)
- F784** S. 515(4) substituted (1.9.2008) by [Childcare Act 2006 \(c. 21\), s. 109\(2\), Sch. 2 para. 25\(4\); S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 \(with Sch. 1\)](#)

**F785** 516 .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F785** S. 516 repealed (1.4.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\)\(3\), Sch. 30 para. 137, Sch.31 \(with ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)\); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2\(4\), Sch.1 Pt. IV.](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *Payment of fees*

#### **517 Payment of fees at schools not maintained by a local education authority.**

- (1) Where, in pursuance of arrangements made under section 18 or Part IV (special educational needs), primary or secondary education is provided for a pupil at a school not maintained by them or another local education authority, the local education authority by whom the arrangements are made shall—
  - (a) if subsection (2), (3) or (4) applies, pay the whole of the fees payable in respect of the education provided in pursuance of the arrangements; and
  - (b) if board and lodging are provided for the pupil at the school and subsection (5) applies, pay the whole of the fees payable in respect of the board and lodging.
- (2) This subsection applies where—
  - (a) the pupil fills a place in the school which the proprietor of the school has put at the disposal of the authority; and
  - (b) the school is one in respect of which grants are made by the Secretary of State under section 485.
- (3) This subsection applies where the authority are satisfied that, by reason of a shortage of places in every school maintained by them or another local education authority to which the pupil could be sent with reasonable convenience, education suitable—
  - (a) to his age, ability and aptitude, and
  - (b) to any special educational needs he may have,cannot be provided by them for him except at a school not maintained by them or another local education authority.
- (4) This subsection applies where (in a case in which neither subsection (2) nor subsection (3) applies) the authority are satisfied—
  - (a) that the pupil has special educational needs, and
  - (b) that it is expedient in his interests that the required special educational provision should be made for him at a school not maintained by them or another local education authority.
- (5) This subsection applies where the authority are satisfied that education suitable—
  - (a) to the pupil's age, ability and aptitude, and
  - (b) to any special educational needs he may have,cannot be provided by them for him at any school unless board and lodging are also provided for him (either at school or elsewhere)
- (6) As from such day as the Secretary of State may by order appoint this section shall have effect with the following modifications—
  - (a) in subsections (1) and (3), for “not maintained by them or another local education authority” substitute “which is neither a maintained nor a grant-maintained school”;
  - (b) in subsection (3), for “every school maintained by them or another local education authority” substitute “every maintained or grant-maintained school”;
  - (c) in subsections (3) and (5), for “provided by them” substitute “provided”;
  - (d) omit subsection (4) and the reference to it in subsection (1); and
  - (e) at the end add—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“(7) In this section “grant-maintained school” includes a grant-maintained special school, and subsection (5) does not apply where section 348(2) applies.”

(7) An order under subsection (6) may appoint different days for different provisions and for different purposes.

**Subordinate Legislation Made**

**P1** S. 517(6) power fully exercised (30.6.1997): 1.9.1997 appointed day by [S.I. 1997/1623](#).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C124** S. 517 modified (1.9.1999) (the modification as mentioned in s. 517(6) has effect from 1.9.1997 as mentioned in [S.I. 1997/1623](#)) by [S.I. 1999/2260](#), [reg. 2\(1\)](#)

**[<sup>F786</sup>518 Payment of school expenses; grant of scholarships, etc.**

(1) A local education authority, for the purpose of enabling persons to take advantage of any educational facilities available to them, may in such circumstances as may be specified in or determined in accordance with regulations—

- (a) pay such expenses of children attending community, foundation, voluntary or special schools as may be necessary to enable them to take part in any school activities,
- (b) grant scholarships, exhibitions, bursaries and other allowances in respect of persons over compulsory school age.

(2) Regulations may make provision—

- (a) for requiring a local education authority to make, in relation to each financial year, a determination relating to the extent to which they propose to exercise their power under subsection (1)(b) in that year; and
- (b) for authorising an authority to determine not to exercise that power in a financial year—
  - (i) generally,
  - (ii) in such cases as may be prescribed, or
  - (iii) in such cases as may be determined by the authority.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F786** S. 518 substituted (1.2.1999) by 1998. c. 31, s. 129 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)) (subject to savings indicated in [S.I. 1999/120](#), [art. 3\(2\)](#)); [S.I. 1999/120](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1](#)

*Allowances for governors*

**519 Travelling and subsistence allowances for governors of schools and further or higher education institutions.**

(1) A local education authority may, in accordance with the provisions of a scheme made by them for the purposes of this section, pay [<sup>F787</sup>such allowances as may be prescribed to governors of—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any community, foundation or voluntary school or community or foundation special school which does not have a delegated budget (within the meaning of Part II of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998);] and
  - (b) any institution providing higher education or further education (or both) which is maintained by a local education authority.
- (2) Such a scheme may make different provision in relation to schools or other institutions of different categories (including provision for allowances not to be paid in respect of certain categories) but shall not make different provision in relation to different categories of governor of the same school or institution.
- (3) Subject to subsections (4) and (5), a local education authority may pay [<sup>F788</sup>such allowances as may be prescribed] to any person appointed to represent them on the governing body of—
- (a) any institution providing higher education or further education (or both) which is not maintained by them; or
  - (b) any independent school or special school which is not maintained by them.
- (4) A local education authority shall not pay any allowance under subsection (3) for expenses in respect of which the person incurring them is entitled to reimbursement by any person other than the authority.
- (5) A local education authority shall not pay any allowance under subsection (3) if they have not made any scheme under subsection (1) or if the arrangements under which the allowance would otherwise be payable—
- (a) provide for allowances which are to any extent more generous than the most generous payable by the authority under any such scheme; or
  - (b) contain any provision which the authority would not have power to include in any such scheme.
- (6) No allowance may be paid to any governor of a school or institution of a kind mentioned in subsection (1), in respect of the discharge of his functions as such a governor, otherwise than under this section.
- <sup>F789</sup>[(7) Regulations may impose a limit on the amount which may be paid by way of any allowance under this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F787** Words in s. 519(1) substituted (20.11.1998 for the purposes of making schemes and regulations and 1.4.1999 for all other purposes) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 139(2)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2791, **art. 2(a)(b)**.

**F788** Words in s. 519(3) substituted (20.11.1998 for the purposes of making schemes and regulations and 1.4.1999 for all other purposes) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 139(3)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2791, **art. 2(a)(b)**.

**F789** S. 519(7) added (20.11.1998 for the purposes of making schemes and regulations and 1.4.1999 for all other purposes) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 139(4)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2791, **art. 2(a)(b)**.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Medical arrangements*

#### **520 Medical inspection and treatment of pupils.**

- (1) A local education authority shall make arrangements for encouraging and assisting pupils to take advantage of the provision for medical and dental inspection and treatment made for them in pursuance of
  - [<sup>F790</sup>(a) section 111 of, or paragraph 1, 2(1)(a) or 8 of Schedule 1 to, the National Health Service Act 2006, or
  - (b) section 67 of, or paragraph 1, 2(1)(a) or 8 of Schedule 1 to, the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006]
- (2) If the parent of a pupil gives notice to the authority that he objects to the pupil availing himself of any of the provision so made, the pupil shall not be encouraged or assisted to do so.

<sup>F791</sup>(3) . . . . .

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F790** Words in s. 520(1) substituted (1.3.2007) by [National Health Service \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 2006 \(c. 43\)](#), s. 8(2), [Sch. 1 para. 184](#) (with [Sch. 3 Pt. 1](#))

**F791** S. 520(3) repealed (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), s. 140(1)(3), [Sch. 30 para. 140](#), [Sch.31](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\)](#), [144\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)

### *Cleanliness of pupils*

#### **521 Examination of pupils for cleanliness.**

- (1) A local education authority may by directions in writing authorise a medical officer of theirs to have the persons and clothing of pupils in attendance at relevant schools examined whenever in his opinion such examinations are necessary in the interests of cleanliness.
- (2) Directions under subsection (1) may be given with respect to—
  - (a) all relevant schools, or
  - (b) any relevant schools named in the directions.
- (3) An examination under this section shall be made by a person authorised by the authority to make such examinations; and, if the examination is of a girl, it shall not be made by a man unless he is a registered medical practitioner.
- (4) For the purposes of this section “relevant schools” are—
  - (a) schools maintained by the authority; <sup>F792</sup> . . .
  - <sup>F793</sup>(b) . . . . .

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F792** Word in s. 521(4)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), s. 140(1)(3), [Sch. 30 para. 141](#), [Sch.31](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\)](#), [144\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#).

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F793** S. 521(4)(b) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 141, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

## **522 Compulsory cleansing of a pupil.**

- (1) If, on an examination under section 521, the person or clothing of a pupil is found to be infested with vermin or in a foul condition, any officer of the local education authority may serve a notice on the pupil's parent requiring him to cause the pupil's person and clothing to be cleansed.
- (2) The notice shall inform the parent that, unless within the period specified in the notice the pupil's person and clothing are cleansed to the satisfaction of such person as is specified in the notice, the cleansing will be carried out under arrangements made by the authority.
- (3) The period so specified shall not be less than 24 hours from the service of the notice.
- (4) If, on a report being made to him by the specified person at the end of the specified period, a medical officer of the authority is not satisfied that the pupil's person and clothing have been properly cleansed, he may by order direct that they shall be cleansed under arrangements made by the authority under section 523.
- (5) An order made under subsection (4) shall be sufficient to authorise any officer of the authority—
  - (a) to cause the pupil's person and clothing to be cleansed in accordance with arrangements made by the authority under section 523, and
  - (b) for that purpose to convey the pupil to, and detain him at, any premises provided in accordance with such arrangements.

## **523 Arrangements for cleansing of pupils.**

- (1) A local education authority shall make arrangements for securing that the person or clothing of any pupil required to be cleansed under section 522 may be cleansed (whether at the request of a parent or in pursuance of an order under section 522(4)) at suitable premises, by suitable persons and with suitable appliances.
- (2) Where the council of a district in the area of the authority are entitled to the use of any premises or appliances for cleansing the person or clothing of persons infested with vermin, the authority may require the council to permit the authority to use those premises or appliances for such purposes upon such terms as may be determined—
  - (a) by agreement between the authority and the council, or
  - (b) in default of such agreement, by the Secretary of State.
- (3) Subsection (2) does not apply in relation to Wales.
- (4) A girl may be cleansed under arrangements under this section only by a registered medical practitioner or by a woman authorised for the purpose by the authority.

## **524 [F794] Suspension of a pupil pending examination or cleansing.]**

- (1) Where—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a medical officer of a local education authority suspects that the person or clothing of a pupil in attendance at a relevant school is infested with vermin or in a foul condition, but
- (b) action for the examination or cleansing of the pupil's person and clothing cannot be taken immediately,

the medical officer may direct that the pupil is to be [<sup>F795</sup>suspended] from the school until such action has been taken, if he considers it necessary to do so in the interests either of the pupil or of other pupils in attendance at the school.

- (2) A direction under subsection (1) is a defence to any proceedings under Chapter II of Part VI in respect of the failure of the pupil to attend school on any day on which he is excluded in pursuance of the direction, unless it is proved that the giving of the direction was necessitated by the wilful default of the pupil or his parent.
- (3) For the purposes of this section a “relevant school” is—
  - (a) a school maintained by the local education authority, <sup>F796</sup> . . .
  - <sup>F796</sup>(b) . . .

#### Textual Amendments

- F794** Sidenote substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 142(e)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.
- F795** Word in s. 524(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1), 145(3), **Sch. 30 para. 142(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.
- F796** S. 524(3)(b) and the word "or" preceding it repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 142(b)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

#### 525 Offence of neglecting the cleanliness of a pupil.

- (1) If, after the person or clothing of a pupil has been cleansed under section 522—
  - (a) his person or clothing is again infested with vermin, or in a foul condition, at any time while he is in attendance at a relevant school, and
  - (b) the condition of his person or clothing is due to neglect on the part of his parent,
 the parent is guilty of an offence.
- (2) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 1 on the standard scale.
- (3) For the purposes of this section a “relevant school” is a school maintained by a local education authority <sup>F797</sup> . . .

#### Textual Amendments

- F797** Words in s. 525(3) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 143**, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.



*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

*Changes to legislation:* Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Educational research and conferences*

**526 Powers as to educational research.**

A local education authority may make such provision for conducting, or assisting the conduct of, research as appears to them to be desirable for the purpose of improving the educational facilities provided for their area.

**527 Powers as to educational conferences.**

A local education authority may—

- (a) organise, or participate in the organisation of, conferences for the discussion of questions relating to education, and
- (b) expend such sums as may be reasonable in paying, or contributing towards, any expenditure incurred in connection with conferences for the discussion of such questions, including the expenses of any person authorised by them to attend such a conference.

<sup>F798</sup> [*Plans relating to children with behavioural difficulties*]

**Textual Amendments**

**F798** S. 527A and cross-heading inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s.9 (with s. 57(3)); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(2), **Sch. 1 Pt. II**

<sup>F799</sup><sup>F800</sup> **527A** **Duty of LEA to prepare plan relating to children with behavioural difficulties.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F799** S. 527A repealed (1.3.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by Children Act 2004 (c. 31), **Sch. 5 Pt. 1**; S.I. 2005/394, art. 2(1)(l); S.I. 2006/885, art. 3(b)

**F800** S. 527A inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 9 (with s. 57(3)); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(2), **Sch. 1 Pt. II**.

*Disability statements relating to further education*

<sup>F801</sup> **528** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F801** S. 528 repealed (1.9.2002) by 2001 c.10, ss. 34(3), 42(6), **Sch. 9** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, **art. 3**, **Sch. 1 Pt. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Acquisition and holding of property*

#### **529 Power to accept gifts on trust for educational purposes.**

- (1) A local education authority may accept, hold and administer any property on trust for purposes connected with education.
- [<sup>F802</sup>(1A) Any intention on the part of a local education authority in England that a school should be vested in the authority as trustees shall be treated for the purposes of sections 7, 10 and 11 of the Education and Inspections Act 2006 as an intention to establish a new community school, community special school or maintained nursery school (so that proposals for that purpose shall be published in accordance with those sections); and Schedule 2 to that Act (proposals for establishment or discontinuance of schools in England) shall apply accordingly.]
- (2) Any intention on the part of a local education authority [<sup>F803</sup> in Wales] that a school [<sup>F804</sup>... should be vested in the authority as trustees shall be treated for [<sup>F805</sup>for the purposes of sections 28 and 31 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 as an intention to establish a new community school, community special school or maintained nursery school (so that proposals for that purpose shall be published as required by those sections); and Schedule 6 to that Act (statutory proposals concerning schools in Wales: procedure and implementation) shall apply accordingly.]
- (3) Any school which in accordance with subsection [<sup>F806</sup> (1A) or] (2) is vested in a local education authority as trustees shall be [<sup>F807</sup>a community school]. [<sup>F808</sup>, a community special school or a maintained nursery school.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F802** S. 529(1A) inserted (25.5.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(3), **Sch. 3 para. 10(2)**; S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)
- F803** Words in s. 529(2) inserted (25.5.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(3), **Sch. 3 para. 10(3)(a)**; S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)
- F804** Words in s. 529(2) repealed (25.5.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(3), **Sch. 3 para. 10(3)(b)**, **Sch. 18 Pt. 3**; S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)(q)
- F805** Words in s. 529(2) substituted (25.5.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(3), **Sch. 3 para. 10(3)(c)**; S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)
- F806** Words in s. 529(3) inserted (25.5.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(3), **Sch. 3 para. 10(4)(a)**; S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)
- F807** Words in s. 529(3) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 145(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.
- F808** Words in s. 529(3) inserted (25.5.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(3), **Sch. 3 para. 10(4)(b)**; S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)

#### **530 Compulsory purchase of land.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may authorise a local education authority to purchase compulsorily any land (whether within or outside their area) which—
- (a) is required for the purposes of any school or institution which is, or is to be, maintained by them or which they have power to assist, or
  - (b) is otherwise required for the purposes of their functions under this Act, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F809</sup>(c) is required for the purposes of an Academy (whether established or to be established).]
- (2) The Secretary of State shall not authorise the compulsory purchase of any land required for the purposes of a [<sup>F810</sup>foundation, voluntary or foundation special school] unless he is satisfied that the arrangements made—
- (a) as to the vesting of the land to be purchased, and
  - (b) as to the appropriation of that land for the purposes of the school,
- are such as to secure that the expenditure ultimately borne by the local education authority will not include any expenditure which, if the land had been purchased by the governing body of the school, would have fallen to be borne by the governing body.
- (3) Subsection (2) shall not, however, apply where the local education authority propose that expenditure to be incurred in connection with the purchase should ultimately be [<sup>F811</sup>borne by them—
- (a) in the case of an authority in England, under paragraph 7(1) of Schedule 7A to the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (power to give assistance in relation to carrying out of obligations under that Schedule) or under any provision of regulations under section 24 of the Education and Inspections Act 2006 (implementation of proposals under section 19 of that Act) which by virtue of subsection (7) of section 24 of that Act authorises a local education authority to provide assistance to the governing body of a voluntary aided school in connection with the implementation of the obligations of the governing body under the regulations, or
  - (b) in the case of an authority in Wales, under paragraph 18 of Schedule 6 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (power to give assistance to governing body of voluntary aided school in carrying out statutory proposals) (including that provision as applied by any enactment).]
- (4) In this section “land” includes buildings and other structures and land covered with water.

#### Textual Amendments

**F809** S. 530(1)(c) substituted (25.5.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), [Sch. 3 para. 11\(2\)](#); S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)

**F810** Words in s. 530(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), s. 140(1), [Sch. 30 para. 146\(a\)](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#).

**F811** Words in s. 530(3) substituted (25.5.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), [Sch. 3 para. 11\(3\)](#); S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)

### 531 Acquisition of land by agreement.

- (1) For the removal of doubt, it is declared that making land available for the purposes of a school or institution—
- (a) which is, or is to be, maintained by a local education authority, or
  - (b) which such an authority have power to assist,
- is a function of the authority within the meaning of section 120 of the <sup>M12</sup>Local Government Act 1972 (which relates to the acquisition by a local authority by agreement of land for the purpose of any of their functions), even though the land will not be held by the authority.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) A local education authority shall not acquire by agreement any land required for the purposes of [<sup>F812</sup>foundation, voluntary or foundation special school] unless they are satisfied that the arrangements made—
- (a) as to the vesting of the land to be acquired, and
  - (b) as to the appropriation of that land for the purposes of the school,
- are such as to secure that the expenditure ultimately borne by them will not include any expenditure which, if the land had been acquired by the governing body of the school, would have fallen to be borne by the governing body.

#### Textual Amendments

**F812** Words in s. 531(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.147** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

#### Marginal Citations

**M12** 1972 c. 70.

### *Appointment of chief education officer*

#### **532 Appointment of chief education officer.**

[<sup>F813</sup>The duties of a local education authority in Wales] under the Local Government Act 1972 with respect to the appointment of officers shall (without prejudice to the generality of the provisions of that Act) include the duty of appointing a fit person to be the chief education officer of the authority.

#### Textual Amendments

**F813** Words in s. 532 substituted (1.1.2008) (with effect in accordance with s. 18(9) of the commencing S.I.) by **Children Act 2004 (c. 31), s. 67(2), Sch. 2 para. 4(2)**; S.I. 2007/1792, art. 2

## CHAPTER III

### ANCILLARY FUNCTIONS OF GOVERNING BODIES

#### *Provision of services*

#### **533 [<sup>F814</sup>Functions] of governing bodies of maintained schools with respect to provision of school meals etc.**

- (1) The governing body of any school maintained by a local education authority shall—
- (a) afford the authority such facilities as they require to enable them to perform their functions under section 512, and
  - (b) allow the authority to make such use of the premises and equipment of the school, and such alterations to the school buildings, as the authority consider necessary for that purpose.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Nothing in subsection (1) shall require the governing body of [<sup>F815</sup>any such] school to incur any expenditure.
- (3) Where the governing body of a school which has a delegated budget (within the meaning of Part II [<sup>F816</sup>of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998]) provide pupils or other persons who receive education at the school with milk, meals or other refreshment, they [<sup>F817</sup>may charge for anything so provided.]
- [<sup>F818</sup>(4) Where the governing body of a school exercise the power to charge under subsection (3), they must charge every person the same price for the same quantity of the same item.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F814** Word in s. 533 heading substituted (8.11.2006) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\), ss. 87\(2\)\(c\), 188\(1\)](#)
- F815** Words in s. 533(2) substituted (1.4.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\), Sch. 30 para. 148\(a\)](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); [S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#).
- F816** Words in s. 533(3) inserted (1.4.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\), Sch. 30 para. 148\(b\)](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); [S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#).
- F817** Words in s. 533(3) substituted (8.11.2006) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\), ss. 87\(2\)\(a\), 188\(1\)](#)
- F818** S. 533(4) inserted (8.11.2006) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\), ss. 87\(2\)\(b\), 188\(1\)](#)

<sup>F819</sup>534 .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F819** S. 534 repealed (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\)\(3\), Sch. 30 para. 149, Sch.31](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); [S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1](#).

### 535 Provision of teaching services for day nurseries.

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), the governing body of [<sup>F820</sup>a community, foundation or voluntary primary school] having one or more nursery classes may, in accordance with arrangements made by them for that purpose, make available to a day nursery [<sup>F821</sup>in England or Wales or to a registered early years provider in England] the services of any teacher who is employed by them in the school and has agreed to provide his services for the purposes of the arrangements.
- (2) No arrangements shall be made under subsection (1) except at the request of the local education authority and on terms approved by them.
- (3) Arrangements under this section may make provision—
- (a) for the supply of equipment for use in connection with the teaching services made available under the arrangements,
  - (b) for regulating the respective functions of any teacher whose services are made available under the arrangements, the head teacher of his school and the person in charge of the day nursery [<sup>F822</sup>or (as the case may be) the registered early years provider] , and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) for any supplementary or incidental matters connected with the arrangements, <sup>F823</sup>including—
- (i) in relation to England, any charges to be imposed in connection with the arrangements, and
  - (ii) in relation to Wales, where the teacher's school and the day nursery are in the areas of different local education authorities, financial adjustments between those authorities.]

<sup>F824</sup>(4) In this section—

“day nursery” means a day nursery provided under section 18 of the Children Act 1989 (provision by local authorities of day care for pre-school and other children);

“registered early years provider” means a person registered under Part 3 of the Childcare Act 2006.]

- (5) A teacher shall not be regarded as ceasing to be a member of the teaching staff of his school and subject to the general directions of his head teacher by reason only of his services being made available in pursuance of arrangements under this section.

#### Textual Amendments

- F820** Words in s. 535(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.150** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.
- F821** Words in s. 535(1) inserted (1.9.2008) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), s. 109(2), **Sch. 2 para. 26(2)**; S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)
- F822** Words in s. 535(3)(b) inserted (1.9.2008) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), s. 109(2), **Sch. 2 para. 26(3)(a)**; S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)
- F823** Words in s. 535(3)(c) substituted (1.9.2008) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), s. 109(2), **Sch. 2 para. 26(3)(b)**; S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)
- F824** S. 535(4) substituted (1.9.2008) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), s. 109(2), **Sch. 2 para. 26(4)**; S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)

#### *Medical arrangements*

<sup>F825</sup>**536** .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F825** S. 536 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 151**, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

## CHAPTER IV

### PROVISION OF INFORMATION BY GOVERNING BODIES ETC.

#### **537 Power of Secretary of State to require information from governing bodies etc.**

<sup>F826</sup>(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision requiring—

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

*Changes to legislation:* Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) the governing body of every school which is—
    - (i) maintained by a local education authority, or
    - (ii) a special school which is not maintained by such an authority, and
  - (b) the proprietor of every independent school,  
to provide such information about the school as may be prescribed.]
- (2) For the purposes of this section information about the continuing education of pupils leaving a school, or the employment or training taken up by such pupils on leaving, is to be treated as information about the school.
- (3) Where the Secretary of State exercises his power to make regulations under this section he shall do so with a view to making available information which is likely to—
- (a) assist parents in choosing schools for their children;
  - (b) increase public awareness of the quality of the education provided by the schools concerned and of the educational standards achieved in those schools;  
or
  - (c) assist in assessing the degree of efficiency with which the financial resources of those schools are managed.
- (4) Information which is required by virtue of regulations under this section shall be provided—
- (a) in such form and manner,
  - (b) on such occasions, and
  - (c) to such person or persons, in addition to or in place of the Secretary of State, as may be prescribed [<sup>F827</sup>; and regulations under this section may provide that, in such circumstances as may be prescribed, the provision of information to a person other than the Secretary of State is to be treated, for the purposes of any provision of such regulations or this section, as compliance with any requirement of such regulations relating to the provision of information to the Secretary of State.].
- (5) No information provided in accordance with regulations under this section shall name any pupil to whom it relates.
- (6) The Secretary of State may—
- (a) publish information provided in accordance with regulations under this section in such form and manner as he considers appropriate;
  - (b) make arrangements for such information to be published in such form and manner, and by such persons, as he may specify for the purposes of this section;
  - (c) make regulations requiring local education authorities to publish prescribed categories of such information, together with such supplementary information as may be prescribed, in such form and manner as may be prescribed.
- (7) The Secretary of State may make regulations requiring—
- (a) the governing body of any school which is maintained by a local education authority [<sup>F828</sup> . . . ,
  - (b) the proprietor of any city technology college [<sup>F829</sup>, city college for the technology of the arts or [<sup>F830</sup> Academy]], or
  - (c) any local education authority,
- to provide prescribed persons with prescribed categories of information published under subsection (6).

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(8) Information provided under subsection (7) shall be provided in such form and manner as may be prescribed.

<sup>F831</sup>(9) .....

<sup>F831</sup>(10) .....

(11) Without prejudice to the generality of section 569(4), regulations under this section may make provision for the designation by the Secretary of State, in accordance with the regulations, of particular schools or classes of schools for the purposes of the application of particular provisions of the regulations in relation to such schools.

(12) This section is not to be taken as restricting, or otherwise affecting, any other powers that the Secretary of State may have to make regulations with respect to, or otherwise to require, the provision of information by any person.

(13) This section does not apply to nursery schools.

#### Textual Amendments

**F826** S. 537(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 152(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F827** Words in s. 537(4) added (14.6.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 37**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I**

**F828** Words in s. 537(7)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 152(b)**, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F829** Words in s. 537(7)(b) substituted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise prosp.) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154, **Sch. 9 para. 60** (with s. 150)

**F830** Words in s. 537(7)(b) substituted (26.7.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 65(3), 216(2), **Sch. 7 para. 6(5)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 2

**F831** S. 537(9)(10) repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

#### [<sup>F832</sup>537A] Provision of information about individual pupils.

(1) Regulations may make provision requiring—

(a) the governing body of every school which is—

(i) maintained by a local education authority, or

(ii) a special school which is not maintained by such an authority, and

(b) the proprietor of every independent school,

to provide to the relevant person such individual pupil information as may be prescribed.

(2) In subsection (1) “the relevant person” means one or more of the following—

(a) the Secretary of State, and

(b) any prescribed person.

(3) Where any person within paragraph (b) of subsection (2) receives information by virtue of subsection (1), the Secretary of State may require that person to provide any such information—

(a) to him, or

(b) to any prescribed person.



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The Secretary of State may provide any individual pupil information—
- (a) to any information collator,
  - (b) to any prescribed person, or
  - (c) to any person falling within a prescribed category.
- (5) Any information collator—
- (a) may provide any individual pupil information—
    - (i) to the Secretary of State,
    - (ii) to any other information collator, or
    - (iii) to the governing body or proprietor of the school attended by the pupil or pupils to whom the information relates; and
  - (b) may, at such times as the Secretary of State may determine, provide such individual pupil information as may be prescribed—
    - (i) to any prescribed person, or
    - (ii) to any person falling within a prescribed category.
- (6) Any person holding any individual pupil information (other than the Secretary of State or an information collator) may provide that information to—
- (a) the Secretary of State,
  - (b) any information collator, or
  - (c) any prescribed person.
- (7) No information received under or by virtue of this section shall be published in any form which includes the name of the pupil or pupils to whom it relates.
- (8) Regulations under this section may provide that, in such circumstances as may be prescribed, the provision of information to a person other than the Secretary of State is to be treated, for the purposes of any provision of such regulations or this section, as compliance with any requirement imposed by or by virtue of any such provision and relating to the provision of information to the Secretary of State.
- (9) In this section—
- “individual pupil information” means information relating to and identifying individual pupils or former pupils at any school within subsection (1), whether obtained under subsection (1) or otherwise;
- “information collator” means any body which, for the purposes of or in connection with the functions of the Secretary of State relating to education, is responsible for collating or checking information relating to pupils.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F832** S. 537A substituted (20.11.1998 with savings as mentioned in art. 5 of the S.I. 1998/2791) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.153** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2791, **arts.3, 5**

#### [<sup>F833</sup>537B] **Provision of information about children receiving funded education outside school**

- (1) Regulations may make provision requiring a person who provides funded education to provide to the relevant person such individual child information as may be prescribed.
- (2) In subsection (1), “the relevant person” means one or more of the following—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) any prescribed person.
- (3) Where any person within paragraph (b) of subsection (2) receives information by virtue of subsection (1), the Secretary of State may require that person to provide any such information—
- (a) to him, or
  - (b) to any prescribed person.
- (4) The Secretary of State may provide any individual child information—
- (a) to any information collator,
  - (b) to any prescribed person, or
  - (c) to any person falling within a prescribed category.
- (5) Any information collator—
- (a) may provide any individual child information—
    - (i) to the Secretary of State,
    - (ii) to any other information collator, or
    - (iii) to the person who provides the funded education for the child or children to whom the information relates, and
  - (b) may, at such times as the Secretary of State may determine, provide such individual child information as may be prescribed—
    - (i) to any prescribed person, or
    - (ii) to any person falling within a prescribed category.
- (6) Any person holding any individual child information (other than the Secretary of State or an information collator) may provide that information to—
- (a) the Secretary of State,
  - (b) any information collator, or
  - (c) any prescribed person.
- (7) No information received under or by virtue of this section shall be published in any form which includes the name of the child or children to whom it relates.
- (8) Regulations under this section may provide that, in such circumstances as may be prescribed, the provision of information to a person other than the Secretary of State is to be treated, for the purposes of any provision of such regulations or this section, as compliance with any requirement imposed by or by virtue of any such provision and relating to the provision of information to the Secretary of State.
- (9) In this section—
- “child” means a person under the age of 19;
  - “funded education” means education provided under arrangements made by a local education authority in pursuance of the duties imposed by section 19(1) and (4) (duty to make special arrangements for provision of education for children of compulsory school age and young persons who may otherwise not receive suitable education), other than such education provided at a school;
  - “individual child information” means information relating to and identifying individual children for whom funded education is being or has been provided, whether obtained under subsection (1) or otherwise;

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“information collator” means any body which, for the purposes of or in connection with the functions of the Secretary of State relating to funded education, is responsible for collating or checking information relating to children for whom such education is provided.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F833** S. 537B inserted (28.3.2007 for E., 1.9.2009 for W.) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), [ss. 164, 188\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2007/935](#), [art. 2](#); [S.I. 2009/1027](#), [art. 3\(b\)](#)

**538 Provision of information to Secretary of State by governing bodies of maintained schools.**

The governing body or temporary governing body of [<sup>F834</sup>a community, foundation or voluntary school or a community or foundation special school] shall make such reports and returns, and give such information, to the Secretary of State as he may require for the purpose of the exercise of his functions in relation to education.

**Textual Amendments**

**F834** Words in s. 538 substituted (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), [s. 140\(1\)](#), [Sch. 30 para.154](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C125** S. 538 applied (with modifications) (E.) (1.2.2008) by [The Education \(Pupil Referral Units\) \(Application of Enactments\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2979\)](#), [reg. 1\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 7](#)

<sup>F835</sup>**539** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F835** S. 539 repealed (1.11.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), [s. 140\(1\)\(3\)](#), [Sch. 30 para. 155](#), [Sch.31](#) (with [ss. 138\(9\), 144\(6\)](#)) and subject to savings by [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 21](#)); [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2](#).

**540 Distribution of information about schools providing secondary education.**

- (1) Where the governing body of any school providing primary education receive a request which—
- (a) is made by the governing body of any school providing secondary education, and
  - (b) relates to the distribution of information about the school providing secondary education to parents of pupils at the school providing primary education without charge to those parents,
- the governing body of that school shall secure that the request is treated no less favourably (whether as to services provided or as to the terms on which they are provided) than any such request made by the governing body of any other school providing secondary education.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- <sup>F836</sup>[(2) In this section “school” means—
- (a) any community, foundation or voluntary school, or
  - (b) any community or foundation special school (which is not established in a hospital).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F836** S. 540(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.156** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### 541 Distribution of information about further education institutions.

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations require—
- (a) the governing body of any school providing secondary education, and
  - (b) the proprietor of any city technology college [<sup>F837</sup>, city college for the technology of the arts or [<sup>F838</sup>Academy]],
- to provide such persons as may be prescribed with such categories of information falling within subsection (2) as may be prescribed.
- (2) Information falls within this subsection if it is—
- (a) published under section 50 of the <sup>M13</sup>Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (information with respect to institutions within the further education sector), and
  - (b) made available to governing bodies and proprietors for distribution.
- (3) Information provided under subsection (1) shall be provided in such form and manner as may be prescribed.

- <sup>F839</sup>[(4) In this section “school” means—
- (a) any community, foundation or voluntary school, or
  - (b) any community or foundation special school (which is not established in a hospital).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F837** Words in s. 541(1)(b) substituted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes, otherwise prosp.) by 2000 c. 21, ss. 149, 154, **Sch. 9 para. 61** (with s. 150)

**F838** Words in s. 541(1)(b) substituted (26.7.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 65(3), 216(2), **Sch. 7 para. 6(6)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, **art. 2**

**F839** S. 541(4) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 157** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

#### Marginal Citations

**M13** 1992 c. 13.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART X

### MISCELLANEOUS AND GENERAL

#### CHAPTER I

##### EDUCATIONAL PREMISES

###### *Required standards for educational premises*

#### **542 Prescribed standards for school premises.**

- (1) Regulations shall prescribe the standards to which the premises of schools maintained by local education authorities <sup>F840</sup> . . . are to conform; and without prejudice to the generality of section 569(4) different standards may be prescribed for such descriptions of schools as are specified in the regulations.
- (2) Where a school is maintained by a local education authority, the authority shall secure that the school premises conform to the prescribed standards.
- <sup>F841</sup>(3) . . . . .
- (4) [<sup>F842</sup>subsection (2) has] effect subject to section 543.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F840** Words in s. 542(1) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 158(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F841** S. 542(3) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 158(b), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F842** Words in s. 542(4) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 158(c)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### **543 Relaxation of prescribed standards in special cases.**

- (1) Where subsection (2), (3) [<sup>F843</sup>, (4) or (4A)] applies in relation to a school, the Secretary of State may direct that, despite the fact that the prescribed requirement referred to in that subsection is not satisfied, the school premises shall be taken, as respects the matters specified in the direction, to conform to the standards prescribed under section 542 so long as—
  - (a) the direction remains in force, and
  - (b) any conditions specified in the direction as respects those matters are observed.
- (2) This subsection applies if the Secretary of State is satisfied, having regard—
  - (a) to the nature of the school’s existing site,
  - (b) to any existing buildings on the site, or
  - (c) to other special circumstances affecting the school premises,that it would be unreasonable to require conformity with any prescribed requirement as to any matter.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) This subsection applies if—
- (a) the school is to have an additional or new site, and
  - (b) the Secretary of State is satisfied, having regard to the shortage of suitable sites, that it would be unreasonable to require conformity with any prescribed requirement relating to sites.

- (4) This subsection applies if—
- (a) the school is to have additional buildings, or is to be transferred to a new site,
  - (b) existing buildings not previously part of the school premises, or temporary buildings, are to be used for that purpose, and
  - (c) the Secretary of State is satisfied, having regard to the need to control public expenditure in the interests of the national economy, that it would be unreasonable to require conformity with any prescribed requirement relating to buildings.

[<sup>F844</sup>(4A) This subsection applies, in relation to any playing fields used by the school for the purposes of the school, if the Secretary of State is satisfied that, having regard to other facilities for physical education available to the school, it would be unreasonable to require conformity with any prescribed requirement relating to playing fields.

In this subsection “playing fields” has the same meaning as in section 77 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (control of disposals or changing use of school playing fields).]

- (5) In this section “prescribed requirement” means a requirement of regulations under section 542.

#### Textual Amendments

**F843** Words in s. 543(1) substituted (1.2.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 159(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(3), **Sch. 1 Pt.III**

**F844** S. 543(4A) inserted (1.2.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 159(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(3), **Sch. 1 Pt.III**

#### 544 Approval etc. of school premises and boarding hostels.

- (1) Regulations may make provision requiring the Secretary of State’s approval <sup>F845</sup> . . . to be obtained for the provision of new premises for, or the alteration of the premises of—
- (a) any school to which this section applies, or
  - (b) any boarding hostel provided by a local education authority for persons receiving education at any such school.
- (2) Regulations may make provision for the inspection of any such hostel.
- (3) The schools to which this section applies are—
- (a) any school maintained by a local education authority, [<sup>F846</sup>and]
  - <sup>F847</sup>(b) . . . . .
  - (c) any special school not maintained by a local education authority.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

- F845** Words in s. 544(1) repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), Sch. 30 para. 160(a), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F846** Word at the end of s. 544(3)(a) inserted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 160(b)(i)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F847** S. 544(3)(b) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 160(b)(ii), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**545 Exemption from building byelaws of approved buildings.**

- (1) Where plans for, or particulars in respect of, a building required for the purposes of any school or other educational institution are approved by the Secretary of State, he may by order direct that any provision of a local Act or of a byelaw made under such an Act—
  - (a) shall not apply in relation to the building, or
  - (b) shall apply in relation to it with such modifications as may be specified in the order.
- (2) The reference in subsection (1) to plans or particulars approved by the Secretary of State includes a reference to—
  - (a) particulars submitted to and approved by him under regulations under section 544 <sup>F848</sup> ..., <sup>F849</sup> . . .
  - <sup>F849</sup>(b) . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

- F848** Words in s. 545(2)(a) repealed (6.11.2006 for E., 2.1.2008 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 55, **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2006/2895, art. 2; S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1
- F849** S. 545(2)(b) and preceding word repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 161, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Control of potentially harmful materials and apparatus*

**546 Control of potentially harmful materials and apparatus in schools.**

- (1) Regulations may make provision for requiring the Secretary of State’s approval to be obtained for the use in schools to which this section applies of such materials or apparatus as may be specified in the regulations, being materials or apparatus which could or might involve a serious risk to health.
- (2) The schools to which this section applies are—
  - (a) any school maintained by a local education authority, [<sup>F850</sup>and]
  - <sup>F851</sup>(b) . . . . .
  - (c) any special school not maintained by a local education authority.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F850** Word at the end of s. 546(2)(a) inserted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 162(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F851** s. 546(2)(b) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 162(b)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

### *Nuisance or disturbance on school premises*

#### **547 Nuisance or disturbance on school premises.**

- (1) Any person who without lawful authority is present on premises to which this section applies and causes or permits nuisance or disturbance to the annoyance of persons who lawfully use those premises (whether or not any such persons are present at the time) is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 2 on the standard scale.
- (2) This section applies to premises, including playgrounds, playing fields and other premises for outdoor recreation, of—
- (a) any school maintained by a local education authority, <sup>F852</sup> . . .
  - <sup>F853</sup>(aa) any special school not so maintained, and
  - (ab) any independent school.]
  - <sup>F852</sup>(b) . . . . .
- <sup>F854</sup>(2A) This section also applies to any premises which are—
- (a) provided by a local education authority under <sup>F855</sup>section 507A or 507B (if the authority are in England) or section 508 (if the authority are in Wales)] , and
  - (b) used wholly or mainly in connection with the provision of instruction or leadership in sporting, recreational or outdoor activities.]
- (3) If—
- (a) a police constable, or
  - (b) (subject to subsection (5)) a person whom <sup>F856</sup>the appropriate authority has] authorised to exercise the power conferred by this subsection,
- has reasonable cause to suspect that any person is committing or has committed an offence under this section, he may remove him from the premises in question.
- <sup>F857</sup>(4) In subsection (3) “the appropriate authority” means—
- (a) in relation to premises of a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school, a local education authority or the governing body,
  - (b) in relation to—
    - (i) premises of any other school maintained by a local education authority, and
    - (ii) premises provided by a local education authority as mentioned in subsection (2A),
 a local education authority, and
  - (c) in relation to premises of a special school which is not so maintained or of an independent school, the proprietor of the school.]



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) A local education authority may not authorise a person to exercise the power conferred by subsection (3) in relation to premises of [<sup>F858</sup>a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school] without first obtaining the consent of the governing body.
- [<sup>F859</sup>(6) No proceedings for an offence under this section shall be brought by any person other than—
- (a) a police constable, or
  - (b) an authorised person.
- (7) In subsection (6) “authorised person” means—
- (a) in relation to an offence committed on premises of a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school, a local education authority or a person whom the governing body have authorised to bring such proceedings,
  - (b) in relation to an offence committed—
    - (i) on premises of any other school maintained by a local education authority, or
    - (ii) on premises provided by a local education authority as mentioned in subsection (2A),a local education authority, and
  - (c) in relation to an offence committed on premises of a special school which is not so maintained or of an independent school, a person whom the proprietor of the school has authorised to bring such proceedings.]
- (8) A local education authority may not bring proceedings for an offence under this section committed on premises of [<sup>F858</sup>a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school] without first obtaining the consent of the governing body.

#### Textual Amendments

- F852** S. 547(2)(b) and preceding word repealed (1.9.1999) by School Standards and Framework Act 1988 (c. 31), s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 163(a), Sch. 31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F853** S. 547(2)(aa)(ab) inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 20 para. 1(2) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F854** S. 547(2A) inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 20 para. 1(3) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F855** Words in s. 547(2A)(a) substituted (8.1.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), s. 188(2), Sch. 1 para. 6
- F856** Words in s. 547(3)(b) substituted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 20 para. 1(4) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F857** S. 547(4) substituted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 20 para. 1(5) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F858** Words in s. 547(5)(8) substituted (1.9.1999) by School Standards and Framework Act 1988 (c. 31), s. 140(1), Sch. 30 para. 163(c) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F859** S. 547(6)(7) substituted (1.10.2002 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 20 para. 1(6) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER II

### [<sup>F860</sup> PUNISHMENT AND RESTRAINT OF PUPILS]

#### Textual Amendments

**F860** Pt. X Ch. II: Chapter heading and cross-heading substituted for Chapter heading (1.9.1998) by virtue of 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 38**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt. IV**

### [<sup>F861</sup> Corporal punishment]

#### Textual Amendments

**F861** Pt. X Ch. II: Chapter heading and cross-heading substituted for Chapter heading (1.9.1998) by virtue of 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 38**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt. IV**

### [<sup>F862</sup> 548 No right to give corporal punishment.

- (1) Corporal punishment given by, or on the authority of, a member of staff to a child—
  - (a) for whom education is provided at any school, or
  - (b) for whom education is provided, otherwise than at school, under any arrangements made by a local education authority, or
  - (c) for whom [<sup>F863</sup>specified early years education] is provided otherwise than at school,  
cannot be justified in any proceedings on the ground that it was given in pursuance of a right exercisable by the member of staff by virtue of his position as such.
- (2) Subsection (1) applies to corporal punishment so given to a child at any time, whether at the school or other place at which education is provided for the child, or elsewhere.
- (3) The following provisions have effect for the purposes of this section.
- (4) Any reference to giving corporal punishment to a child is to doing anything for the purpose of punishing that child (whether or not there are other reasons for doing it) which, apart from any justification, would constitute battery.
- (5) However, corporal punishment shall not be taken to be given to a child by virtue of anything done for reasons that include averting—
  - (a) an immediate danger of personal injury to, or
  - (b) an immediate danger to the property of,  
any person (including the child himself).
- (6) “Member of staff”, in relation to the child concerned, means—
  - (a) any person who works as a teacher at the school or other place at which education is provided for the child, or
  - (b) any other person who (whether in connection with the provision of education for the child or otherwise)—
    - (i) works at that school or place, or
    - (ii) otherwise provides his services there (whether or not for payment), and has lawful control or charge of the child.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(7) “Child” (except in subsection (8)) means a person under the age of 18.

[<sup>F864</sup>(8) “Specified early years education” means—

- (a) in relation to England, early years provision as defined by section 20 of the Childcare Act 2006 which is provided under arrangements made by a local authority in England in pursuance of the duty imposed by section 7 of that Act (whether or not the local authority provides the early years provision);
- (b) in relation to Wales, full-time or part-time education suitable for children who have not attained compulsory school age which is provided—
  - (i) by a local education authority in Wales, or
  - (ii) by any other person who is in receipt of financial assistance given by such an authority under arrangements made by them in pursuance of the duty imposed by section 118 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.]]

**Textual Amendments**

- F862** S. 548 substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, **ss. 131(1)** (with **ss. 138(9), 144(6)**); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F863** Words in s. 548(1)(c) substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), s. 109(2), **Sch. 2 para. 27(2)**; S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)
- F864** S. 548(8) substituted (1.9.2008 for E.) by Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21), s. 109(2), **Sch. 2 para. 27(3)**; S.I. 2008/2261, art. 2 (with Sch. 1)

<sup>F865</sup>**549** .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F865** S. 549 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, **ss. 131(2), 140(1)(3)**, Sch. 30 para. 164, **Sch.31** (with **ss. 138(9), 144(6)**); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

<sup>F866</sup>**550** .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F866** S. 550 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, **ss. 131(2), 140(1)(3)**, Sch. 30 para. 164, **Sch.31** (with **ss. 138(9), 144(6)**); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*[<sup>F867</sup> Power to restrain pupils]*

**Textual Amendments**

- F867** S. 550A and cross-heading inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, **s. 4** (with s. 57(3)); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt. IV**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F868** **F869** **550A** **Power of members of staff to restrain pupils.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F868** S. 550A repealed (1.4.2007 for E.) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), ss. 96(a), 188(3), [Sch. 18 Sch. 6](#); S.I. 2007/935, art. 4(a)(d)

**F869** S. 550A and cross-heading inserted (1.9.1998) by [1997 c. 44](#), s. 4 (with s. 57(3)); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), [Sch. 1 Pt. IV](#)

**F870** **550A** **Power of members of staff to search pupils for weapons**

- (1) A member of the staff of a school who has reasonable grounds for suspecting that a pupil at the school may have with him or in his possessions—
  - (a) an article to which section 139 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 applies (knives and blades etc.), or
  - (b) an offensive weapon (within the meaning of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953),
 may search that pupil or his possessions for such articles and weapons.
- (2) A search under this section may be carried out only where—
  - (a) the member of the staff and the pupil are on the premises of the school; or
  - (b) they are elsewhere and the member of the staff has lawful control or charge of the pupil.
- (3) A person may carry out a search under this section only if—
  - (a) he is the head teacher of the school; or
  - (b) he has been authorised by the head teacher to carry out the search.
- (4) Nothing in any enactment, instrument or agreement shall be construed as authorising a head teacher of a school to require a person other than a member of the security staff of the school to carry out a search under this section.
- (5) A person who carries out a search of a pupil under this section—
  - (a) may not require the pupil to remove any clothing other than outer clothing;
  - (b) must be of the same sex as the pupil; and
  - (c) may carry out the search only in the presence of another member of the staff who is also of the same sex as the pupil.
- (6) A pupil's possessions may not be searched under this section except in his presence and in the presence of another member of the staff.
- (7) If, in the course of a search under this section, the person carrying out the search finds—
  - (a) anything which he has reasonable grounds for suspecting falls within subsection (1)(a) or (b), or
  - (b) any other thing which he has reasonable grounds for suspecting is evidence in relation to an offence,
 he may seize and retain it.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) A person who exercises a power under this section may use such force as is reasonable in the circumstances for exercising that power.
- (9) A person who seizes anything under subsection (7) must deliver it to a police constable as soon as reasonably practicable.
- (10) The Police (Property) Act 1897 (disposal of property in the possession of the police) shall apply to property which has come into the possession of a police constable under this section as it applies to property which has come into the possession of the police in the circumstances mentioned in that Act.
- (11) An authorisation for the purposes of subsection (3)(b) may be given either in relation to a particular search or generally in relation to searches under this section or to a particular description of such searches.
- (12) In this section—
- “member of the staff”, in relation to a school, means—
    - (a) any teacher who works at the school; and
    - (b) any other person who, with the authority of the head teacher, has lawful control or charge of pupils for whom education is being provided at the school;
  - “member of the security staff” means a member of the staff whose work at the school consists wholly or mainly of security-related activities;
  - “outer clothing” means—
    - (a) any item of clothing that is being worn otherwise than wholly next to the skin or immediately over a garment being worn as underwear; or
    - (b) a hat, shoes, boots, gloves or a scarf;
  - “possessions”, in relation to a pupil of a school, includes any goods over which he has or appears to have control.
- (13) The powers conferred by this section are in addition to any powers exercisable by the member of the staff in question apart from this section and are not to be construed as restricting such powers.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F870** S. 550AA inserted (E.W.) (31.5.2007 for E.) by [Violent Crime Reduction Act 2006 \(c. 38\)](#), **ss. 45**, 66(2); S.I. 2007/858, art. 3(a)

*[<sup>F871</sup> Detention]*

**Textual Amendments**

**F871** S. 550B and cross-heading inserted (1.9.1998) by [1997 c. 44](#), **s. 5** (with s. 57(3)); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt. IV**

<sup>F872</sup> ~~[<sup>F873</sup> 550B]~~ **Detention outside school hours lawful despite absence of parental consent.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F872** S. 550B repealed (1.4.2007 for E., 31.10.2010 for W.) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), ss. 96(a), 188(3), [Sch. 18 Sch. 6](#); S.I. 2007/935, art. 4(a)(d); S.I. 2010/2543, art. 2(f)(m)
- F873** S. 550B and cross-heading inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 5 (with s. 57(3)); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), [Sch. 1 Pt. IV](#)

### CHAPTER III

#### OTHER PROVISIONS ABOUT SCHOOLS

##### *Duration of school day etc.*

#### 551 Regulations as to duration of school day etc.

- (1) Regulations may make provision with respect to the duration of the school day and school year at, and the granting of leave of absence from, any schools to which this section applies.
- [<sup>F874</sup>(1A) In subsection (1) the reference to the duration of the school year at any such schools is a reference to the number of school sessions that must be held during any such year.]
- (2) The schools to which this section applies are—
- (a) any school maintained by a local education authority; [<sup>F875</sup>and]
  - <sup>F876</sup>(b) . . .
  - (c) any special school not maintained by a local education authority.

#### Textual Amendments

- F874** S. 551(1A) inserted (14.6.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), [Sch. 7 para. 39](#); S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1 Pt. I](#)
- F875** Word at the end of s. 551(2)(a) inserted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), [Sch. 30 para.166](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)
- F876** S. 551(2)(b) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), [Sch. 30 para. 166\(b\)](#), [Sch.31](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)

##### *Single-sex schools*

552

##### *Educational trusts*

#### 553 Schemes under the Endowed Schools Acts.

- (1) Where under any provision (however expressed) of a scheme made under the Endowed Schools Acts 1869 to 1948 the power of the trustees under the scheme to apply any property to which the scheme relates for purposes authorised by the scheme is subject

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

to the approval or order of any other person, the scheme shall have effect as if no such approval or order was required.

- (2) The Secretary of State may, on the application of any person whose approval or order would apart from this section be required under such a scheme, direct that the requirement shall continue to have effect despite subsection (1); but no liability shall be taken to have been incurred in respect of any failure before the making of such a direction to obtain any such approval or order.

### *Religious educational trusts*

#### **554 Power to make new provision as to use of endowments.**

[<sup>F877</sup>(1) This section applies where—

- (a) in relation to any time before the appointed day, the premises of a voluntary or grant-maintained school (within the meaning of this Act) have ceased to be used for such a voluntary or (as the case may be) grant-maintained school; or
- (b) in relation to any time on or after the appointed day—
  - (i) the premises of a foundation or voluntary school (within the meaning of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998) have ceased to be used for such a foundation or (as the case may be) voluntary school; or
  - (ii) in the opinion of the Secretary of State it is likely such premises will cease to be so used;

and in this subsection “the appointed day” has the meaning given by section 20(7) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.]

(2) In such a case the Secretary of State may (subject to sections 555 and 556(1) and (2)) by order make new provision as to the use of any endowment if it is shown either—

- (a) that the endowment is or has been held wholly or partly for or in connection with the provision at the school of religious education in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or religious denomination; or
- (b) that the endowment is or has been used wholly or partly for or in connection with the provision at the school of such religious education and that (subject to subsection (4)) the requirements of subsection (3) are fulfilled.

(3) The requirements of this subsection are—

- [<sup>F878</sup>(a) that the school was or has been maintained as a voluntary or grant-maintained school (within the meaning of this Act) or as a foundation or voluntary school (within the meaning of the <sup>M14</sup>School Standards and Framework Act 1998) since 1st April 1945 (the date when Part II of the Education Act 1944 came into force); and]
- (b) that religious education in accordance with the tenets of the religion or denomination concerned—
  - (i) is, and has been from that date, provided at the school, or
  - (ii) where the premises have ceased to be used for the purposes of the school, was provided at the school from that date until immediately before the premises ceased to be so used,

in pursuance of section 377 or 378 or section 380 or 381 [<sup>F879</sup>of this Act (or any corresponding earlier enactment) or paragraph 3 or 4 of Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998].

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) For the purposes of this section—
- (a) where in the case of any school falling within subsection (3)(a) it is shown—
- (i) that religious education in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or denomination is provided at the school, or
- (ii) if the premises have ceased to be used for the purposes of the school, such religious education was so provided immediately before the premises ceased to be so used,
- such religious education shall be taken to have been provided at the school from 1st April 1945, unless the contrary is shown; and
- [<sup>F880</sup>(b) where religious education in accordance with such tenets is shown to have been given to any pupils at—
- (i) a controlled school (within the meaning of this Act),
- (ii) a grant-maintained school (within the meaning of this Act) which was a controlled school immediately before it became a grant-maintained school, or
- (iii) a foundation or voluntary controlled school with a religious character (within the meaning of Part II of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998),
- the religious education shall be taken to have been given to them at the request of their parents, unless the contrary is shown.]
- (5) For the purposes of this section—
- “endowment” includes property not subject to any restriction on the expenditure of capital; and
- “shown” means shown to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State.
- (6) This section applies where the premises of a non-provided public elementary school ceased before 1st April 1945 to be used for such a school as it applies where the premises of a voluntary school have ceased to be used for such a school.

#### Textual Amendments

- F877** S. 554(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 168(2)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F878** S. 554(3)(a) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 168(3)(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F879** Words in s. 554(3)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 168(3)(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F880** S. 554(4)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 168(4)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### Marginal Citations

- M14** 1944 c. 31.

### 555 Procedure applicable to orders under section 554.

- (1) No order shall be made under section 554 except on the application of the persons appearing to the Secretary of State to be the appropriate authority of the religion or denomination concerned.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The Secretary of State shall, not less than one month before making an order under section 554, give notice of the proposed order and of the right of persons interested to make representations on it.
- (3) Such notice shall be given—
  - (a) by giving to any persons appearing to the Secretary of State to be trustees of an endowment affected by the proposed order a notice of the proposal to make it, together with a draft or summary of the provisions proposed to be included; and
  - (b) by publishing, in such manner as the Secretary of State thinks sufficient for informing any other persons interested, a notice of the proposal to make the order and of the place where any person interested may (during a period of not less than a month) inspect such a draft or summary, and by keeping a draft or summary available for inspection in accordance with the notice.
- (4) The Secretary of State shall take into account any representations made to him by any person interested before the order is made.
- (5) In this section “endowment” has the same meaning as in section 554.

#### **556 Content of orders under section 554.**

- (1) An order under section 554—
  - (a) may require or authorise the disposal by sale or otherwise of any land or other property forming part of an endowment affected by the order, including the premises of the school and any teacher’s dwelling-house; and
  - (b) may consolidate any endowments to be dealt with by the scheme.
- (2) Subject to subsection (1), and to any provision affecting the endowments which is a provision of a public general Act of Parliament, an order under section 554 shall establish and give effect, with a view to enabling the religion or denomination concerned to participate more effectively in the administration of the statutory system of public education, to a scheme or schemes for the endowments dealt with by the order to be used for appropriate educational purposes either—
  - (a) in connection with schools which are [<sup>F881</sup>foundation schools or voluntary schools]; or
  - (b) partly in connection with such schools (or either description of such schools) and partly in other ways related to the locality served by the [<sup>F882</sup>school at the premises referred to in section 554(1)].
- (3) In subsection (2) “use for appropriate educational purposes” means use for educational purposes in connection with the provision of religious education in accordance with the tenets of the religion or denomination concerned (including in particular, but without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing, use for any purpose specified in Schedule 36).
- (4) A scheme given effect under section 554—
  - (a) may provide for the retention of the capital of any endowment and application of the accruing income; or
  - (b) may authorise the application or expenditure of capital to such extent and subject to such conditions as may be determined by or in accordance with the scheme;

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

and any such scheme may provide for the endowments dealt with by the scheme or any part of them to be added to any existing endowment applicable for any such purpose as is authorised for the scheme by subsection (2).

- (5) Where a scheme given effect under section 554 provides for the endowments dealt with by the order or any part of them to be used for the purposes specified in Schedule 36, any such scheme may provide for the endowments thereby dealt with or any part of them to be added to any existing endowment applicable for those purposes (whether it is so applicable by virtue of a scheme given effect to under that section or otherwise).
- (6) Section 568(5) does not apply to an order under section 554, but such an order may include such incidental or supplementary provisions as appear to the Secretary of State to be necessary or expedient either for the bringing into force or for the operation of any scheme established by it, including in particular provisions—
  - (a) for the appointment and powers of trustees of the property comprised in the scheme or, if the property is not all applicable for the same purposes, of any part of that property; and
  - (b) for the property or any part of it to vest by virtue of the scheme in the first trustees under the scheme or trustees of any endowment to which it is to be added or, if not so vested, to be transferred to them.
- (7) Any order under section 554 shall have effect despite any Act of Parliament (other than a public general Act), letters patent or other instrument relating to, or trust affecting, the endowments dealt with by the order.
- (8) In this section “endowment” has the same meaning as in section 554.

#### Textual Amendments

**F881** Words in s. 556(2)(a) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 169(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6))

**F882** Words in s. 556(2)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 169(b)** (with s. 138(9), 144(6))

#### 557 Adoption of statutory trusts.

- (1) This section applies to endowments which are—
  - (a) regulated by a qualifying scheme under the Endowed Schools Acts 1869 to 1948 as applied by section 86(1) of the <sup>M15</sup>Education Act 1944 or by an order under section 554 of this Act or section 2 of the <sup>M16</sup>Education Act 1973; and
  - (b) held under any such scheme or order on trusts which provide for capital or income or both to be applicable for or in connection with—
    - (i) the provision of religious education at relevant schools, or relevant schools of any description (but not only at a particular school or schools) in a diocese or other geographical area; or
    - (ii) the provision of premises for relevant schools, or relevant schools of any description (but not only at a particular school or schools) at which religious education is or is to be provided in a diocese or other geographical area;

but this section does not apply to an endowment if or in so far as it constitutes a religious education fund.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The trustees of any endowments to which this section applies may, by resolution complying with subsection (6), adopt the uniform statutory trusts as the trusts on which those endowments are to be held.
- (3) The uniform statutory trusts are those set out in Schedule 36.
- (4) On the adoption by trustees of the uniform statutory trusts in respect of any endowments the scheme or order which regulates the endowments shall have effect as if the uniform statutory trusts are incorporated in the scheme or order to the exclusion of the corresponding provisions of the scheme or order.
- (5) The trustees of two or more endowments which are held on the uniform statutory trusts may, by resolution complying with subsection (6), consolidate all or any of those endowments and, where they do so, the endowments shall be treated, for all purposes, as held for the purposes of a single charity.
- (6) For a resolution to comply with this subsection—
  - (a) it must be passed by a simple majority of the trustees or, if the trustees are a body corporate or a company, by a simple majority of the members of the body corporate or an ordinary resolution of the company; and
  - (b) it must be recorded in the records of the decisions of the trustees affecting the endowments of the trust.
- (7) Where trustees pass a resolution under subsection (2), it shall be their duty to send a copy of the resolution to the Secretary of State.
- (8) The uniform statutory trusts applicable to endowments to which this section applies shall not affect—
  - (a) the rights of any person under the third proviso to section 2 of the <sup>M17</sup>School Sites Act 1841, under section 86(3) of the <sup>M18</sup>Education Act 1944 or under section 1 of the <sup>M19</sup>Reverter of Sites Act 1987 (rights replacing certain reversionary interests in land), or
  - (b) the rights of any local education authority which have arisen under paragraph 7 or 8 of the First Schedule to the <sup>M20</sup>Education Act 1946 (rights in relation to school sites provided by such authorities) or which may arise under section 60(4) or 62(2),except in so far as any right falling within paragraph (a) above is or has been extinguished by an order under section 554 of this Act or section 2 of the <sup>M21</sup>Education Act 1973 made by virtue of section 5 of the Reverter of Sites Act 1987.
- (9) In this section—
  - “company” means a company formed under the Companies Acts;
  - “the Companies Acts” means the <sup>M22</sup>Companies Act 1985, the <sup>M23</sup>Companies Act 1948 or any Act repealed by that Act of 1948;
  - “endowment” has the same meaning as in section 554;
  - “provision”, in relation to premises, means provision by the purchase of a site, the erection of premises or the maintenance, improvement or enlargement of premises;
  - “qualifying scheme” means a scheme in force on 1st January 1994 (the date when section 287 of the <sup>M24</sup>Education Act 1993 came into force);
  - “relevant school” means [<sup>F883</sup>a foundation or voluntary school];

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“religious education” means religious education in accordance with the tenets of a particular religion or religious denomination; and

“religious education fund” includes a Sunday school fund.

(10) In Schedule 36 as incorporated in any scheme or order—

“the area” means the diocese or other geographical area within which the trust assets may be applied under the scheme or order, as the case may be;

“relevant school” means a relevant school [<sup>F884</sup>, Academy, city technology college or city college for the technology of the arts,] at which the religious education provided for in the scheme or order, as the case may be, is or is to be provided; and

“the relevant trust assets” means the endowments in respect of which the trustees have adopted the uniform statutory trusts, including the income derived therefrom.

#### Textual Amendments

**F883** Words in s. 557(9) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.170** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F884** S. 557(10): words in definition of "relevant school" inserted (26.7.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), **ss. 69, 216(2)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, **art. 2**

#### Marginal Citations

**M15** 1944 c. 31.

**M16** 1973 c. 16.

**M17** 1841 c. 38.

**M18** 1944 c. 31.

**M19** 1987 c. 15.

**M20** 1946 c. 50.

**M21** 1973 c. 16.

**M22** 1985 c. 6.

**M23** 1948 c. 38.

**M24** 1993 c. 35.

## CHAPTER IV

### EMPLOYMENT OF CHILDREN AND YOUNG PERSONS

#### **558 Meaning of “child” for purposes of enactments relating to employment of children or young persons.**

For the purposes of any enactment relating to the prohibition or regulation of the employment of children or young persons, any person who is not over compulsory school age shall be deemed to be a child within the meaning of that enactment.

#### **559 Power of local education authorities to prohibit or restrict employment of children.**

(1) If it appears to a local education authority that a child who is a registered pupil at a [<sup>F885</sup>community, foundation], voluntary or special school is being employed in such a

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

manner as to be prejudicial to his health, or otherwise to render him unfit to obtain the full benefit of the education provided for him, the authority may serve a notice in writing on the employer—

- (a) prohibiting him from employing the child, or
  - (b) imposing such restrictions upon his employment of the child as appear to them to be expedient in the interests of the child.
- (2) A local education authority may serve a notice in writing on the parent or employer of a child who is a registered pupil at a [<sup>F886</sup>community, foundation], voluntary or special school requiring the parent or employer to provide the authority, within such period as may be specified in the notice, with such information as appears to the authority to be necessary for the purpose of enabling them to ascertain whether the child is being employed in such a manner as to render him unfit to obtain the full benefit of the education provided for him.
- (3) A person who—
- (a) employs a child in contravention of any prohibition or restriction imposed under subsection (1), or
  - (b) fails to comply with the requirements of a notice served under subsection (2),
- shall be guilty of an offence.
- (4) A person guilty of an offence under this section shall be liable on summary conviction—
- (a) to a fine not exceeding level 1 on the standard scale, or
  - (b) to imprisonment for a term not exceeding one month,
- or both.
- (5) Section 28(1) and (3) of the <sup>M25</sup>Children and Young Persons Act 1933 (powers of entry for the enforcement of the provisions of Part II of that Act as to the employment of children) shall apply with respect to the provisions of any notice served under this section as they apply with respect to the provisions of Part II of that Act.

<sup>F887</sup>(6) . . . . .

#### Textual Amendments

**F885** Words in s. 559(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 171(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F886** Words in s. 559(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 171(b)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F887** S. 559(6) repealed (21.7.2008) by Statute Law (Repeals) Act 2008 (c. 12), **Sch. 1 Pt. 11**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C126** S. 559 applied (E.) (1.9.2005) by The Education (Pupil Referral Units) (Application of Enactments) (England) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/2039), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 3**

**C127** S. 559 applied (W.) (23.4.2007) by The Education (Pupil Referral Units) (Application of Enactments) (Wales) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/1069), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 3**

**C128** S. 559 applied (E.) (1.2.2008) by The Education (Pupil Referral Units) (Application of Enactments) (England) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/2979), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 8**

#### Marginal Citations

**M25** 1933 c. 12.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 560 Work experience in last year of compulsory schooling.

- [<sup>F888</sup>(1) The enactments relating to the prohibition or regulation of the employment of children shall not apply to the employment of a child in his last two years of compulsory schooling if the employment is in pursuance of arrangements made—
- (a) by a local education authority, or
  - (b) by the governing body of a school on behalf of such an authority,
- with a view to providing him with work experience as a part of his education.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) a child shall be taken to be in his last two years of compulsory schooling as from the beginning of the last two school years at his school during the whole or part of which he is of compulsory school age.]
- (3) Subsection (1) shall not be taken to permit the employment of a person in any way contrary to—
- (a) an enactment which in terms applies to persons of less than, or not over, a specified age expressed as a number of years, or
  - (b) section 1(2) of the <sup>M26</sup>Employment of Women, Young Persons and Children Act 1920 or section 55(1) of the <sup>M27</sup>Merchant Shipping Act 1995 (which prohibit the employment of children in ships).
- (4) No arrangements shall be made under subsection (1) for a child to be employed in any way which would be contrary to an enactment prohibiting or regulating the employment of young persons if he were a young person (within the meaning of the enactment) and not a child.
- (5) Where a child is employed in pursuance of arrangements made under subsection (1), so much of any enactment as—
- (a) regulates the employment of young persons (whether by excluding them from any description of work, prescribing the conditions under which they may be permitted to do it or in any other way), and
  - (b) would apply in relation to him if he were of an age to be treated as a young person for the purposes of that enactment,
- shall apply in relation to him, in and in respect of the employment arranged for him, in all respects as if he were of an age to be so treated.
- (6) Nothing in section 495 or 496 applies in relation to any power conferred on a local education authority <sup>F889</sup>. . . by subsection (1).
- (7) In this section “enactment” includes any byelaw, regulation or other provision having effect under an enactment.

### Textual Amendments

- F888** S. 560(1)(2) substituted (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 112(2) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1) Sch. 1 Pt. I
- F889** Words in s. 560(6) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 112(3), 140(3), Sch.31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

### Marginal Citations

- M26** 1920 c. 65.  
**M27** 1995 c. 21.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER V

### PERSONS NOT COVERED BY ACT

#### 561 Act not to apply to persons in service of the Crown.

No power or duty conferred or imposed by this Act on—

- (a) the Secretary of State,
- (b) local education authorities, or
- (c) parents,

shall be construed as relating to any person who is employed by or under the Crown in any service or capacity with respect to which the Secretary of State certifies that, by reason of the arrangements made for the education of children and young persons so employed, the exercise and performance of those powers and duties with respect to such children and young persons is unnecessary.

#### 562 Act not to apply to persons detained under order of a court.

(1) No power or duty conferred or imposed by or under this Act on—

- (a) the Secretary of State,
- (b) local education authorities, or
- (c) parents,

shall be construed as relating to any person who is detained in pursuance of an order made by a court or of an order of recall made by the Secretary of State, but a local education authority may make arrangements for a person who is detained in pursuance of such an order to receive the benefit of educational facilities provided by the authority.

(2) A child or young person who is being educated as a boarder at a school shall not be regarded for the purposes of subsection (1) as detained in pursuance of an order made by a court by reason of the fact that he is required to be at the school—

- (a) by virtue of an order made by a court under the <sup>M28</sup>Children and Young Persons Act 1933 or by virtue of anything done under such an order; or
- (b) by virtue of a requirement of a [<sup>F890</sup>community order under section 177 the Criminal Justice Act 2003] or by virtue of anything done under such a requirement.

#### Textual Amendments

**F890** Words in s. 562(2)(b) substituted (4.4.2005) by [Criminal Justice Act 2003 \(c. 44\), s. 336\(3\)\(4\), Sch. 32 para. 73](#); S.I. 2005/950, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 para. 42(30) (with Sch. 2) (as explained (29.7.2005) by S.I. 2005/2122, art. 2; and as amended: (14.7.2008) by [2008 c. 4, Sch. 26 para. 78, Sch. 28 Pt. 2](#); S.I. 2008/1586, Sch. 1 paras. 48(s), 50(2)(d); (30.11.2009) by [S.I. 2009/3111, art. 2](#); (3.12.2012) by [S.I. 2012/2905, art. 4](#); (3.12.2012) by [2012 c. 10, Sch. 14 para. 17](#); S.I. 2012/2906, art. 2(l))

#### Marginal Citations

**M28** [1933 c. 12.](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER VI

### GENERAL

#### *Documents and evidence*

#### **563 Educational records.**

- (1) Regulations may make provision as to—
  - (a) the keeping, disclosure and transfer of educational records about persons receiving education at schools to which this section applies; and
  - (b) the supply of copies of such records to such persons, and in such circumstances, as may be determined by or under the regulations.
- (2) The regulations may authorise persons who supply copies of such records in pursuance of the regulations to charge such fee as they think fit (not exceeding the cost of supply) in respect of each copy so supplied.
- (3) The schools to which this section applies are—
  - (a) any school maintained by a local education authority; <sup>F891</sup>and]
  - <sup>F892</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) any special school not maintained by a local education authority.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F891** Word at the end of s. 563(3)(a) inserted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 172(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F892** S. 563(3)(b) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch 30 para. 172(b), Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### **564 Certificates of birth and registrars' returns.**

- (1) Where the age of any person is required to be proved for the purposes of this Act or of any enactment relating to the employment of children or young persons, the registrar having the custody of the register of birth and deaths containing the entry relating to the birth of that person shall—
  - (a) on being presented by any person (“the applicant”) with a written requisition in such form and containing such particulars as may be determined by regulations, and
  - (b) on payment of a fee of [<sup>F893</sup>£3.50][<sup>F893</sup>£7.00],
 supply the applicant with a copy of the entry certified under his hand.
- (2) A registrar shall, on being requested so to do, supply free of charge a form of requisition for the purposes of subsection (1).
- (3) A registrar shall supply to a local education authority such particulars of the entries contained in any register of births and deaths in his custody, and in such form, as (subject to regulations) the authority may from time to time require.
- (4) In this section—



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“register of births and deaths” means a register of births and deaths kept under the <sup>M29</sup>Births and Deaths Registration Act 1953, and

“registrar” includes a registrar of births and deaths and a superintendent registrar.

#### Textual Amendments

**F893** S. 564(1)(b): fees of £3.50 and £7.00 made payable (1.4.2003) in respect of copies issued by (i) a registrar and (ii) a superintendent registrar respectively by virtue of [The Registration of Births, Deaths and Marriages \(Fees\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/3076\)](#), arts. 1(1), 2, [Sch.](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M29** 1953 c. 20.

### 565 Evidence: presumption as to age.

- (1) Where in any proceedings under this Act the person by whom the proceedings are brought—
  - (a) alleges that any person whose age is material to the proceedings is under, of, or over, any age, and
  - (b) satisfies the court that, having used all reasonable diligence to obtain evidence as to the age of that person, he has been unable to do so,the court may, unless the contrary is proved, presume that person to be under, of, or (as the case may be) over, the age alleged.
- (2) This section has effect subject to section 445(3).

### 566 Evidence: documents.

- (1) In any legal proceedings, any of the following documents, namely—
  - (a) a document purporting to be a document issued by a local education authority, and to be signed by the clerk of that authority or by the [<sup>F894</sup>director of children’s services (in the case of an authority in England) or the chief education officer (in the case of an authority in Wales)] or by any other officer of the authority authorised to sign it,
  - (b) a document purporting to be an extract from the minutes of the proceedings of the governing body of [<sup>F895</sup>a maintained school], and to be signed by the chairman of the governing body or by their clerk,
  - (c) a document purporting to be a certificate giving particulars of the attendance of a child or young person at a school, and to be signed by the head teacher of the school, and
  - (d) a document purporting to be a certificate issued by a medical officer of a local education authority, and to be signed by such an officer,shall be received in evidence and shall be treated, without further proof, as the document which it purports to be and as having been signed by the person by whom it purports to have been signed, unless the contrary is proved.
- (2) In any legal proceedings, any such extract or certificate as is mentioned in subsection (1)(b), (c) or (d) shall be evidence of the matters stated in it.

[<sup>F896</sup>(3) Where a child of compulsory school age is required to attend at—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any place at which education is provided for him in the circumstances mentioned in subsection (1) of section 444ZA, or
- (b) any place in the circumstances mentioned in subsection (2) of that section, subsection (1)(c) has effect as if the place in question were a school and the person in charge of the provision of education or training at that place were its head teacher (and subsection (2) has effect accordingly).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F894** Words in s. 566(1)(a) substituted (1.1.2008) (with effect in accordance with s. 18(9) of the commencing S.I.) by [Children Act 2004 \(c. 31\)](#), s. 67(2), [Sch. 2 para. 4\(3\)](#); S.I. 2007/1792, art. 2
- F895** Words in s. 566(1)(b) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1), 145(3), [Sch. 30 para.173](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)
- F896** S. 566(3) inserted (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 18 para. 6](#) (with s. 119); S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4; S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3, Sch. 1

#### *Stamp duty*

**F897** **567** .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F897** S. 567 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), [Sch. 30 para. 174](#), [Sch.31](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in [S.I. 1999/2323](#), [art. 13](#)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)

#### *Orders, regulations and directions*

### **568 Orders.**

- (1) Any power of the Secretary of State to make orders under this Act (other than an order under any of the excepted provisions) shall be exercised by statutory instrument.

**F898** [(2) For the purposes of subsection (1) “the excepted provisions” are—

section 349;

**F899**  
...

section 489(3);

section 497; and

section 545.]

- (3) A statutory instrument containing any order made by the Secretary of State under this Act, other than an order under—

[**F900** section 354(6), 355(2)(a), 356(2)(c) or 401,]

**F901**  
...

section 554,

section 583(3) or (4), or

Schedule 40,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

- (4) [<sup>F902</sup>No order shall be made under section 354(6), 355(2)(a) or 401 unless a draft of the instrument containing the order has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.]
- (5) Any order made—
- (a) by the Secretary of State under this Act by statutory instrument, <sup>F903</sup> . . .
- <sup>F903</sup>(b) . . . . .
- may make different provision for different cases, circumstances or areas and may contain such incidental, supplemental, saving or transitional provisions as the Secretary of State thinks fit.
- (6) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (5), an order made by the Secretary of State under this Act by statutory instrument may make in relation to Wales provision different from that made in relation to England.

**Textual Amendments**

- F898** S. 568(2) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 175(a)**, (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, **art. 16(3)**) as amended (31.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2484, **reg. 3**
- F899** Words in s. 568(2) repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, **Sch. Pt. III**
- F900** Words in s. 568(3) repealed (1.10.2002 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, **Sch. Pt. III**
- F901** Words in s. 568(3) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 175(b)**, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch.1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, **art. 16(3)**) (as amended (31.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2484, **art. 3**)
- F902** S. 568(4) repealed (1.10.2002 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, **Sch. Pt. III**
- F903** S. 568(5)(b) and preceding word repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 175(c)**, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, **art. 16(3)**) (as amended (31.8.1999) by S.I. 1999/2484, **art. 3**)

**569 Regulations.**

- (1) Any power of the Secretary of State to make regulations under this Act shall be exercised by statutory instrument.
- (2) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this Act, <sup>F904</sup> . . . , shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- <sup>F905</sup>(3) . . . . .
- (4) Regulations under this Act may make different provision for different cases, circumstances or areas and may contain such incidental, supplemental, saving or transitional provisions as the Secretary of State thinks fit.
- (5) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (4), regulations under this Act may make in relation to Wales provision different from that made in relation to England.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(6) Subsection (5) does not apply to regulations under section 579(4).

#### Extent Information

**E1** S. 569 extends to Scotland so far as relating to regulations under s. 493 see s. 583(7).

#### Textual Amendments

**F904** Words in s. 569(2) repealed (8.1.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(2), **Sch. 18 Pt. 2**

**F905** S. 569(3) repealed (8.1.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(2), **Sch. 18 Pt. 2**

### 570 Revocation and variation of certain orders and directions.

- (1) This section applies to any order or directions made or given under this Act by—
- (a) the Secretary of State, [<sup>F906</sup>or]
  - <sup>F907</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) a local education authority,
- other than an order to which section 568(1) applies.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3), any such order or directions may be varied or revoked by a further order or directions made or given by the Secretary of State, <sup>F908</sup> . . . or the local education authority, as the case may be.
- (3) Where the power to make or give any such order or directions is only exercisable—
- (a) on the application or with the consent of any person or body of persons, or
  - (b) after consultation with any person or body of persons, or
  - (c) subject to any other conditions,
- no order or directions made or given under that power may be varied or revoked under subsection (2) unless the same conditions are complied with.

#### Textual Amendments

**F906** Word at the end of s. 570(1)(a) inserted (1.4.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 177(a)(i)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F907** S. 570(1)(b) repealed (1.4.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 177(a)(ii)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F908** Words in s. 570(2) repealed (1.4.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 177(b)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

### *Guidance*

### 571 Publication of guidance.

- (1) The Secretary of State shall publish any guidance given by him for the purposes of any [<sup>F909</sup>provision of this Act] in such manner as he thinks fit.

<sup>F910</sup>(2) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F909** Words in s. 571(1) substituted (14.6.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 41(a)**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt.I**
- F910** S. 571(2) repealed (14.6.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1)(4), Sch. 7 para. 41(b), **Sch.8**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt.I**

### *Service of documents*

#### **572 Service of notices and other documents.**

Any order, notice or other document required or authorised by this Act to be [<sup>F911</sup>served on, or given to, any person may be served or given] —

- (a) by delivering it to that person, or
- (b) by leaving it at his usual or last known place of residence, or
- (c) by sending it in a prepaid letter addressed to him at that place.

[<sup>F912</sup>(2) But such a document may not be served or given in an electronic communication to a person as a parent unless —

- (a) the person consents in writing to the receipt of documents of the kind in question from the sender in an electronic communication sent to a specified number or address, and
- (b) the communication is sent to the number or address in question.

(3) In subsection (2), “electronic communication” has the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2000.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F911** Words in s. 572 substituted (27.2.2004) by **Anti-social Behaviour Act 2003 (c. 38), ss. 23(2), 93**; S.I. 2003/3300, art. 3(a)(ii)
- F912** S. 572(2)(3) inserted (1.1.2005) by **The Education Act 1996 (Electronic Communications) Order 2004 (S.I. 2004/2521), arts. 1, 3**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C129** S. 572 restricted (1.4.2007 for E., 31.10.2010 for W.) by **Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 92(6), 188(3)**; S.I. 2007/935, art. 4(a); S.I. 2010/2543, art. 2(d)
- C130** S. 572 restricted (1.9.2007) by **Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 104(6), 188(3)**; S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(h)

### *Construction*

#### **573 Meaning of expressions relating to alteration etc. of premises or character of schools.**

- (1) The following provisions apply for the purposes of this Act except where the context otherwise requires.
- (2) References to the alteration of school premises include making improvements, extensions or additions to the premises; <sup>F913</sup> . . .

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) References to the enlargement of any school premises include any modification of the school’s existing premises which has the effect of increasing the number of pupils for whom accommodation can be provided.

- F914(4) .....
- F914(5) .....
- F914(6) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F913** Words in s. 573(2) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 178(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F914** S. 573(4)-(6) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 178(b), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings for s. 573(4)-(6) in S.I. 1999/2323, **art. 19**); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**574 Changes to school not amounting to discontinuance etc.**

- (1) For the purposes of this Act and any other enactment relating to the duties of a local education authority neither—
  - (a) references in whatever terms to discontinuing a school (including those to a local authority ceasing to maintain a school), nor
  - (b) references in whatever terms to establishing a new school,
 shall be read as applying by reason only of a change such as is mentioned in subsection (2) being made to an existing school (so that, where such a change is made to an existing school, the school shall be regarded as continuing despite the change and as being the same school before and after it, unless for other reasons it is to be regarded as discontinued).
- (2) The changes are—
  - (a) education beginning or ceasing to be provided for pupils above or below a particular age, for boys as well as girls or for girls as well as boys;
  - (b) an enlargement or alteration of the school premises; and
  - (c) the transfer of the school to a new site.

**575** .....

**576 Meaning of “parent”.**

- (1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, “parent”, in relation to a child or young person, includes any person—
  - (a) who is not a parent of his but who has parental responsibility for him, or
  - (b) who has care of him,
 except that in [F915section 499(8)] it only includes such a person if he is an individual.

F916(2) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In subsection (1) “parental responsibility” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M30</sup>Children Act 1989.
- (4) In determining for the purposes of subsection (1) whether an individual has care of a child or young person, any absence of the child or young person at a hospital or boarding school and any other temporary absence shall be disregarded.

**Textual Amendments**

**F915** Words in s. 576(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 180(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F916** S. 576(2) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 180(b), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C131** S. 576 applied (24.7.1998) by 1998 c. 31, **ss. 142(10), 145(4)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6))

**C132** S. 576 applied (1.9.2001) by S.I. 2001/600, **reg. 30(10)**

**Marginal Citations**

**M30** 1989 c. 41.

<sup>F917</sup>**577** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F917** S. 577 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 181, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**578 Meaning of “the Education Acts”.**

In this Act “the Education Acts” means this Act together with the following Acts—

<sup>F918</sup>  
.....

<sup>F919</sup>  
.....

.....

the <sup>M31</sup>Education Act 1973;

the <sup>M32</sup>Education Act 1980;

the <sup>M33</sup>Education (Fees and Awards) Act 1983;

the <sup>M34</sup>Further Education Act 1985 (except sections 4 and 5);

the <sup>M35</sup>Education Act 1986;

the <sup>M36</sup>Education (No. 2) Act 1986;

the <sup>M37</sup>Education Reform Act 1988;

<sup>F918</sup>  
.....

<sup>F920</sup>  
.....

.....

the <sup>M38</sup>Further and Higher Education Act 1992;

the <sup>M39</sup>Education Act 1994;

<sup>F918</sup>  
.....

<sup>F919</sup>  
.....

<sup>F921</sup>  
.....;

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F922</sup>the <sup>M40</sup>Education Act 1997;]  
 [<sup>F923</sup>the <sup>M41</sup> Education (Schools) Act 1997;]  
 F924 . . .  
 [<sup>F925</sup>the <sup>M42</sup>Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998;]  
 [<sup>F926</sup>the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31);]  
 [<sup>F927</sup>the Education Act 2002 (c. 32)].  
 [<sup>F928</sup>the Higher Education Act 2004 (c. 8)]  
 [<sup>F929</sup>the Education Act 2005 (c. 18)]  
 [<sup>F930</sup>the Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40)]

### Textual Amendments

- F918** Entries in s. 578 repealed (1.1.1999) by 1998 c. 30, s. 44(2), **Sch. 4** (with s. 42(8)); S.I. 1998/3237, **art. 2(1)** (subject to **arts. 3, 4**)
- F919** Entries in s. 578 repealed (1.4.2003 for E.; 2.1.2008 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with **ss. 210(8), 214(4)**); S.I. 2003/124, **art. 4**; S.I. 2007/3611, **art. 4(1)**, **Sch.**
- F920** Words in s. 578 repealed (1.8.2003) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(2), **Sch. 21 para. 56, Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with **ss. 210(8), 214(4)**); S.I. 2003/1667, **art. 2**
- F921** Words in s. 578(1) omitted (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by virtue of Education Act 2005 (c. 18), s. 125(4), **Sch. 9 para. 9**; **Sch. 19 Pt. 1**; S.I. 2005/2034, **art. 4**; S.I. 2006/1338, **art. 3, Sch. 1**
- F922** Entry in s. 578 added (14.6.1997) by virtue of 1997 c. 44, ss. 57(1), 58(2), **Sch. 7 para. 42**; S.I. 1997/1468, **art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. 1**
- F923** Entry in s. 578 inserted (31.7.1997) by 1997 c. 59, **ss. 6(2), 7(2)(3)**
- F924** Entry in s. 578 (as inserted (27.1.1998) by 1998 c. 1, **ss. 6(1), 7(2)**) repealed (1.1.1999) by 1998 c. 30, s. 44(2), **Sch. 4** (with s. 42(8)); S.I. 1998/3237, **art. 2(1)** (subject to **arts. 3, 4**)
- F925** Entry in s. 578 inserted (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 30, ss. 44(1), 46(2), **Sch. 3 para. 15** (with s. 42(8)); S.I. 1998/2215, **art. 2**
- F926** Entry in s. 578 inserted (1.2.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para.182** (with **ss. 138(9), 144(6)**); S.I. 1999/120, **art. 2(1), Sch. 1**
- F927** Entry in s. 578 inserted (24.7.2002) by virtue of Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 216(1), **217(2)** (with **ss. 210(8), 214(4)**)
- F928** S. 578 entry added (1.7.2004) by Higher Education Act 2004 (c. 8), ss. 52(1), **54(2)**
- F929** S. 578 entry added (7.4.2005) by Education Act 2005 (c. 18), ss. 125(1)(c), **128(2)**
- F930** S. 578 entry added (8.11.2006) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 188(1), **191(2)**

### Marginal Citations

- M31** 1973 c. 16.  
**M32** 1980 c. 20.  
**M33** 1983 c. 40.  
**M34** 1985 c. 47.  
**M35** 1986 c. 40.  
**M36** 1986 c. 61.  
**M37** 1988 c. 40.  
**M38** 1992 c. 13.  
**M39** 1994 c. 30.  
**M40** 1997 c. 44  
**M41** 1997 c. 59  
**M42** 1998 c. 30



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 579 General interpretation.

(1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires—

- F931  
.....
- [<sup>F932</sup>“assist”, in relation to any school, institution or university, shall be construed in accordance with subsections (5) to (7) below;]
- “boarder” includes a pupil who boards during the week but not at weekends;
- “child” means a person who is not over compulsory school age;
- “clothing” includes footwear;
- F931  
.....
- “financial year” means a period of twelve months ending with 31st March;
- “functions” includes powers and duties;
- F931  
.....
- “head teacher” includes acting head teacher;
- “higher education” means education provided by means of a course of any description mentioned in Schedule 6 to the Education Reform Act 1988;
- [<sup>F933</sup>“income-related employment and support allowance” means an income-related allowance under Part 1 of the Welfare Reform Act 2007 (employment and support allowance);]
- “land” includes buildings and other structures, land covered with water, and any interest in land;
- “liability” includes obligation;
- “local authority” means a county council, a county borough council, a district council, a London borough council or the Common Council of the City of London;
- F931  
.....
- “local government elector” has the meaning given by section 270(1) of the <sup>M43</sup>Local Government Act 1972;
- [<sup>F934</sup>“maintained nursery school” has the meaning given by section 22(9) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;]
- “medical officer”, in relation to a local education authority, means a registered medical practitioner who is employed or engaged (whether regularly or for the purposes of any particular case) by the authority or whose services are made available to the authority by the Secretary of State;
- “modifications” includes additions, alterations and omissions and “modify” shall be construed accordingly;
- [<sup>F935</sup>“the National Curriculum”(without more) means—
- (a) in relation to England, the National Curriculum for England, and
  - (b) in relation to Wales, the National Curriculum for Wales;]
- “premises”, in relation to a school, includes any detached playing fields but, except where otherwise expressly provided, does not include a teacher’s dwelling-house;
- “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations;
- “proprietor”, in relation to a school, means the person or body of persons responsible for the management of the school (so that, in relation to [<sup>F936</sup>a community, foundation or voluntary or community or foundation special school [<sup>F937</sup>or a maintained nursery school,] ,][<sup>F938</sup>or a maintained nursery school,] it means the governing body);
- F931  
.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“regulations” means regulations made by the Secretary of State;

<sup>F931</sup> .....

[<sup>F939</sup>“sex education” includes education about—

- (a) Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome and Human Immunodeficiency Virus, and
- (b) any other sexually transmitted disease;]

“school buildings”, in relation to a school, means any building or part of a building forming part of the school premises, other than a building or part required only—

- (a) as a caretaker’s dwelling,
- (b) for use in connection with playing fields,
- (c) to afford facilities for enabling the Secretary of State facilities to carry out his functions under [<sup>F940</sup>paragraph 1 or 8 of Schedule 1 to the National Health Service Act 2006 (which relate to the provision of medical services for pupils), or]
- (d) to afford facilities for providing milk, meals or other refreshment for pupils in attendance at the school;

“school day”, in relation to a school, means any day on which at that school there is a school session;

[<sup>F941</sup>“school year”, in relation to a school, means the period beginning with the first school term to begin after July and ending with the beginning of the first such term to begin after the following July;]

[<sup>F942</sup>“trust deed” includes any instrument (other than an instrument of government) regulating the constitution of the school’s governing body or the maintenance, management or conduct of the school;]

“young person” means a person over compulsory school age but under the age of 18.

(2) References in this Act to an interest in land include any easement, right or charge in, to or over land.

<sup>F943</sup>(3) .....

(4) For the purposes of this Act a person shall be treated as belonging, or as not belonging, to the area of a particular local education authority in accordance with regulations; and any question under the regulations shall, in the case of a dispute, be determined by the Secretary of State.

(5) For the purposes of this Act a school shall be regarded as “assisted” by a local education authority who do not maintain it if the authority make to its proprietor any grant in respect of the school or any payment in consideration of the provision of educational facilities there.

(6) Subject to subsection (7), an institution other than a school shall be regarded for the purposes of this Act as “assisted” by a local education authority if the authority make to the persons responsible for its maintenance any grant in respect of the institution or any payment in consideration of the provision of educational facilities there.

(7) Neither—

- (a) a university, nor
- (b) any institution within the further education sector or within the higher education sector other than a university,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

shall be regarded for the purposes of this Act as “assisted” by a local education authority by virtue of the making by the authority to the persons responsible for the maintenance of the university or institution of any grant or payment such as is mentioned in subsection (6).

#### Textual Amendments

- F931** S. 579(1): definitions of "the appropriate further education funding council", "exclude", "governing body" (and "governors"), "the local education authority", "reception class" and "relevant age group" repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 183(a)(ii), Sch. 31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F932** Definition in s. 579(1) inserted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), Sch. 30 para. 183(a)(i) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F933** Words in s. 579(1) inserted (27.10.2008) by Welfare Reform Act 2007 (c. 5), s. 70(2), Sch. 3 para. 16(4); S.I. 2008/787, art. 2(4)(f)
- F934** Words in s. 579(1) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 57(a) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.
- F935** S. 579(1): definition of "the National Curriculum" inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 19.12.2002 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(1), 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 57(b) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I
- F936** Words in s. 579(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), Sch. 30 para. 183(a)(iii) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F937** Words in s. 579(1) inserted (W.) (31.10.2005) by The Education Act 2002 (Transitional Provisions and Consequential Amendments) (Wales) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/2913), regs. 1(1), 4
- F938** Words in s. 579(1) inserted (E.) (1.9.2003) by The Education Act 2002 (Modification and Transitional Provisions) (England) Regulations 2003 (S.I. 2003/2045), regs. 1(1), 3 (with reg. 6)
- F939** S. 579(1): definition of "sex education" inserted (1.10.2002 for E., 19.12.2002 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 215(1), 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 57(c) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3; S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I
- F940** Words in s. 579 substituted (1.3.2007) by National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43), s. 8(2), Sch. 1 para. 185 (with Sch. 3 Pt. 1)
- F941** Definition in s. 579(1) inserted (14.6.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), Sch. 7 para. 43; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I
- F942** Definition in s. 579(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), Sch. 30 para. 183(a)(iv) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F943** S. 579(3) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 183(b), Sch. 31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

#### Marginal Citations

- M43** 1972 c. 70.

#### <sup>F944</sup>580 Index.

The expressions listed in the left-hand column below are defined by, or (as the case may be) are to be interpreted in accordance with, the provisions of this Act listed in the right-hand column in relation to those expressions.

#### *Expression*

[<sup>F945</sup>Academy]

#### *Relevant provision*

[<sup>F945</sup>section 482]

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

admission authority (in Chapter I of Part VI)	section 415
admitted to a school for nursery education	section 579(3)
aggregated budget (in Part II)	sections 101(3) and 105
agreed syllabus	section 375(2) and (4)
aided school	section 32(1) and (3)
allocation formula (in Part II)	section 106(2)
alteration (of school premises) and alterations (in relation to such premises)	section 573(2)
annual parents' meeting (in Chapter VI of Part II)	section 162(1)
appropriate diocesan authority (in Part III in relation to a Church of England, Church in Wales or Roman Catholic Church school)	section 311(1)
appropriate further education funding council	section 579(1)
area (of a local education authority)	section 12(6)
articles of government	
(in relation to a county, voluntary or maintained special school)	section 127(1)
(in relation to a grant-maintained school)	section 218(1)
(in relation to a grant-maintained special school)	paragraph 1 of Schedule 28
(in relation to a group of grant-maintained schools)	section 280(2)
assess (in Part V)	section 350(2)
assessment arrangements (in Part V)	section 353
assisted (in relation to a school or other institution)	section 579(5) to (7)
F946	...
...	
attainment targets (in Part V)	section 353
authority responsible for election arrangements (in Chapter V of Part III)	section 243(2)
belonging to the area of a local education authority (in relation to a person)	section 579(4)
boarder	section 579(1)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

budget share (in Part II)	section 101(3) and (6)
capital grant (in relation to grant-maintained schools)	section 246(1) (or section 252)
cease to maintain (in relation to a school)	section 574
the chairmen’s panel (in Part IV)	section 333(2)
change in character (in relation to a school)	section 573(4)
character (of a school) (in Part III)	section 311(4)
child	
(generally)	section 579(1)
(in Part IV)	section 312(5)
<sup>[F947]</sup> (in Chapter I of Part VI except sections 431 to 433)	section 411(8)]
child for whom a local education authority are responsible (in Part IV)	section 321(3)
Church in Wales school	section 311(1)
Church of England school	section 311(1)
<sup>[F948]</sup> city academy]	<sup>[F948]</sup> section 482]
<sup>[F948]</sup> city college for the technology of the arts]	<sup>[F948]</sup> section 482(3)]
<sup>[F948]</sup> city technology college]	<sup>[F948]</sup> section 482(3)]
clothing	section 579(1)
commencement of this Act	section 583(2)
compulsory school age	section 8 (or paragraph 1 of Schedule 40)
contract of employment (in relation to provisions specified in section 575(2))	section 575(1)
controlled school	section 32(1) and (2)
co-opted governor (in relation to a county, voluntary or maintained special school)	section 78(1)
core governor	section 285 and Schedule 25
county school	section 31(1)
date of implementation	
(in Part III in relation to proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status)	section 200(2)
(in Part III in relation to a new grant-maintained school)	section 217

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

**Changes to legislation:** Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

date of publication of proposals (in Part III in relation to proposals under that Part)	section 311(6)
delegation requirement (in Part II)	section 107(2)
discontinue (in relation to a school)	section 574
disposal of premises (in sections 297 to 300)	section 301(3)
dissolution date (in sections 274 to 279)	section 274(6)
the Education Acts	section 578
eligible for grant-maintained status (in Part III)	section 184
eligible governor (in Part III)	paragraph 4 of Schedule 24
eligible to vote in a ballot held in accordance with section 189 (in Chapter II of Part III)	section 190(1)
employed, employee, employer (in relation to provisions specified in section 575(2))	section 575(1)
employed to work, or to work solely, at a school (in relation to provisions specified in section 575(2))	section 575(3)
employee (in sections 469 to 473)	section 469(6)
enlargement (in relation to school premises)	section 573(3)
establish (in relation to a new school)	section 574
examination requirement (in Chapter III of Part VI)	section 462(1)
exclude, exclusion (except in section 524)	section 579(1)
financial year	section 579(1)
first governor (in relation to a grant-maintained school)	paragraphs 7 and 12 of Schedule 24
foundation governor	
(in relation to a voluntary school)	section 78(2)
(in relation to a grant-maintained school)	paragraphs 8 and 13 of Schedule 24
foundation subjects	section 354 F949
	...
functions	section 579(1)
funding authority	section 26

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

**Changes to legislation:** Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

further education	section 2(3) to (5)
general schools budget (in Part II)	section 101(3)
governing body, governor	
(in Chapters IV to VI of Part II)	section 182
(in relation to a school grouped for purposes of Chapter IV of Part II)	section 89(6)
(in relation to a voluntary school and functions of foundation governors)	section 579(1)
governing body in liquidation (in sections 274 to 279)	section 274(3)
governor of an elected category (in Part III)	paragraph 3 of Schedule 24
governors' report (in Chapter VI of Part II)	section 161(1)
grant-maintained school	
(generally)	section 183(1)
(in sections 500 to 504)	section 505(8)
grant-maintained school formerly conducted by a governing body in liquidation (in sections 274 to 279)	section 274(5)
grant-maintained special school	sections 337(4) and 346(3)
grant regulations (in Chapter VI of Part III)	section 244(2)
grants for education support and training group (of schools)	section 484(1)
(in Part II)	section 89(5)
(in Chapter IX of Part III)	section 280(7)
head teacher	
(generally)	section 579(1)
(in relation to a county, voluntary or maintained special school organised into separate departments)	section 132
higher education	section 579(1)
incorporation date	
(in Chapter II of Part III)	section 200(5)
(in Chapter IV of Part III)	section 217
(in Part IV)	section 345(3)
independent school	section 463

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

**Changes to legislation:** Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

initial governor (in Part III)	paragraph 2 of Schedule 24
institution outside (or within) the further education sector	section 4(3)
institution outside (or within) the higher education sector	section 4(4)
instrument of government	
(in relation to a county, voluntary or maintained special school)	section 76(1)
(in relation to a grant-maintained school)	section 218(1)
(in relation to a grant-maintained special school)	paragraph 1 of Schedule 28
(in relation to a group of grant-maintained schools)	section 280(2)
interest in land	section 579(2)
junior pupil	section 3(2)
key stage	section 355(1)
land	section 579(1)
the lay panel (in Part IV)	section 333(2)
learning difficulty	section 312(2) and (3)
liability	section 579(1)
local authority	section 579(1)
local education authority	section 12(1) to (5)
the local education authority	
(generally)	section 579(1)
(in relation to a scheme under Part II)	section 101(2)
local government elector	
(generally)	section 579(1)
(in Part III in relation to an area)	section 311(7)
maintain (in relation to a school maintained by a local education authority)	section 34
maintained school	
(in Part IV)	section 312(5)
(in Part V)	section 350(1)
(in Chapter II of Part VI)	section 437(8)
(in Chapter III of Part VI)	section 449
(in sections 500 to 504)	section 505(8)



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

**Changes to legislation:** Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

maintained nursery school	sections 6(1) and 33(1)
maintained special school	sections 6(2), 33(1) and 337(3)
maintenance grant (in relation to grant-maintained schools)	section 244(1) (or section 250(1))
medical officer (in relation to a local education authority)	section 579(1)
minor authority	section 577
middle school	section 5(3)
modifications, modify	section 579(1)
the National Curriculum	sections 352(1) and 353
new governing body (in Part III)	section 195(2)
new school (in Part II)	section 181(1)
nursery school	section 6(1)
optional extra (in Chapter III of Part VI)	section 455(3)
parent	section 576
parent governor	
(in relation to a county, voluntary or maintained special school)	section 78(3)
(in relation to a grant-maintained school)	paragraphs 5 and 10 of Schedule 24
F946	...
...	
F946	...
...	
pending	
(in Part III in relation to proposals published under section 193)	section 193(4)
(in Chapter III of Part III in relation to the procedure for acquisition of grant-maintained status)	section 203(1)
powers to make proposals for the alteration of their school (in sections 500 to 504 in relation to the governing body of a voluntary school)	section 505(7)
powers to make proposals for the establishment, alteration or discontinuance of schools (in sections 500 to 504)	section 505(8)
premises	
(in relation to a school)	section 579(1)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

**Changes to legislation:** Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(in Part III)	section 311(1)
prescribed	section 579(1)
the President (in Part IV)	section 333(2)
primary education	section 2(1)
primary school	section 5(1)
programmes of study (in Part V)	section 353
proceeds of disposal (in sections 297 to 300)	section 301(3)
procedure applicable under Chapter IV of Part II (in Chapter V of Part III)	section 243(3)
promoters (in Part III)	section 212(1)
proposals (in Chapter VII of Part III)	section 266(2)
proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status (in Part III)	section 183(2)
proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school (in Part III)	section 183(2)
proprietor (in relation to a school)	section 579(1)
prospectively disqualified (in Chapter V of Part III)	section 243(4)
provisionally registered school (in Part VII)	section 465(4)
pupil	sections 3(1) and 19(5)
reception class	section 579(1)
register, registration (in Part VII in relation to independent schools)	section 464(4)
registered (in relation to parents or pupils)	section 434(5)
registered school (in Part VII)	section 465(4)
Registrar of Independent Schools (or the Registrar in Part VII)	section 464(4)
regulations	section 579(1)
relevant age group	section 579(1)
relevant education (in relation to an order under section 27(1))	section 27(7)
relevant particulars (in relation to a proposed initial governor of a grant-maintained school)	section 200(4)
relevant proposals (in Part II)	section 181(2)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

**Changes to legislation:** Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

relevant standard number (in Chapter I of Part VI)	section 411(7)
[ <sup>F950</sup> relevant upper age (in relation to a middle school)	section 5(3)(b)]
required to be covered by a scheme (in Part II in relation to a school)	section 102
reserved teacher (in Chapter VI of Part II in relation to a controlled school)	section 143(2)
reserved teacher (in Chapter VI of Part II in relation to a special agreement school)	section 144(1)
residential trip (in Chapter III of Part VI)	section 462(2)
responsible for a child (in Part IV in relation to a local education authority)	section 321(3)
right to a delegated budget (in Part II)	section 115(a)
Roman Catholic Church school	section 311(1)
scheme (in Part II)	section 101(1)
school	section 4(1) and (2)
school in respect of which financial delegation is required (in Part II)	section 115
school which has a delegated budget (in Part II)	section 115
school attendance order	section 437(3)
school buildings	section 579(1)
school day	section 579(1)
school property (in sections 274 to 279)	section 274(4)
[ <sup>F951</sup> school year	section 579(1)]
secondary education	section 2(2) and (5)
secondary school	section 5(2)
section 67 loan liabilities (in sections 274 to 279)	section 274(7)
senior pupil	section 3(2)
sex education	section 352(3)
significant (in relation to a change in character or enlargement of premises of a school)	section 573(5)
special agreement	section 32(5)
special agreement school	section 32(1) and (4)
special educational needs	section 312(1)
special educational provision	section 312(4)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

special purpose grant (in relation to grant-maintained schools)	section 245(1) (or section 251)
special school	sections 6(2) and 337
sponsor governor (in Part III)	paragraphs 9 and 14 of Schedule 24
suitable education (in Chapter II of Part VI)	[ <sup>F952</sup> section 436A(3)]
teacher governor	
(in relation to a county, voluntary or maintained special school)	section 78(4)
(in relation to a grant-maintained school)	paragraphs 6 and 11 of Schedule 24
temporary governing body, temporary governor (in Part II)	section 181(3)
time of publication of proposals (in Part III in relation to proposals under that Part)	section 311(6)
the Tribunal (in Part IV)	section 313(5)
trust deed (in relation to a voluntary school)	section 579(1)
trustees of the school (in sections 296 to 300)	section 301(2)
voluntary school	sections 31(2) and 32
[ <sup>F947</sup> wholly based on selection by reference to ability or aptitude (in Chapter I of Part VI)	section 411(9)]
young person	section 579(1)

---

### Textual Amendments

- F944** Words in s. 580 repealed (26.7.2002 for E. for specified purposes, 1.8.2003 for W. for specified purposes, 1.1.2004 for W. In so far as not already in force) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III
- F945** S. 580 table: entry inserted (26.7.2002) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), ss. 215(1), 216(4), [Sch. 7 para. 6\(8\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, [art. 2](#)
- F946** S. 580 table: entry repealed (1.9.1997) by 1997 c. 59, ss. 6(3), 7(3)(a), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- F947** S. 580 table: entry inserted (1.9.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), [Sch. 7 para. 44](#); S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(2), [Sch. 1 Pt. II](#)
- F948** Words in s. 580 repealed (26.7.2002 for E. for specified purposes, 1.8.2003 for W. for specified purposes) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), [Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3; S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I
- F949** S. 580 table: words in the entry relating to "foundation subjects" omitted (2.5.2000 for E. and 20.7.2000 for W.) by virtue of S.I. 2000/1146, [art. 3](#) and S.I. 2000/1882, [art. 2](#)
- F950** Words in s. 580 inserted (1.9.2006) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 12 para. 4](#); S.I. 2006/2129, art. 4

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F951** S. 580 table: entry inserted (14.6.1997) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 44**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I**
- F952** Words in s. 580 substituted (27.2.2007 for E., 1.9.2009 for W.) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), **ss. 4(3)**, 188(3); S.I. 2006/3400, art. 6(a); S.I. 2009/1027, art. 3(a)

### *Final provisions*

#### **581 Application to Isles of Scilly.**

This Act shall apply to the Isles of Scilly—

- (a) as if the Isles were a separate non-metropolitan county (and the Council of the Isles of Scilly were accordingly a county council), and
- (b) subject to such other modifications as are specified in an order made by the Secretary of State.

#### **582 Consequential amendments, repeals, transitional provisions etc.**

- (1) The enactments specified in Schedule 37 are amended in accordance with that Schedule, the amendments being consequential on the provisions of this Act.
- (2) The enactments and instruments specified in Schedule 38 are repealed or revoked to the extent specified.
- (3) The transitional and saving provisions contained in Schedule 39 shall have effect.
- (4) The transitory provisions contained in Schedule 40 shall have effect.

#### **Commencement Information**

- I2** S. 582 wholly in force at 1.9.1997; s. 582(1) in force at 1.11.1996 so far as relating to Sch. 37 Pt. I; s. 582(2) in force at 1.11.1996 so far as relating to Sch. 38 Pts. I, III; s. 582(3)(4) in force at 1.11.1996 see s. 583(2); S. 582(1) in force at 1.9.1997 so far as relating to Sch. 37 Pt. II and s. 583(2) in force at 1.9.1997 so far as relating to Sch. 38 Pt. II by S.I. 1997/1623, **art. 2(2)**

#### **583 Short title, commencement and extent.**

- (1) This Act may be cited as the Education Act 1996.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3), this Act shall come into force on 1st November 1996 (and references to the commencement of this Act are to its coming into force on that date).
- (3) The following provisions—  
section 8,  
section 317(6),  
section 348,  
section 528,  
Part II of Schedule 37 and section 582(1) so far as relating thereto, and  
Part II of Schedule 38 and section 582(2) so far as relating thereto,  
shall come into force on such day as the Secretary of State may by order appoint; and different days may be appointed for different provisions and for different purposes.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The Secretary of State may by order make such incidental, supplemental, saving or transitional provision as he thinks fit in connection with the coming into force in accordance with subsection (2) of any provision of this Act reproducing the effect of a provision of the <sup>M44</sup>Education Act 1993 which has not previously been brought into force by an order under section 308(3) of that Act (commencement).
- (5) Where an order under subsection (3) brings into force any provision of section 317(6) or 528, then in relation to the coming into force of that provision—
- (a) section 568(5) and (6) shall not apply to the order, but
  - (b) the order may make such provision as is authorised to be made, by virtue of section 67(2) and (3) of the <sup>M45</sup>Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (regulations and orders), by an order under section 70(3) of that Act (commencement).
- (6) Subject to subsections (7) and (8), this Act extends to England and Wales only.
- (7) This section, section 493 and section 569 so far as relating to regulations under section 493 extend also to Scotland; and this section extends also to Northern Ireland.
- (8) Section 582 and Schedules 37 to 40 have the same extent as the enactments to which they relate.

#### Subordinate Legislation Made

- P2** S. 583(3) power partly exercised (19.11.1996); 1.1.1997 appointed for specified provisions by [S.I. 1996/2904, art. 2](#)
- S. 583(3) power partly exercised (30.6.1997); 1.9.1997 appointed for specified provisions by [S.I. 1997/1623, arts. 2, 3](#)
- S. 583(3) power partly exercised (20.10.1997); 30.9.1997 appointed for specified provisions by [S.I. 1997/2352, art. 2](#)

#### Marginal Citations

- M44** 1993 c. 35.
- M45** 1995 c. 50.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULES

### SCHEDULE 1

Section 19.

#### PUPIL REFERRAL UNITS

##### *General adaptations of enactments*

- 1 References in any enactment to the proprietor or governing body of a school shall be read, in relation to a pupil referral unit, as references to the local education authority.
- 2 References in any enactment to the head teacher of a school shall be read, in relation to a pupil referral unit, as references to the teacher in charge of the unit (whether known as the head teacher or not).

##### *Modifications of enactments by regulations*

- 3 Regulations may provide for any enactments relating to schools maintained by local education authorities (or schools including such schools)—
  - (a) to apply in relation to pupil referral units,
  - (b) to apply in relation to such units with such modifications as may be prescribed, or
  - (c) not to apply in relation to such units.

##### *Registration*

- 4 (1) A person who is registered as a pupil at a school other than a pupil referral unit shall not, by reason only of being registered also as a pupil at such a unit, cease for the purposes of the Education Acts to be treated as a registered pupil at that school.  
(2) In this Schedule “registered” means shown in the register kept under section 434.

##### *Application of Local Government Act 1986*

<sup>F953</sup>5 .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F953** Sch. 1 para. 5 repealed (18.11.2003) by [Local Government Act 2003 \(c. 26\)](#), s. 128(2)(f)(vi), [Sch. 8 Pt. 1](#)

##### *Curriculum*

- 6 <sup>F954</sup>(1) In relation to every pupil referral unit, the local education authority, the management committee (where applicable) and the teacher in charge shall exercise their functions with a view to securing that the curriculum for the unit satisfies the requirements of <sup>F955</sup>[section 78(1) or 99(1) of the Education Act 2002](1) (balanced and broadly based curriculum).

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Regulations may make provision for the determination and organisation of the curriculum in relation to every pupil referral unit, including provision as to making, and keeping up to date, a written statement of the policy in relation to that curriculum for the unit; and such regulations may require—
- (a) the local education authority, the management committee (where applicable), or the teacher in charge to exercise, or
  - (b) such of them as may be prescribed to collaborate with each other in exercising,
- such functions in relation to the curriculum as may be prescribed.]
- (3) Each local education authority shall, with the approval of the Secretary of State, make arrangements for the consideration and disposal of any complaint to the effect that the authority, or the teacher in charge of any pupil referral unit—
- (a) have acted or are proposing to act unreasonably with respect to the exercise of any power conferred, or the performance of any duty imposed, on them by [<sup>F956</sup>sub-paragraph (1) or (2)] above, or
  - (b) have failed to discharge any such duty.
- (4) The Secretary of State shall not entertain under section 496 or 497 (power to prevent unreasonable exercise of functions; general default powers) any complaint in respect of any local education authority if it is a complaint—
- (a) for which arrangements are required to be made under sub-paragraph (3) above, or
  - (b) that a local education authority have failed to exercise their powers to secure compliance by the teacher in charge of a pupil referral unit with any such duty as is referred to in that sub-paragraph,
- unless a complaint in respect of the local education authority or, as the case may be, the teacher in charge of the unit has been made in respect of the same matter and disposed of in accordance with arrangements under that sub-paragraph.

#### Textual Amendments

**F954** Sch. 1 para. 6(1)(2) substituted (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 184(a)(i)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt.I**

**F955** Words in Sch. 1 para. 6(1) substituted (20.1.2003) by The Education Act 2002 (Modification of Provisions) (No. 2) (England) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2953), **reg. 2(1)**

**F956** Words in Sch. 1 para. 6(3) substituted (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 184(a)(ii)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt.I**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C133** Sch. 1 para. 6(1) amended (19.12.2002) by The Education Act 2002 (Transitional Provisions) (Wales) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/3184), **reg. 5(6)**

### Discipline



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

- F957** Sch. 1 para. 7 repealed (9.1.2004 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/2961, art. 7, Sch. Pt. IV
- F958** Sch. 1 para. 7 repealed (20.1.2003 for E.) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Modification of Provisions\) \(No. 2\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2953\)](#), **reg. 2(2)**

*Sex education, political indoctrination and political issues*

- 8 Sections 403, 406 and 407 (sex education, political indoctrination, and treatment of political issues) apply in relation to pupil referral units as they apply in relation to [<sup>F959</sup>community schools].

**Textual Amendments**

- F959** Words in Sch. 1 para. 8 substituted (1.10.2000 for E. and 1.1.2001 for W.) by [2000 c. 21](#), s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 64** (with s. 150); S.I. 2000/2559, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. I**; S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, **Sch.**

*Charges*

- 9 (1) Chapter III of Part VI applies in relation to pupil referral units as if the references to governing bodies were omitted.
- (2) Section 458(2)(b) (charges for board and lodging) shall have effect in relation to a pupil provided with board and lodging at a unit as if after “that” there were inserted “for the time being”.

*Application of Environmental Protection Act 1990*

- 10 A pupil referral unit is an educational institution for the purposes of Part IV of the <sup>M46</sup>Environmental Protection Act 1990 (litter).

**Marginal Citations**

- M46** [1990 c. 43](#).

*Information*

- 11 Each local education authority shall—
- (a) on such occasions, and
  - (b) in such form and manner,
- as may be prescribed, make available to registered parents of registered pupils at any pupil referral unit such information about the unit as may be prescribed.

*Disapplication of Schedule 4*

- <sup>F960</sup>12 .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F960** Sch. 1 para. 12 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30, para. 184(b), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### *Children with special educational needs*

**F961** 13 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F961** Sch. 1 para. 13 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 184(b), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### *School attendance orders*

- 14 (1) Where a pupil referral unit is named in a school attendance order—
- (a) the local education authority shall inform the teacher in charge of the unit, and
  - (b) if another local education authority are responsible for determining the arrangements for the admission of pupils to the unit, that authority shall admit the child to the unit;
- but paragraph (b) above does not affect any power to exclude from a unit a pupil who is already a registered pupil there.
- (2) Section 438(4) does not apply in relation to a pupil referral unit.
- (3) A local education authority—
- (a) shall, before deciding to specify a particular pupil referral unit in a notice under section 438(2) where another local education authority are responsible for determining the arrangements for the admission of pupils to the unit, consult that authority; and
  - (b) if they decide to specify the unit in the notice, shall serve notice in writing of their decision on that authority.
- (4) Section 439(7) and (8) apply where a notice is served on a local education authority under sub-paragraph (3) above as they apply where notice is served under section 439(6).
- (5) The parent of a child in respect of whom a school attendance order is in force may not under section 440 request the local education authority to amend the order by substituting a pupil referral unit for the school named in the order.
- (6) Where a child is a registered pupil at both a pupil referral unit and at a school other than a unit, the references in section 444 to the school at which he is a registered pupil shall be read as references to the unit.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## <sup>F962</sup> Management committees

### Textual Amendments

**F962** Sch. 1 para. 15 and cross heading added (1.12.1997) by virtue of 1997 c. 44, s.48; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(5), Sch. 1 Pt.V

- <sup>F963</sup>15 (1) Regulations may make provision—
- (a) for requiring any local education authority who maintain a pupil referral unit to establish a committee to act as the management committee for the unit; and
  - (b) for that committee to discharge on behalf of the authority such of their functions in connection with the unit as are delegated by them to the committee in accordance with the regulations.
- (2) Regulations under this paragraph may in particular make provision—
- (a) for enabling a local education authority to establish a joint committee to act as the management committee for two or more pupil referral units maintained by the authority;
  - (b) for requiring the approval of the Secretary of State to be obtained before any such joint committee is established;
  - (c) as to the composition of a management committee established under the regulations and—
    - (i) the appointment and removal of its members, and
    - (ii) their terms of office,and in particular for requiring such a committee to include persons representing schools <sup>F964</sup> . . . situated in the area from which the unit or units in question may be expected to draw pupils;
- [ for requiring or (as the case may be) prohibiting the delegation by—
- <sup>F965</sup>(d) (i) a local education authority; or
  - (ii) in the case of a local education authority which are operating executive arrangements, the executive of that authority or any person on behalf of that executive,
- to a management committee of such functions in connection with pupil referral units as are specified in the regulations.]]
- (e) for authorising a management committee to establish sub-committees;
  - (f) for enabling (subject to any provisions of the regulations) a local education authority [<sup>F966</sup>, and in the case of a local education authority which are operating executive arrangements the executive of that authority or any person acting on behalf of that executive,] or a management committee to determine to any extent the committee's procedure and that of any sub-committee;
  - (g) for limiting the personal liability of members of any such committee or sub-committee in respect of their acts or omissions as such members;
  - (h) for applying to any such committee or sub-committee, with or without modification—
    - (i) any provision of the Education Acts, or
    - (ii) any provision made by or under any other enactment and relating to committees or (as the case may be) sub-committees of a local authority.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F967</sup>(3) In sub-paragraph (2), “executive” and “executive arrangements” have the same meaning as in the Local Government Act 2000.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F963** Sch. 1 para. 15 and cross heading added (1.12.1997) by virtue of 1997 c. 44, s. 48; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(5), **Sch. 1 Pt. V**
- F964** Words in Sch. 1 para. 15 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 184(c), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F965** Sch. 1 para. 15(2)(d) substituted (E.) (11.7.2001) and (W.) (1.4.2002) by S.I. 2001/2237, art. 32(a)(i) and S.I. 2002/808, **art. 31(a)(i)**
- F966** Words in Sch. 1 para. 15(2)(f) inserted (E.) (11.7.2001) and (W.) (1.4.2002) by S.I. 2001/2237, art. 32(a)(ii) and S.I. 2002/808, **art. 31(a)(ii)**
- F967** Sch. 1 para. 15(3) inserted (E.) (11.7.2001) and (W.) (1.4.2002) by S.I. 2001/2237, art. 32(b) and S.I. 2002/808, **art. 31(b)**

#### <sup>F968</sup>SCHEDULE 2

#### Textual Amendments

- F968** Sch. 2 repealed (1.11.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2**

#### <sup>F971</sup>SCHEDULE 3

#### Textual Amendments

- F971** Sch. 3 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### <sup>F973</sup>SCHEDULE 4

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F973** Sch. 4 repealed (1.10.1998 so far as relating to the repeal of paras. 7 and 8 and otherwise 1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I** and S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F977**SCHEDULE 5

**Textual Amendments**

**F977** Sch. 5 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F978**SCHEDULE 6

**Textual Amendments**

**F978** Sch. 6 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F979**SCHEDULE 7

**Textual Amendments**

**F979** Sch. 7 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F980**SCHEDULE 8

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F980** Sch. 8 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

### <sup>F981</sup>SCHEDULE 9

#### Textual Amendments

**F981** Sch. 9 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

### <sup>F982</sup>SCHEDULE 10

#### Textual Amendments

**F982** Sch. 10 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

## SCHEDULE 11

Sections 122 and 124.

### CONTENTS OF STATEMENTS UNDER SECTION 122(2) AND SECTION 124(1)

#### PART I

##### STATEMENTS UNDER SECTION 122(2)

- 1 (1) This Part of this Schedule applies to any statement prepared by a local education authority under section 122(2).
- (2) In this Part of this Schedule “the scheme” means the scheme referred to in section 122(1).
- 2 The statement shall contain the following particulars in respect of the financial year to which it relates—
  - (a) the amount of the authority’s general schools budget for the year (as initially determined for the purposes of the scheme),
  - (b) the amount of the authority’s aggregated budget for the year under the scheme (as so determined),

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) such particulars as may be prescribed of amounts deducted in respect of excepted heads or items of expenditure (as defined in section 105(3)) in arriving at the amount specified in the statement by virtue of sub-paragraph (b),
  - (d) such particulars as may be prescribed of amounts deducted by virtue of section 105(1)(b) in arriving at the amount so specified, and
  - (e) such particulars of the allocation formula under the scheme as may be prescribed.
- 3 (1) The statement shall also contain, with respect to each school required to be covered by the scheme in the year in question, particulars in relation to that year of the planned expenditure per pupil arising from the division of the school's budget share (as initially determined for the purposes of the scheme) by the initial pupil number.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) "the initial pupil number" means the number of registered pupils at the school in question which is required under the scheme to be used in applying the allocation formula under the scheme for initial determination of the school's budget share for the year.
- 4 The statement shall contain such further information in respect of the financial provision the authority plan to make in the year in question for county and voluntary schools maintained by them as may be prescribed.

## PART II

### STATEMENTS UNDER SECTION 124(1)

- 5 (1) A statement prepared by a local education authority under section 124(1) shall give the following particulars in respect of the financial year to which it relates—
  - (a) the initial amount appropriated for meeting expenditure in the year in respect of all the schools required to be covered by the statement,
  - (b) the amount remaining after deducting from that initial amount the aggregate of the amounts referred to in sub-paragraph (2), and
  - (c) such particulars as may be prescribed of the amounts referred to in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) Those amounts are the initial amounts appropriated for meeting the following descriptions of expenditure in the year in respect of all the schools required to be covered by the statement—
  - (a) expenditure treated by the authority as expenditure of a capital nature,
  - (b) expenditure in respect of the repayment of the principal of, the payment of interest on and the discharge of any other financial obligation in connection with any loan used to meet expenditure falling within paragraph (a), and
  - (c) expenditure of such other descriptions as may be prescribed.
- 6 (1) The statement shall also give, in relation to each school required to be covered by it, the following particulars in respect of the year—
  - (a) the share of the general expenditure amount which is appropriated by the authority for meeting expenditure for the purposes of the school,
  - (b) the share which is so appropriated of such of the amounts referred to in paragraph 5(2)(c) as may be prescribed,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) the amount of any expenditure initially planned for the purposes of the school and treated by the authority as expenditure of a capital nature, and
  - (d) such particulars as may be prescribed of the basis on which the authority determine the shares specified in the statement by virtue of paragraphs (a) and (b).
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) “the general expenditure amount” means the amount of which particulars are required to be given by paragraph 5(1)(b).
- 7 The statement shall contain such further information in respect of the financial provision initially planned by the authority for the schools required to be covered by the statement as may be prescribed.
- 8 Where only one school is required to be covered by the statement, the references in paragraph 5 to all the schools are references to that school and paragraph 6 does not apply.

## SCHEDULE 12

Section 126.

### FINANCIAL DELEGATION AND NEW SCHOOLS

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C135** Sch. 12 excluded (*temp.* until 1.9.1999) by [S.I. 1998/3097](#), [art.5](#)

#### *Preliminary*

- 1 In this Schedule “temporary governing body” does not include a temporary governing body who by virtue of paragraph 2 of Schedule 10 fall to be treated as a governing body.

#### *New county and voluntary schools*

- 2 (1) For the purposes of applying (in accordance with this Schedule) sections 101 to 122 and Part I of Schedule 11 in relation to new schools which will be county or voluntary schools—
- (a) references to a school conducted by a governing body shall be read as including a new school which has a temporary governing body, and
  - (b) other references to the governing body of a school shall be read as including the temporary governing body of a new school.
- (2) For those purposes—
- (b) references to a county or voluntary school maintained by a local education authority, and
  - (b) references, in a context referring to a local education authority, to county and voluntary schools,
- shall be read as including a new school which on implementation of the relevant proposals will be a county or voluntary school maintained by the authority.



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 3 (1) A new school which will be a county or voluntary school is required to be covered by a scheme in any financial year if it has a temporary governing body during the whole or any part of that year.
- (2) In the case of such a school, sections 101 to 122 and Part I of Schedule 11 apply subject to the modifications set out in paragraphs 4 to 7.
- 4 (1) Where a school required to be covered by a scheme in a financial year is a new school during the whole or any part of that year, the provision required by section 106(4)(a) shall not apply in relation to the determination of the school's budget share for the year, so far as that share falls in accordance with the scheme to be treated as referable to planned expenditure by the local education authority for the purposes of the school in respect of any period before the implementation of the relevant proposals.
- (2) Accordingly—
- (a) paragraph 3(1) of Schedule 11 shall apply in relation to the school as if it referred to such part (if any) of the school's budget share for the year as falls to be determined in accordance with the provision required by section 106(4)(a); and
- (b) the statement under section 122(2) shall include in relation to the school the additional particulars mentioned in sub-paragraph (3).
- (3) Those particulars are the amount of such part (if any) of the school's budget share for the year (as initially determined for the purposes of the scheme) as falls in accordance with the scheme to be treated as referable to planned expenditure such as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1).
- (4) Sub-paragraph (1) shall not be taken as prejudicing the inclusion in the allocation formula under a scheme, by virtue of section 106(4)(b), of provision taking into account in relation to a new school any forecast made in accordance with the scheme of the number of pupils it will have on implementation of the relevant proposals.
- 5 The delegation requirement under a scheme shall not apply in relation to a new school (where it is not a school to which section 110 applies) until such date as may be determined by or under the scheme.
- 6 Section 110 shall have effect, in relation to a new school to which it applies, with the omission of subsection (3)(a).
- 7 Section 122(7) shall not apply in relation to the temporary governing body of a new school.

#### *New special schools*

- 8 (1) Any reference—
- (a) in section 120, to maintained special schools or to a maintained special school, or
- (b) in section 124, to special schools or to a special school,
- shall be read as including a new school proposed to be established by a local education authority which will be a maintained special school and which has a temporary governing body.
- (2) Any reference in section 120 or 124 to a school's governing body shall be read, in relation to such a new school, as a reference to its temporary governing body.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The reference in section 124(1) to a local education authority maintaining a special school or special schools shall be read, in relation to such a new school, as a reference to the authority being under a duty by virtue of paragraph 20 of Schedule 9 to defray expenses in relation to its temporary governing body.
- 9       Section 124(8) shall not apply in relation to the temporary governing body of a new school.

*Financial delegation apart from schemes*

- 10       Section 125 shall not apply in relation to a new school.

SCHEDULE 13

Section 133.

STAFFING OF COUNTY, CONTROLLED, SPECIAL  
 AGREEMENT AND MAINTAINED SPECIAL SCHOOLS

*The selection panel*

- 1       (1) The articles of government for a county, controlled, special agreement or maintained special school shall provide—
- (a) for the constitution of a selection panel whenever such a panel is required by virtue of this Schedule in relation to the appointment of a head teacher or deputy head teacher, and
- (b) for a selection panel to consist of a specified number of persons appointed to it by the local education authority and a specified number of governors appointed to it by the governing body.
- (2) Neither of the numbers specified by virtue of sub-paragraph (1)(b) shall be less than three; and the number specified in relation to appointments made by the governing body shall not be less than the number specified in relation to appointments made by the authority.
- (3) The articles shall provide for the governing body and the authority to have power to replace, at any time, any member of a selection panel whom they have appointed.
- 2       Regulations may make provision as to the meetings and proceedings of selection panels.

*Appointment of head teacher*

- 3       (1) The articles of government for a county, controlled, special agreement or maintained special school shall, in relation to the appointment of a head teacher for the school, make provision for the matters set out in sub-paragraphs (2) to (11).
- (2) If the post of head teacher is vacant, the local education authority shall appoint an acting head teacher after consulting the governing body.
- (3) Before appointing a head teacher, the local education authority shall advertise the vacancy in such publications circulating throughout England and Wales as they consider appropriate.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) The local education authority shall not appoint a person to be head teacher unless his appointment has been recommended by a selection panel constituted in accordance with the articles.
- (5) The selection panel shall interview such applicants for the post as they think fit.
- (6) If the panel fail to agree on the applicants whom they wish to interview—
  - (a) the members of the panel appointed by the governing body are to have the right to nominate not more than two applicants to be interviewed by the panel, and
  - (b) the other members of the panel are to have the right to nominate not more than two other applicants to be interviewed.
- (7) Where the panel consider it appropriate to do so, they shall recommend to the authority for appointment as head teacher one of the applicants interviewed by them.
- (8) If the panel are unable to agree on a person to recommend to the authority, they shall—
  - (a) repeat (with a view to reaching agreement) such of the steps mentioned in sub-paragraphs (5) to (7) as they think fit,
  - (b) where—
    - (i) they have repeated any of those steps in pursuance of paragraph (a) and remain unable to agree, or
    - (ii) they have decided that it is not appropriate to repeat any of those steps,require the authority to re-advertise the vacancy, and
  - (c) where the vacancy is re-advertised, repeat all of the steps mentioned in sub-paragraphs (5) to (7).
- (9) If the authority decline to appoint a person recommended by the panel, the panel shall—
  - (a) where there are applicants for the post whom they have not interviewed, interview such of those applicants (if any) as they think fit,
  - (b) recommend another of the applicants interviewed by them, if they think fit,
  - (c) ask the authority to re-advertise the vacancy, if they consider that it should be re-advertised, and
  - (d) where the vacancy is re-advertised, repeat the steps mentioned in sub-paragraphs (5) to (7).
- (10) The authority shall re-advertise the vacancy where they are required to do so by the panel, and may do so where—
  - (a) it has been duly advertised,
  - (b) the panel have failed either to make a recommendation which is acceptable to the authority or to request that the vacancy be re-advertised, and
  - (c) the authority are of the opinion that the panel have had sufficient time in which to carry out their functions.
- (11) The chief education officer of the authority, or a member of his department nominated by him, shall have the right to attend all proceedings of the panel (including interviews) for the purpose of giving advice to members of the panel.
- (12) In this paragraph “head teacher” does not include an acting head teacher.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Appointment of deputy head teacher*

- 4 (1) The articles of government for a county, controlled, special agreement or maintained special school shall, in relation to the appointment of a deputy head teacher for the school, make either—
- (a) the same provision, modified as mentioned in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3), as that made (in accordance with paragraph 3) in relation to the appointment of a head teacher for the school, or
  - (b) the same provision as that made (in accordance with paragraph 5) in relation to the appointment of other teachers at the school.
- (2) If the articles (in accordance with sub-paragraph (1)(a)) provide for the appointment of a deputy head teacher to be on the recommendation of a selection panel, they shall provide that where the head teacher is not a member of the panel—
- (a) he may be present, for the purpose of giving advice, at any proceedings of the panel (including interviews), and
  - (b) whether or not he attends any such proceedings, he shall be consulted by the panel before they make any recommendation to the local education authority.
- (3) No provision similar to that set out in paragraph 3(2) is required in the articles in relation to the appointment of a deputy head teacher.

*Appointment of other staff: general*

- 5 (1) The articles of government for a county, controlled, special agreement or maintained special school shall make provision for the matters set out in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3).
- (2) Where there is a vacancy in a post (other than that of head teacher or deputy head teacher) which is part of the complement of the school, the local education authority shall decide whether, if the post is not a new one, it should be retained.
- (3) If the authority decide that the post should be retained or it is a new post, they shall—
- (a) advertise the vacancy and fill it in accordance with the procedure laid down by virtue of paragraph 6, unless they have the intention mentioned in paragraph (b) below;
  - (b) fill the vacancy in accordance with the procedure laid down by virtue of paragraph 7, if they intend to appoint a person who, at the time when they form that intention, is an employee of theirs or has been appointed to take up employment with them at a future date.
- (4) Nothing in this paragraph (or in any of paragraphs 6 to 9) applies in relation to any temporary appointment pending—
- (a) the return to work of the holder of the post in question, or
  - (b) the taking of any steps required by the articles in relation to the vacancy in question.

*Appointment of other staff: vacancy advertised*

- 6 (1) The articles of government for any school to which paragraph 5(1) applies shall make provision for the matters set out in sub-paragraphs (2) to (7).

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Where the local education authority decide to advertise the vacancy, they shall do so in a manner likely in their opinion to bring it to the notice of persons (including employees of theirs) who are qualified to fill the post.
- (3) Where the vacancy is advertised, the governing body shall—
  - (a) interview such applicants for the post as they think fit, and
  - (b) where they consider it appropriate to do so, recommend to the authority for appointment to the post one of the applicants interviewed by them.
- (4) If the governing body are unable to agree on a person to recommend to the authority, they shall—
  - (a) repeat the steps mentioned in sub-paragraph (3), if they consider that to do so might lead to their reaching agreement,
  - (b) where they have repeated those steps and remain unable to agree, or decide that it is not appropriate to repeat them, ask the authority to re-advertise the vacancy, and
  - (c) where the vacancy is re-advertised, repeat those steps.
- (5) If the authority decline to appoint a person recommended by the governing body, the governing body shall—
  - (a) where there are applicants for the post whom they have not interviewed, interview such of those applicants (if any) as they think fit,
  - (b) recommend another of the applicants interviewed by them, if they think fit,
  - (c) ask the authority to re-advertise the vacancy, if they consider that it should be re-advertised, and
  - (d) where the vacancy is re-advertised, repeat the steps mentioned in sub-paragraph (3).
- (6) Where the authority are asked to re-advertise the vacancy by the governing body, they shall do so unless—
  - (a) they decide that the post is to be removed from the complement of the school, or
  - (b) they decide to appoint a person who, at the time when that decision is made, is an employee of theirs or has been appointed to take up employment with them at a future date.
- (7) Whenever governors meet to discuss the appointment or an applicant is interviewed—
  - (a) the head teacher (if he would not otherwise be entitled to be present), and
  - (b) such person (if any) as the authority appoint to represent them,shall be entitled to be present for the purpose of giving advice.

*Appointment of other staff: vacancy not advertised*

- 7 (1) The articles of government for any school to which paragraph 5(1) applies shall make provision for the matters set out in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3).
- (2) Where the vacancy is not advertised, the governing body—
  - (a) shall be entitled to determine a specification for the post in consultation with the head teacher, and
  - (b) if they do so, shall send a copy of it to the local education authority.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) When considering whom to appoint to the post, the authority shall—
- (a) have regard to any such specification, and
  - (b) consult the governing body and the head teacher.

*Delegation of functions under paragraph 6 or 7*

- 8 (1) The articles of government for any school to which paragraph 5(1) applies shall make provision for the matters set out in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3).
- (2) The governing body shall have power, in relation to the filling of a particular vacancy or a vacancy of a kind specified by them, to delegate any of the functions which are theirs by virtue of paragraph 6 or 7—
- (a) to one or more governors,
  - (b) to the head teacher, or
  - (c) to one or more governors and the head teacher acting together.
- (3) In such a case, the provision made by virtue of paragraph 6(6) shall apply with the substitution of references to the person or persons to whom the functions are delegated for references to the governing body.

*Restriction on making appointment where vacancy advertised*

- 9 Where a local education authority have advertised a vacancy in accordance with the provision made by the articles of government for a school by virtue of paragraph 6(2), they shall not appoint a person to the post unless—
- (a) his appointment has been recommended in accordance with the provision made by the articles by virtue of paragraph 6(3) to (5), or
  - (b) they decide to appoint a person who, at the time when that decision is made, is an employee of theirs or has been appointed to take up employment with them at a future date.

*Consultation by LEA before appointing certain non-teaching staff*

- 10 The articles of government for a county, controlled, special agreement or maintained special school shall require the local education authority to consult the governing body and the head teacher before appointing any person to work solely at the school otherwise than—
- (a) in a teaching post,
  - (b) in a non-teaching post which is part of the complement of the school, or
  - (c) solely in connection with either or both of the following—
    - (i) the provision of meals;
    - (ii) the supervision of pupils at midday.

*Dismissal etc. of staff*

- 11 (1) The articles of government for a county, controlled, special agreement or maintained special school shall make provision for the matters set out in sub-paragraphs (2) to (7).
- (2) The local education authority shall consult the governing body and (except where he is the person concerned) the head teacher before—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) dismissing a person to whom sub-paragraph (3) applies, or
  - (b) otherwise requiring such a person to cease to work at the school, or
  - (c) permitting such a person to retire in circumstances in which he would be entitled to compensation for premature retirement.
- (3) This sub-paragraph applies to any person who is—
- (a) employed in a post which is part of the complement of the school, or
  - (b) employed to work solely at the school in any other post, otherwise than solely in connection with either or both of the following—
    - (i) the provision of meals;
    - (ii) the supervision of pupils at midday.
- (4) Where a teacher at the school is required to complete an initial period of probation, the local education authority shall consult the governing body and the head teacher before—
- (a) extending his period of probation, or
  - (b) deciding whether he has completed it successfully.
- (5) Where the governing body recommend to the local education authority that a person should cease to work at the school, the authority shall consider their recommendation.
- (6) Both the governing body and the head teacher shall have power to suspend a person employed to work at the school where, in the opinion of the governing body or (as the case may be) the head teacher, his exclusion from the school is required.
- (7) The governing body or head teacher shall—
- (a) when exercising that power, immediately inform the local education authority and the head teacher or (as the case may be) governing body, and
  - (b) end the suspension if directed to do so by the authority.
- (8) In this paragraph “suspend” means suspend without loss of emoluments; and in sub-paragraph (2) the reference to dismissing a person does not include a dismissal under section 143(6) or 144(3) (dismissal of teachers of religious education).

F983 SCHEDULE 14

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F983** Sch. 14 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and with savings in S.I. 1999/711, **reg. 5**); S.I. 1999/2323, reg. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

F984 SCHEDULE 15

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F984** Sch. 15 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

### <sup>F985</sup>SCHEDULE 16

#### Textual Amendments

**F985** Sch. 16 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

### SCHEDULE 17

Section 161.

#### GOVERNORS' ANNUAL REPORTS

##### *General*

- 1 (1) The articles of government for a county, voluntary or maintained special school shall impose the requirements set out in paragraphs 2 to [<sup>F991</sup>9F].
- (2) In those paragraphs “the report” means a governors’ report prepared under section 161.

#### Textual Amendments

**F991** Word in Sch. 17 para. 1(1) substituted (10.1.1997) by S.I. 1996/3210, art. 2(2)

- 2 The report shall be as brief as is reasonably consistent with the requirements as to its contents.

##### *Requirements as to contents*

- 3 Where there is an obligation on the governing body (by virtue of section 162) to hold an annual parents’ meeting, the report shall—
- (a) give details of the date, time and place for the next annual parents’ meeting and its agenda;
  - (b) indicate that the purpose of that meeting will be to discuss both the governors’ report and the discharge by the governing body, the head teacher and the local education authority of their functions in relation to the school; and
  - (c) report on the consideration which has been given to any resolutions passed at the previous annual parents’ meeting.



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 4 The report shall—
- (a) give the name of each governor and indicate whether he—
    - (i) is a parent, teacher or foundation governor,
    - (ii) was co-opted or otherwise appointed as a governor, or
    - (iii) is an ex officio governor;
  - (b) in the case of an appointed governor, say by whom he was appointed;
  - (c) in relation to each governor who is not an ex officio governor, give the date on which his term of office comes to an end; and
  - (d) name, and give the address of, the chairman of the governing body and their clerk.
- 5 The report shall give such information as is available to the governing body about arrangements for the next election of parent governors.
- 6 The report shall contain a financial statement—
- (a) reproducing or summarising any financial statement of which a copy has been provided to the governing body by the local education authority under section 122 or 124 since the last governors’ report was prepared under section 161;
  - (b) indicating, in general terms, how any sum made available to the governing body by the authority—
    - (i) in respect of the school’s budget share, or
    - (ii) under section 125,in the period covered by the report was used;
  - (c) giving details of the application of any gifts made to the school in that period; and
  - (d) stating the total amount of any travelling and subsistence allowances paid to members of the governing body in that period.
- 7 The report shall give such information about—
- (a) public examinations and other assessments of pupils’ achievements,
  - (b) pupils’ absences from the school,
  - (c) the continuing education of pupils leaving the school, and
  - (d) the employment or training taken up by such pupils,
- as is required to be published by virtue of section 414(6) and (7).
- [<sup>F992</sup>7A The report shall give the information about public examinations and other assessments of pupils’ achievements—
- (a) at schools in England (where the school is in England), or
  - (b) at schools in Wales (where the school is in Wales),
- which has most recently been made available to the governing body by the Secretary of State.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F992** Sch. 17 para. 7A added (10.1.1997) by [S.I. 1996/3210](#), [art. 2\(3\)](#)

- 8 The report shall describe what steps have been taken by the governing body to develop or strengthen the school’s links with the community (including links with the police).

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

9 The report shall draw attention to the information made available by the governing body in accordance with regulations made under section 408 so far as relating to the matters mentioned in subsection (2)(b) of that section (information as to educational provision made for pupils at the school and syllabuses followed by them).

[<sup>F993</sup>9A The report shall summarise, where the school is in England, the nature, amount and purpose of training and professional development undertaken by the school's teaching staff in the period since the last governors' report was prepared under section 161, identifying in particular the nature, amount and purpose of any training and professional development so undertaken on any day when the staff were required to be available for work but were not required to teach pupils.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F993** Sch. 17 paras. 9A-9F added (10.1.1997) by [S.I. 1996/3210](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)

<sup>F994</sup>9B The report shall give, where the school is in Wales, such information about any targets for improvement set by the governing body in respect of the performance of pupils at the school as is required to be published by virtue of regulations made under section 414(6).

#### Textual Amendments

**F994** Sch. 17 paras. 9A-9F added (10.1.1997) by [S.I. 1996/3210](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)

<sup>F995</sup>9C The report shall describe in general terms—

- (a) the arrangements made for the security of the pupils and staff at the school and the school premises, and
- (b) any changes to those arrangements since the last governors' report was prepared under section 161.

#### Textual Amendments

**F995** Sch. 17 paras. 9A-9F added (10.1.1997) by [S.I. 1996/3210](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)

<sup>F996</sup>9D The report shall indicate in relation to the period since the last governors' report was prepared under section 161—

- (a) to what extent the aims of the governing body with respect to sport at the school have been attained; and
- (b) any notable sporting achievements of the school's teams during that period.

#### Textual Amendments

**F996** Sch. 17 paras. 9A-9F added (10.1.1997) by [S.I. 1996/3210](#), [art. 2\(4\)](#)

<sup>F997</sup>9E The report shall give the dates of the beginning and end of each school term, and of half-term holidays, for the next school year.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F997** Sch. 17 paras. 9A-9F added (10.1.1997) by **S.I. 1996/3210, art. 2(4)**

<sup>F998</sup>9F The report shall summarise any changes to information contained in the school prospectus since it was last published pursuant to regulations made under section 414(6).

**Textual Amendments**

**F998** Sch. 17 paras. 9A-9F added (10.1.1997) by **S.I. 1996/3210, art. 2(4)**

*Power of Secretary of State to make amendments*

10 The Secretary of State may by order amend the preceding provisions of this Schedule.

SCHEDULE 18

Section 162.

ANNUAL PARENTS’ MEETINGS

*Proceedings at an annual parents’ meeting*

1 The articles of government for a county, voluntary or maintained special school shall provide for the proceedings at an annual parents’ meeting to be under the control of the governing body.

2 (1) The articles of government for a county, voluntary or maintained special school shall provide for any annual parents’ meeting at which the required number of parents of registered pupils at the school are present to be entitled to pass (by a simple majority) resolutions on any matters which may properly be discussed at the meeting.

(2) In sub-paragraph (1) “the required number”, in relation to a school, means any number equal to or greater than 20 per cent. of the number of registered pupils at the school.

3 No person who is not a parent of a registered pupil at the school may vote on any question put to an annual parents’ meeting.

*Consideration of resolutions passed at an annual parents’ meeting*

4 (1) The articles of government for a county, voluntary or maintained special school shall require the governing body—

(a) to consider any resolution which is duly passed at an annual parents’ meeting and which they consider is a matter for them;

(b) to send to the head teacher a copy of any resolution which is so passed and which they consider is a matter for him; and

(c) to send to the local education authority a copy of any resolution which is so passed and which they consider is a matter for the authority.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The articles of government shall in addition—
- (a) require the head teacher to consider any resolution a copy of which has been sent to him by virtue of sub-paragraph (1)(b) and to provide the governing body with a brief comment on it (in writing) for inclusion in their next governors' report; and
  - (b) require the local education authority to do likewise in relation to any resolution a copy of which has been sent to them by virtue of sub-paragraph (1)(c).

*Determination of question whether person is to be treated as pupil's parent*

- 5 (1) The articles of government for a county, controlled or maintained special school shall provide for any question whether any person is to be treated, for the purposes of any provision of the articles relating to the annual parents' meeting, as the parent of a registered pupil at the school to be determined by the local education authority.
- (2) The articles of government for an aided or a special agreement school shall provide for any such question to be determined by the governing body.

SCHEDULE 19

Section 166.

CONDUCT AND STAFFING OF NEW COUNTY, VOLUNTARY AND MAINTAINED SPECIAL SCHOOLS

**PART I**

GENERAL

*Articles of government for new schools*

- 1 (1) The requirement for there to be articles of government for a school (imposed by section 127) shall not apply in relation to a new school until the requirement for there to be an instrument of government for the school takes effect under section 99.
- (2) Before making an order under section 127 as to the articles of government for a new school, the local education authority shall consult the temporary governing body and the head teacher.
- (3) Before making such an order in respect of a new school which will be a voluntary school, the authority shall—
- (a) secure the agreement of the temporary governing body to the terms of the proposed order, and
  - (b) secure the agreement of the temporary foundation governors to any provisions which are of particular concern to those governors.
- (4) Where a local education authority propose to make an order under section 127 in respect of a new school but cannot secure any agreement required by this paragraph, they or (as the case may be) the temporary governing body or temporary foundation governors may refer the matter to the Secretary of State.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) On a reference to him under this paragraph, the Secretary of State shall give such direction as he thinks fit.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C136 Sch. 19 para. 1(1) modified (1.1.1999) by S.I. 1998/3097, reg. 6

- 2 Section 129(2) (amendment of articles) shall not apply in relation to a new school; but if the articles of government for a new county or voluntary school contain any provisions to which section 129(1) would apply during any period when the school had a delegated budget (“inconsistent provisions”) they shall also include in relation to each inconsistent provision the statement required by section 129(3).

*Conduct of new schools: general*

- 3 The determination of those matters relating to the conduct of a new school which require to be determined before a governing body is constituted for the school under an instrument of government shall be under the direction of the temporary governing body, but subject to any provision made by or under this Act (including, in particular, this Schedule) or any other enactment.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C137 Sch. 19 para. 3 modified (1.1.1999) by S.I. 1998/3097, reg. 7

- 4 Regulations may make in relation to consultation with temporary governing bodies provision similar to the provision that may be made in relation to consultation with governing bodies by regulations under section 131 (consultation not required in urgent cases).

## PART II

### STAFFING OF NEW SCHOOLS: FINANCIAL DELEGATION NOT PROPOSED

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C138 Sch. 19 Pt. II modified (temp from 1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/638, regs. 1, 5

*Staffing of new county, controlled or maintained special schools*

- 5 Subject to paragraph 19(4), paragraphs 6 to 11 apply in relation to any new school for which a temporary governing body have been constituted and which will be a county, controlled or maintained special school.
- 6 (1) The complement of teaching and non-teaching posts for the school shall be determined by the local education authority.
- (2) Section 133(2) and (3) (staff complements) shall apply in relation to a complement determined under this paragraph.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 7 (1) Whenever a selection panel is required by virtue of paragraph 8 or 9, it shall be constituted in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) A selection panel shall consist of—
- (a) such number of persons appointed to it by the local education authority, and
  - (b) such number of temporary governors appointed to it by the temporary governing body,
- as the authority shall determine.
- (3) Neither of the numbers so determined shall be less than three; and the number determined in relation to appointments made by the temporary governing body shall not be less than the number determined in relation to appointments made by the authority.
- (4) The temporary governing body and the authority may replace, at any time, any member of a selection panel whom they have appointed.
- (5) Regulations may make provision, for the purposes of this paragraph, as to the meetings and proceedings of selection panels.
- 8 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2) below, sub-paragraphs (3) to (11) of paragraph 3 of Schedule 13 (appointment of head teacher) shall apply in relation to the appointment of a head teacher for the school—
- (a) as if they had effect as independent enactments (rather than for the purposes of the provision to be made by articles of government); and
  - (b) subject to any necessary modifications.
- (2) Where—
- (a) two or more schools are to be discontinued (“the discontinued schools”), and
  - (b) the registered pupils at those schools, or a substantial number of those pupils, are expected to transfer to the new school,
- the local education authority may, in consultation with the temporary governing body, appoint one of the head teachers of the discontinued schools as the first head teacher for the new school, instead of following the procedure set out in sub-paragraphs (3) to (11) of paragraph 3 of Schedule 13 (as applied by sub-paragraph (1) above).
- (3) If the post of head teacher is vacant, the authority may, if they think fit, appoint an acting head teacher after consulting the temporary governing body.
- 9 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2) below, sub-paragraphs (3) to (11) of paragraph 3 of Schedule 13 shall apply in relation to the appointment of a deputy head teacher for the school—
- (a) as if they had effect as independent enactments (rather than for the purposes of the provision to be made by articles of government); and
  - (b) subject to any necessary modifications.
- (2) If the local education authority so decide, those provisions of Schedule 13 shall not so apply and instead the general staff appointment provisions shall apply in relation to the appointment of a deputy head teacher for the school—
- (a) as if they had effect as independent enactments (rather than for the purposes of the provision to be made by articles of government); and
  - (b) subject to any necessary modifications.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Where (in accordance with sub-paragraph (1)) the appointment of a deputy head teacher is on the recommendation of a selection panel and the head teacher is not a member of the panel, the head teacher—
- (a) shall be entitled to be present, for the purpose of giving advice, at any proceedings of the panel (including interviews), and
  - (b) whether or not he attends any such proceedings, shall be consulted by the panel before they make any recommendation to the local education authority.
- (4) In this paragraph and paragraph 10 “the general staff appointment provisions” means the following provisions of Schedule 13—
- (a) paragraph 5(3);
  - (b) paragraph 6(2) to (7);
  - (c) paragraph 7(2) and (3); and
  - (d) paragraph 8(2) and (3).
- 10 (1) The general staff appointment provisions shall apply in relation to the appointment of a person to a post (other than that of head teacher or deputy head teacher) which is part of the complement of the school as if they had effect as independent enactments (rather than for the purposes of the provision to be made by articles of government).
- (2) The local education authority shall consult the temporary governing body and the head teacher before appointing any person to work solely at the school otherwise than—
- (a) in a teaching post,
  - (b) in a non-teaching post which is part of the complement of the school, or
  - (c) solely in connection with either or both of the following—
    - (i) the provision of meals;
    - (ii) the supervision of pupils at midday.
- (3) This paragraph does not apply in relation to a temporary appointment pending—
- (a) the return to work of the holder of the post in question, or
  - (b) the taking of any steps required by virtue of this Schedule in relation to the vacancy in question.
- (4) Paragraph 9(4) applies for the purposes of this paragraph.
- 11 (1) The clerk to the temporary governing body shall be appointed by the local education authority.
- (2) When the arrangement for the constitution of the temporary governing body comes to an end under section 96 or 97, the person who was the clerk to that body shall act as clerk to the governing body who succeed them, pending the appointment of a clerk under section 135.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C139 Sch. 19 para. 11(2) excluded (1.1.1999) by S.I. 1998/3097, reg. 8(f)

- 12 Subject to paragraph 19(4), a local education authority shall, in discharging their duty under paragraph 21 of Schedule 9 (temporary governing bodies) to provide information to the temporary governing body of a new school which will be a

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

county, controlled or maintained special school, inform the temporary governing body, in particular—

- (a) of the number of members of any selection panel required by virtue of paragraph 8 or 9 above who are to be appointed by the authority and the number who are to be appointed by the temporary governing body;
- (b) where the authority intend to exercise the power conferred on them by paragraph 8(2) above, of their intention to do so;
- (c) of the provision which is to apply in relation to the appointment of the deputy head teacher of the school;
- (d) of the complement of staff for the school; and
- (e) of the authority's proposals with regard to the appointment of staff for the school and the timing of appointments.

#### *Staffing of new aided schools*

- 13 Subject to paragraph 19(5), paragraphs 14 to 16 apply in relation to a new school which will be an aided school.
- 14 Subject to paragraph 15(1), the local education authority and the temporary governing body shall have the same powers, and be under the same duties, for the purposes of the appointment and dismissal of staff at the school as would the authority and the governing body for an aided school whose articles of government provided for—
- (a) staff employed solely in connection with the provision of school meals to be appointed by the authority, and
  - (b) other staff employed at the school to be appointed by the governing body.
- 15 (1) The first appointment of a clerk to the temporary governing body shall be made by the promoters of the school (that is, the persons making the relevant proposals).
- (2) When the arrangement for the constitution of the temporary governing body comes to an end under section 97, the person who was the clerk to that body shall act as clerk to the governing body who succeed them, pending the appointment of their clerk.

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C140** Sch. 19 para. 15(2) excluded (1.1.1999) by [S.I. 1998/3097](#), [reg. 8\(f\)](#)

- 16 (1) The local education authority shall, with a view to enabling staff to be appointed in good time, notify the temporary governing body of any determination, prohibition or direction they intend to make or give pursuant to subsection (2)(b), (4)(a) or (b) or (5) of section 134 (staffing of aided schools).
- (2) The authority shall, in discharging their duty under paragraph 21 of Schedule 9 to provide information to the temporary governing body of a new school which will be an aided school, inform the temporary governing body, in particular, of the authority's proposals with regard to the appointment of staff for the school and the timing of appointments.

#### *Expenditure on staff for new schools*

- 17 Where a temporary governing body are constituted for a new school, the local education authority shall be under the same duty to defray the expenses incurred in



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

relation to the staff appointed in accordance with paragraphs 6 to 11 or (as the case may be) 14 and 15, as they would be if the relevant proposals had been implemented and the temporary governing body were the governing body of the school.

### PART III

#### STAFFING OF NEW SCHOOLS: FINANCIAL DELEGATION PROPOSED

##### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C141 Sch. 19 Pt. III modified (temp. from 1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/638, regs. 1, 5

##### *Adaptation of references*

- 18 For the purposes of the application (in accordance with paragraphs 19 to 24) of sections 136 to 141 and Schedule 14 in relation to new schools which will be county or voluntary schools—
- (a) references to the governing body of a school shall be read as including the temporary governing body of a new school;
  - (b) references to a county school shall be read as including a new school which on implementation of the relevant proposals will be a county school; and
  - (c) references to a voluntary school of a particular category, or maintained by a particular local education authority, shall be read as including a new school which on implementation of the relevant proposals will be a voluntary school of that category, or maintained by that authority.

##### *Application or otherwise of provisions about staffing*

- 19 (1) Subject to paragraphs 20 to 24, section 136 or (as the case may be) section 137 (staffing of county or voluntary schools with delegated budgets) shall apply to a new school which on implementation of the relevant proposals will be a school of a category to which that section applies not only at any time when (by virtue of Schedule 12) the new school has a delegated budget but also at any time when it has a temporary governing body and sub-paragraph (2) or (3) is satisfied.
- (2) This sub-paragraph is satisfied if the delegation requirement under the scheme will apply to the school on or before the implementation of the relevant proposals.
  - (3) This sub-paragraph is satisfied if the local education authority propose to exercise any power under the scheme to delegate the management of the school's budget share for a financial year by making such a delegation—
    - (a) to the temporary governing body before the implementation of the relevant proposals, or
    - (b) to the governing body of the school on implementation of those proposals.
  - (4) Paragraphs 6 to 12 of this Schedule shall not apply in relation to a new school to which section 136 for the time being applies.
  - (5) Paragraphs 14 to 16 of this Schedule shall not apply in relation to a new school to which section 137 for the time being applies.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 20 Sections 136, 137 and 138 and Schedule 14 (staffing of schools with delegated budgets) shall apply, in the case of a new school, for the purposes only of—
- (a) the appointment of staff at the school, and
  - (b) the taking of such steps with respect to any other matters referred to in those provisions as may be appropriate in preparation for the conduct of the school following implementation of the relevant proposals.
- 21 In the case of a new school which is a proposed county, controlled, aided or special school, no appointments of staff for the school shall be made by the local education authority before the constitution of a temporary governing body for the school.
- 22 Section 139(2) and (5) (payments in respect of dismissal) shall not apply in relation to a new school.
- 23 Any provision included in a scheme by virtue of subsection (3) of section 140 (community schools), so far as it relates to the appointment of staff at a school to which that section applies, shall apply in relation to a new school which on implementation of the relevant proposals will be a school to which that section applies.
- 24 (1) Section 141 (amendment of articles) shall not apply in relation to a new school.
- (2) The local education authority shall, however, incorporate—
- (a) the statement mentioned in section 141(2) in the articles of government for a new school which will be a county or controlled school and to which section 136 applies, or
  - (b) the statement mentioned in section 141(3) in the articles of government for a new school which will be an aided school and to which section 137 applies.

## PART IV

### OTHER MATTERS RELATING TO CONDUCT ETC. OF NEW SCHOOLS

#### *Preparation of curriculum*

- 25 (1) The head teacher of a new school for which a temporary governing body have been constituted shall, in preparing to discharge his functions under Part V in relation to the curriculum for the school, consult that body and the local education authority.
- (2) Any authority who have been consulted under this paragraph shall inform the head teacher of the resources which are likely to be made available to the school; and the head teacher shall have regard to any information so given to him.

#### *School terms, holidays and sessions*

- 26 (1) Pending the coming into force of the articles of government for a new school which will be a county or controlled school—
- (a) the dates when the school terms and holidays are to begin and end shall be determined by the local education authority, and
  - (b) the times of the school sessions shall be determined by the temporary governing body after consultation with the authority.
- (2) Pending the coming into force of the articles of government for a new school which will be an aided school—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the dates and times when the school terms and holidays are to begin and end, and
  - (b) the times of the school sessions,
- shall be determined by the temporary governing body.
- (3) In this paragraph “the times of the school sessions” means the times at which each of the school sessions (or, if there is only one, the school session) is to begin and end on any day.

#### *Discipline*

- 27 Pending the coming into force of the articles of government for a new school, section 154(2) to (6) (responsibility for discipline) shall apply—
- (a) in relation to the head teacher, and
  - (b) subject to any necessary modifications, in relation to the temporary governing body,
- as if they had effect as independent enactments (rather than for the purposes of the provision to be made by articles of government).

#### *Reports and information*

- 28 (1) A temporary governing body shall provide the local education authority with such reports in connection with the discharge of their functions as the authority may require (either on a regular basis or from time to time).
- (2) The head teacher of a new school for which a temporary governing body have been constituted shall provide that body or (as the case may be) the local education authority with such reports in connection with the discharge of his functions as that body or the authority may require (either on a regular basis or from time to time).
- (3) In the case of a new school which will be an aided school—
- (a) the local education authority shall notify the temporary governing body of any requirement imposed by them on the head teacher under sub-paragraph (2), and
  - (b) the head teacher shall provide the temporary governing body with a copy of any report which he makes in complying with any such requirement.

#### *Consultation on expenditure by local education authority*

- 29 (1) Where a temporary governing body have been constituted for a new school, the local education authority shall consult that body and the head teacher on their proposed expenditure on books, equipment and stationery for the school.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply in relation to a new school which has a delegated budget.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F999** Sch. 20 repealed (1.10.1998 so far as relating to the repeal of Pt. I and otherwise 1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1)(3), 145(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I**; S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

### **F1000**SCHEDULE 21

#### Textual Amendments

**F1000**Sch. 21 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1)(3), 145(1), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt.I**

### **F1001**[SCHEDULE 22

Section 218(4).]

#### GOVERNING BODIES OF GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

#### Textual Amendments

**F1001**Sch. 22 repealed (1.4.1999 so far as relating to the repeal of para. 15 and otherwise prosp.) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 140(1)(3), 145(1), Sch. 30 para. 185, **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt. IV**

#### *Introductory*

- 1 In this Schedule—  
     “school” means a grant-maintained school, and  
     “instrument”, in relation to a school, means the instrument of government for the school.

#### *Election of governors*

- 2 The instrument for a school may make provision—  
     (a) as to the procedure for the election of members of the governing body, and  
     (b) for the determination of any questions arising in connection with, or matters relating to, such elections.

#### *Disqualification for, tenure of and removal from office*

- 3 A person who is a member of the teaching or other staff at a school which is required to have first governors shall be disqualified for holding office as such a governor on the governing body.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 4           The instrument for a school may make provision as to the circumstances in which persons are to be disqualified for holding office as members of the governing body.
- 5           Subject to paragraph 10, the instrument for a school must provide for each governor of an elected category to hold office for a term of four years.
- 6           (1) Subject to paragraph 10, the instrument for a school must make the following provision for the term of office of—
- (a) first or, as the case may be, foundation governors, other than a foundation governor who is a governor ex officio, and
- (b) where there are sponsor governors, those governors.
- (2) Except where sub-paragraph (3), (4) or (5) applies, such a governor is to hold office for such term (not being less than five nor more than seven years) as may be specified in the instrument.
- (3) The initial instrument must provide, except where sub-paragraph (4) or (5) applies—
- (a) subject to paragraph (b), for such a governor to hold office for such term as was specified in the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status or, as the case may be, the proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school as the proposed term of office for initial governors of the category in question, and
- (b) in the case of a governing body incorporated in pursuance of proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school which name a person as a sponsor of the school, for any sponsor governor to hold office for such term as was specified as the proposed term of office for such governors in those proposals.
- (4) Any additional first or foundation governor appointed in pursuance of provision made in the instrument by virtue of section 230(2) is to hold office for such term (not being more than five years) as may be specified in the terms of that governor's appointment.
- (5) Any first governor appointed in pursuance of provision made in the instrument by virtue of section 227 is to hold office for such term (not being less than five nor more than seven years) as may be specified in the terms of his appointment.
- 7           No provision made in the instrument by virtue of paragraph 5, 6 or 10 shall be taken to prevent a governor—
- (a) from being elected or appointed for a further term, or
- (b) from being disqualified, by virtue of paragraph 3 or any provision made by virtue of paragraph 4, for continuing to hold office.
- 8           The instrument for a school must provide that any member of the governing body may at any time resign his office.
- 9           (1) The instrument for a school must provide that any foundation governor (other than one holding office ex officio) and any sponsor governor may be removed from office by the person or persons who appointed him.
- (2) For the purposes of this paragraph, an initial foundation governor shall be treated as having been appointed by the person or persons entitled to appoint foundation governors under provision included in the instrument in accordance with section 228(7)(b).

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Initial appointments: terms of office*

- 10 (1) The instrument for a school must, until every initial governor has ceased to hold office, make the provision required by sub-paragraphs (2) and (3).
- (2) In the case of a governing body incorporated under Chapter II of Part III—
- (a) an initial governor of an elected category who was a governor of that category on the governing body of the school immediately before the incorporation date shall hold office for the remainder of his term of office on the former governing body, and
  - (b) an initial governor of an elected category who was elected under section 234, or elected or nominated under section 237 to hold office as such, shall hold office for a term of four years.
- (3) An initial first governor, initial foundation governor (other than a foundation governor who is a governor ex officio) or initial sponsor governor shall hold office for such term (not being less than five nor more than seven years) beginning with the incorporation date as may be specified as his proposed term of office in the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status or, as the case may be, the proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school.
- (4) In the case of a governing body incorporated under Chapter IV of Part III, the instrument for a school must, until every governor of an elected category appointed before the date of implementation of the proposals has ceased to hold office, provide for any such governor to hold office for the prescribed term.

*Meetings and proceedings*

- 11 The proceedings of the governing body of a school shall not be invalidated by—
- (a) any vacancy among their number, or
  - (b) any defect in the election or appointment of any governor.
- 12 Subject to the provisions of Chapter V of Part III and any instrument of government or articles of government made under that Chapter, the governing body of a school may regulate their own procedure.
- 13 (1) The instrument for a school may make provision as to the meetings and proceedings of the governing body.
- (2) The provision that may be made in pursuance of this paragraph includes, in particular, provision—
- (a) as to the election of a chairman and vice-chairman,
  - (b) as to the establishment, constitution, meetings and proceedings of committees,
  - (c) for the delegation of the governing body's functions, in such circumstances as may be specified in the instrument, to committees established by that body or to any member of that body, and
  - (d) as to the procedure (including any quorum) when business is transacted by members of the governing body of a particular category.
- (3) The provision mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(b) may provide for a committee to include persons who are not members of the governing body.
- (4) The instrument shall make provision for an appeal committee for the purposes of paragraph 6(1) of Schedule 23 to include among its members (with full voting

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

powers) a person nominated by the governing body from among persons who are eligible to be lay members.

- (5) A person is eligible to be a lay member for the purposes of sub-paragraph (4) if—
- (a) he is a person without personal experience in the management of any school or the provision of education in any school (disregarding any such experience as a governor or in any other voluntary capacity), and
  - (b) he does not have, and has not at any time had, any connection with—
    - (i) the school, or
    - (ii) any person who is a member of, or employed by, the governing body of the school,of a kind which might reasonably be taken to raise doubts about his ability to act impartially in relation to the school.

*Information as to meetings and proceedings*

- 14 (1) Regulations may require the governing body of a school to make available, to such persons or classes of person as may be prescribed, such documents and information relating to the meetings and proceedings of the governing body as may be prescribed.
- (2) Documents and information required by the regulations to be made available shall be made available in such form and manner, and at such times, as may be prescribed.

*Allowances for governors*

F1002 15 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1002 Sch. 22 para. 15 repealed (1.4.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 185, Sch.31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2(4), Sch. 1 Pt.IV

*Seal etc.*

- 16 (1) The application of the seal of the governing body of a school must be authenticated by the signature—
- (a) of the chairman of the governing body, or
  - (b) of some other member authorised either generally or specially by the governing body to act for that purpose,
- together with the signature of any other member.
- (2) Every document purporting to be an instrument made or issued by or on behalf of the governing body of a school and—
- (a) to be duly executed under the seal of the governing body, or
  - (b) to be signed or executed by a person authorised by the governing body to act in that behalf,
- shall be received in evidence and be treated, without further proof, as being so made or issued unless the contrary is shown.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULE 23

Section 218(5).

### CONTENT OF ARTICLES OF GOVERNMENT FOR GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C142** Sch. 23 modified (*temp.*) (1.9.1998) by S.I. 1998/1948, reg. 3(1)(2), Sch. para. 9(1)(2)

#### *Introductory*

- 1 In this Schedule—
- “school” means a grant-maintained school, and
  - “articles”, in relation to a school, means the articles of government for the school.

#### *Performance and delegation of functions*

- 2 (1) The articles must make provision as to the functions to be exercised in relation to the school by—
- (a) the Secretary of State,
  - (b) the funding authority,
  - (c) the governing body,
  - (d) any committee or other body established by the governing body,
  - (e) the head teacher, and
  - (f) any other persons specified in or determined under the articles.
- (2) The articles must also include provision as to the delegation of such functions by those on whom they are imposed or conferred by or under the articles.
- (3) The articles may include provision as to the establishment by the governing body of committees or other bodies of persons for the purposes of or in connection with the performance in relation to the school of such functions as may be determined by or under the articles.

#### *Staff*

- 3 (1) The articles must include provision as to—
- (a) disciplinary rules and procedures applicable to members of the staff of the school, and
  - (b) procedures for giving them opportunities for seeking redress of any grievances relating to their employment.
- (2) The articles must also include provision as to arrangements—
- (a) for giving any member of the staff an opportunity of making representations as to any proposal to dismiss him by the governing body or any persons authorised under the articles to dismiss him, including (if he so wishes) oral representations to such person or persons as may be appointed for the purpose,
  - (b) for requiring the governing body or any persons authorised under the articles to dismiss him to have regard to any representations made by him before taking any decision to dismiss him, and



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) for giving any member of staff whom it has been decided to dismiss an opportunity of appealing against that decision before any action is taken to implement it.

#### *Curriculum*

- 4 (1) The articles must include provision for securing the discharge by the governing body and the head teacher of duties imposed on them under Chapters I and II of Part V and sections 384, 388, 389, 400 and 408.
- (2) The articles must include provision as to arrangements for the consideration and disposal of complaints relating to any matter concerning the curriculum followed within the school including, in particular, the discharge by the governing body of those duties.
- (3) The articles must require the governing body, when considering the content of the secular curriculum for the school, to have regard to any representations with regard to that curriculum—
  - (a) which are made to them by any persons connected with the community served by the school, or
  - (b) which are made to them by the chief officer of police and are connected with his responsibilities.

#### *Admission arrangements*

- 5 (1) The articles must—
  - (a) provide for the governing body to be responsible for determining the arrangements for admitting pupils to the school; and
  - (b) include provision as to the policy to be followed in deciding admissions.
- (2) The articles must also require the governing body to publish, for each school year, particulars of—
  - (a) the arrangements for admission of pupils to the school; and
  - (b) the procedures applicable under the articles in relation to the admission of pupils to the school.

#### *Appeals relating to admission and exclusion of pupils*

- 6 (1) The articles must include provision as to the arrangements for appeals (in such circumstances as may be provided by the articles) to an appeal committee constituted in accordance with the instrument of government against any decision or action taken—
  - (a) by the governing body, or
  - (b) by any persons authorised under the articles to take any decision or action of the kind in question,in relation to admissions of pupils to the school or the permanent exclusion of a pupil from the school.
- (2) The articles must enable the governing body to make such arrangements jointly with the governing body of one or more other grant-maintained schools.

- <sup>F1003</sup>(2A) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2), so far as they apply in relation to arrangements in respect of appeals—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) do not require the articles to provide for any matter for which provision is made by Schedule 25A (exclusion appeals); and
  - (b) have effect subject to paragraph 4(2) of Schedule 33B (refusal of admission in case of children permanently excluded from two or more schools).]
- (3) The articles must require the governing body to publish, for each school year, particulars of any arrangements made by them in respect of appeals by parents against any such decision or action in relation to admissions of pupils to the school as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) above.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1003**Sch. 23 para. 6(2A) inserted (1.9.1997 except in relation to the insertion of para. 6(2A)(a), as to which the insertion came into force on 1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(1), **Sch. 7 para. 49(3)**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(2), **Sch. 1 Pt. II** (with transitional provisions); S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt. IV** (with transitional provisions); and **Sch. 7 para. 49** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 223**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**.

#### *Annual reports*

- 7
- (1) The articles must require the governing body to prepare once in every school year a report in such form and containing such information as the articles may require.
  - (2) The articles must require the governing body to take such steps as are reasonably practicable to secure that—
    - (a) the registered parents of all registered pupils at the school and all persons employed at the school are given (free of charge) a copy of the report, and
    - (b) copies of the report are available for inspection (at all reasonable times and free of charge) at the school.

#### *Annual parents' meetings*

- 8
- (1) The articles must require the governing body, subject to any exceptions provided for in the articles, to hold a meeting once in every school year which is open to—
    - (a) all parents of registered pupils at the school, and
    - (b) such other persons as the governing body may invite.
  - (2) The articles must include provision as to—
    - (a) the procedure to be followed and the matters to be considered at such a meeting,
    - (b) the determination of any questions arising in connection with such a meeting, and
    - (c) the taking by the governing body or any other persons of such action as may be required by the articles for the purposes of, or in connection with, such a meeting or any resolutions passed at it.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULE 24

Section 222.

### CATEGORIES OF GOVERNORS

#### PART I

##### INTRODUCTORY

###### *Application*

- 1 (1) This Schedule applies, in relation to the governing body of a grant-maintained school, for the purposes of Part III.
- (2) Part II of this Schedule applies for the purpose of determining who are to be the initial governors of a grant-maintained school.
- (3) Part III of this Schedule applies for the purpose of determining who are to be the governors of a grant-maintained school on and after the incorporation date.

###### *General interpretation*

- 2 References to an initial governor are to any person who becomes a member of the governing body on the incorporation date.
- 3 References to a governor of an elected category are to a person who is a parent or teacher governor as defined by section 78(3) or (4) or is such a governor within the meaning of this Schedule.
- 4 In relation to any proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status in respect of a school, a person who is a governor of an elected category on the existing governing body of the school is an eligible governor of that category if—
  - (a) his term of office as a governor is due to end after the date of implementation of the proposals, and
  - (b) he has notified the existing governing body that he is willing to serve on the proposed governing body and has not withdrawn that notification.

#### PART II

##### INITIAL GOVERNORS

###### *Parent governors*

- 5 (1) In relation to a governing body to be incorporated under Chapter II of Part III, “parent governor” means—
  - (a) a person who, immediately before the incorporation date in relation to the school, is a parent governor (as defined by section 78(3)) in relation to the school, or
  - (b) a person elected or appointed under section 234, or elected, appointed or nominated under section 237, to hold office as an initial parent governor on the governing body.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) A person elected under section 234 to hold office as an initial parent governor must be elected by registered parents of registered pupils at the school and a person elected or appointed under that section to hold such office must when he is elected or appointed be such a parent.
- (3) A person elected, appointed or nominated under section 237 to hold office as an initial parent governor—
  - (a) in the case of an election, must be elected by registered parents of registered pupils at the school and must when he is elected be such a parent, and
  - (b) in the case of an appointment or nomination, must be a registered parent of a registered pupil at the school at the time of his appointment or nomination.

#### *Teacher governors*

- 6 (1) In relation to a governing body to be incorporated under Chapter II of Part III, “teacher governor” means—
  - (a) a person who, immediately before the incorporation date in relation to the school, is a teacher governor (as defined by section 78(4)) in relation to the school, or
  - (b) a person elected under section 234, or elected or nominated under section 237, to hold office as an initial teacher governor on the governing body.
- (2) A person elected under section 234 to hold office as an initial teacher governor must be elected by teachers at the school and must when he is elected be such a teacher.
- (3) A person elected or nominated under section 237 to hold office as an initial teacher governor—
  - (a) in the case of an election, must be elected by teachers at the school and must when he is elected be such a teacher, and
  - (b) in the case of a nomination, must be a teacher at the school at the time of his nomination.

#### *First governors*

- 7 (1) In relation to a governing body to be incorporated under Chapter II of Part III, “first governor” means a person who is selected under section 236(1), or nominated under section 238(1), and appears to the persons selecting or nominating him to be committed to the good government and continuing viability of the school.
- (2) In relation to a governing body to be incorporated under Chapter IV of Part III, “first governor” means a person appointed by the funding authority who appears to them to be committed to the good government and continuing viability of the proposed school.

#### *Foundation governors*

- 8 (1) In relation to a governing body to be incorporated under Chapter II of Part III, “foundation governor” means—
  - (a) a person who is selected under section 236(2) or nominated under section 238(2),

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) where the statement annexed (under paragraph 2 of Schedule 20) to the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status describes the religious character of the school, a person who is appointed for the purpose of securing that (subject to the approval or adoption under section 261 of any proposals) the religious character of the school is such as is indicated in the statement, and
  - (c) where there is a trust deed relating to the school, a person who is appointed for the purpose of securing that the school is conducted in accordance with the deed.
- (2) In relation to a governing body to be incorporated under Chapter IV of Part III, “foundation governor” means—
- (a) a person who is appointed by the promoters,
  - (b) where the statement annexed under paragraph 8 of Schedule 20 to the proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school describes the religious character of the school, a person who is appointed for the purpose of securing that (subject to the approval or adoption under section 261 of any proposals) the religious character of the proposed school is such as is indicated in the statement, and
  - (c) where there is a trust deed relating to the proposed school, a person who is appointed for the purpose of securing that the proposed school is conducted in accordance with that deed.

#### *Sponsor governors*

- 9 In relation to a governing body to be incorporated under Chapter II of Part III, “sponsor governor” means a person appointed by a person named as a sponsor of the school in the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status.

### **PART III**

#### **GOVERNORS OTHER THAN INITIAL GOVERNORS**

#### *Parent governors*

- 10 (1) “Parent governor” means a person who—
- (a) is elected by registered parents of registered pupils at the school,
  - (b) is appointed under a provision of the instrument of government made by virtue of section 223(3),
  - (c) is appointed by virtue of section 223(6), or
  - (d) is an initial parent governor.
- (2) To qualify for such election, the person must when he is elected be a registered parent of a registered pupil at the school.

#### *Teacher governors*

- 11 (1) “Teacher governor” means a person who—
- (a) is elected by teachers at the school,
  - (b) is appointed by virtue of section 224(4), or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(c) is an initial teacher governor.

(2) To qualify for such election, the person must when he is elected be a teacher at the school.

#### *First governors*

12 “First governor” means—

- (a) a person appointed by the governing body who appears to them to be committed to the good government and continuing viability of the school,
- (b) a person appointed under a provision of the instrument of government made by virtue of section 227 who appears to the person appointing him to be committed to the good government and continuing viability of the school, or
- (c) an initial first governor.

#### *Foundation governors*

13 “Foundation governor” means a person who—

- (a) is appointed otherwise than by a local education authority or the funding authority,
- (b) where paragraph 8(1)(b) or (2)(b) applies, is appointed for the purpose there referred to, and
- (c) where there is a trust deed relating to the school, is appointed for the purpose of securing that the school is conducted in accordance with that deed.

#### *Sponsor governors*

14 “Sponsor governor” means—

- (a) a person appointed by a person named in the instrument of government as a sponsor of the school,
- (b) while the instrument of government is the initial instrument, a person appointed by a person named as a sponsor of the school in the proposals for acquisition of grant-maintained status or, as the case may be, the proposals for the establishment of a new grant-maintained school, or
- (c) an initial sponsor governor.

## SCHEDULE 25

Section 285.

### CORE GOVERNORS FOR GROUPS

#### *Introductory*

1 The provision made for core governors in the instrument of government for the governing body of a group must be in accordance with this Schedule.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

*Changes to legislation:* Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Kinds of core governor*

- 2
- (1) Core governors may be either—
    - (a) appointed by the governing body, or
    - (b) externally appointed.
  - (2) Externally appointed core governors may be either—
    - (a) appointed in respect of a particular school in the group, being a school—
      - (i) which was a voluntary school immediately before it became grant-maintained, or
      - (ii) which was established in pursuance of proposals published under section 212, or
    - (b) where the group consists only of such schools, appointed in respect of the group otherwise than by the governing body.
  - (3) A person appointed as mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(a) must be appointed by the persons named in the instrument of government for the group as being entitled to appoint externally appointed core governors in respect of the school.
  - (4) A person appointed as mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(a) must be appointed—
    - (a) (where any statement annexed to the proposals in pursuance of which the school became a grant-maintained school described the religious character of the school) for the purpose of securing that, subject to any change in the character of the school which may be authorised by or under Part III, the religious character of the school is such as was indicated in the statement, and
    - (b) (where there is a trust deed relating to the school) for the purpose of securing that the school is conducted in accordance with the deed.
  - (5) Core governors, other than externally appointed core governors appointed in respect of particular schools in the group, must be appointed from among persons who appear to the person making the appointment to be committed to the good government and continuing viability of all the schools in the group.
  - (6) A person who is a member of the teaching or other staff at any of the schools in the group is disqualified from holding office as a core governor, other than an externally appointed core governor.

### *Groups consisting only of former voluntary schools or section 212 schools*

- 3
- (1) This paragraph applies in the case of such a group as is mentioned in paragraph 2(2)(b).
  - (2) The minimum number of externally appointed core governors (referred to in this paragraph as “MN”) is one greater than the number of governors other than externally appointed core governors.
  - (3) Any head teacher of a school in the group who has chosen not to be a governor shall be counted as one for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2).
  - (4) In respect of each school in the group there must be the same number of externally appointed core governors.
  - (5) The total number of externally appointed core governors in respect of schools in the group must not be less than the highest number, not exceeding MN, that is consistent with sub-paragraph (4).

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Other groups*

- 4 (1) This paragraph applies in the case of a group other than such a group as is mentioned in paragraph 2(2)(b).
- (2) If any school in the group falls within paragraph 2(2)(a), one externally appointed governor must be appointed in respect of that school.
- (3) The appropriate number of the core governors must (on the date or dates on which they respectively take office) be parents of registered pupils at schools in the group, and the appropriate number of the core governors must (on the date or dates on which they respectively take office) be members of the local community; but one person may satisfy both requirements.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3) “the appropriate number” means not less than two or, if all but one of the schools in the group fall within paragraph 2(2)(a), at least one.
- (5) In appointing core governors, the governing body must secure that those governors include persons appearing to the governing body to be members of the local business community (and such persons may also satisfy one or both of the requirements of sub-paragraph (3)).
- (6) The number of core governors must be such number, not being—
- (a) less than five, or
  - (b) (subject to paragraph (a)) more than the number of schools in the group, as will secure that they and the parent governors outnumber the other governors.
- (7) Any head teacher of a school in the group who has chosen not to be a governor shall be counted as one for the purposes of sub-paragraph (6).

## F1004 SCHEDULE 25A

### APPEALS AGAINST EXCLUSION OF PUPILS FROM GRANT-MAINTAINED SCHOOLS

#### Textual Amendments

F1004 Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (with transitional provisions)

#### F1005 *Introductory*

#### Textual Amendments

F1005 Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30** para. 222(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

F1006 1

In this Schedule—

“appeal” means an appeal mentioned in section 307A;



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“appeal committee” means an appeal committee constituted for the purposes of an appeal in accordance with the instrument of government of the school;

“the relevant person” means—

- (a) in relation to a pupil under the age of 18, a parent of his;
- (b) in relation to a pupil who has attained that age, the pupil himself.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1006**Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 222(a)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### *F1007 Procedure on appeal*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1007**Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 222(a)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F1008**<sub>2</sub> An appeal shall be by notice in writing setting out the grounds on which it is made.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1008**Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 222(a)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F1009**<sub>3</sub> (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), the appeal committee shall meet to consider an appeal—

- (a) within the period ending with the 15th school day after the day on which the appeal is lodged, or
- (b) if the governing body have determined a shorter period, within that period.

(2) The governing body may extend the period within which the appeal committee are to consider an appeal where—

- (a) the relevant person requests them to do so; and
- (b) they are satisfied that the circumstances are exceptional and justify the period under sub-paragraph (1) being extended.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1009**Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 222(a)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1010** 4 (1) For the purpose of fixing the time (falling within the period mentioned in paragraph 3) at which the hearing of an appeal is to take place, the governing body shall take reasonable steps to ascertain any times falling within that period when—
- (a) the relevant person, or
  - (b) any other person who wishes, and would be entitled, to appear and make oral representations in accordance with paragraph 5,
- would be able to attend.
- (2) Where in accordance with sub-paragraph (1) the governing body have ascertained any such times in the case of any such person, they shall, when fixing the time at which the hearing is to take place, take those times into account with a view to ensuring, so far as it is reasonably practicable to do so, that that person is able to appear and make such representations at the hearing.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1010** Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 222(a)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

- F1011** 5 (1) The appeal committee shall give the relevant person an opportunity of appearing and making oral representations, and shall allow him to be represented or to be accompanied by a friend.
- (2) The appeal committee shall allow—
- (a) the head teacher and a member of the governing body to make written representations;
  - (b) the head teacher and a member of the governing body to appear and make oral representations; and
  - (c) the governing body to be represented.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1011** Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 222(a)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

- F1012** 6 An appeal shall be held in private except when otherwise directed by the governing body, but any member of the Council on Tribunals may attend as an observer any meeting of the appeal committee at which an appeal is considered.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1012** Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 222(a)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

- F1013** 7 Two or more appeals may be combined and dealt with in the same proceedings if the appeal committee consider that it is expedient to do so because the issues raised by the appeals are the same or connected.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1013**Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 222(a)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

- F1014**8 (1) In deciding whether the pupil in question should be reinstated (and, if so, the time when this should take place), the appeal committee shall have regard to both the interests of that pupil and the interests of other pupils at his school and members of its staff.
- (2) In making its decision on an appeal, the appeal committee shall also have regard to the measures publicised by the head teacher under section 306A(7).
- (3) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) do not apply where the appeal committee decides that the pupil in question was not guilty of the conduct which the head teacher relied on as grounds for his permanent exclusion.
- (4) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) shall not be read as precluding an appeal committee from having regard to any other relevant matters.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1014**Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 222(a)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

- F1015**9 In the event of a disagreement between the members of the appeal committee the appeal under consideration shall be decided by a simple majority of the votes cast and, in the case of an equality of votes, the chairman of the committee shall have a second or casting vote.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1015**Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 222(a)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

- F1016**10 Subject to paragraph 11, the decision of the appeal committee and the grounds on which it is made shall be communicated by the committee in writing to the relevant person, the governing body, the head teacher and the local education authority to whose area the pupil belongs within—
- (a) the period ending with the 17th school day after the day on which the appeal is lodged; or
- (b) if the governing body have determined a shorter period, that period.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1016**Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 222(a)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1017** 11 Where the governing body extend the period for the consideration of an appeal in accordance with paragraph 3(2), they shall (to the extent it appears to them to be necessary as a result of the extension of that period) extend the period within which the appeal committee are to communicate their decision.

**Textual Amendments**

**F1017**Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30** para. 222(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

- F1018** 12 Subject to paragraphs 2 to 11, all matters relating to the procedure on appeals shall be determined by the governing body.

**Textual Amendments**

**F1018**Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30** para. 222(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

- F1019** 13(1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), where joint arrangements for appeals have been made in accordance with paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 23 (content of articles of government), paragraphs 2 to 12 shall have effect in respect of appeals to committees established in accordance with the joint arrangements.
- (2) In the case of any appeal made in pursuance of the joint arrangements—
- (a) paragraphs 3, 4, 6, 10(b), 11 and 12 shall have effect as if for “the governing body” there were substituted “the governing body and the governing body of every other school which is a party to the arrangements, acting jointly”; and
  - (b) paragraphs 5(2) and 10 (except paragraph 10(b)) shall have effect as if for “the governing body” there were substituted “the governing body against whose decision the appeal is made”.

**Textual Amendments**

**F1019**Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30** para. 222(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*F1020 Power of Secretary of State to make amendments*

**Textual Amendments**

**F1020**Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30** para. 222(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

- F1021** 14 The Secretary of State may by order amend the preceding provisions of this Schedule.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F1021** Sch. 25A inserted (1.9.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 8(2), **Sch.1**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(4), **Sch. 1 Pt.IV** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. 2 Pt. II**); and **Sch. 1** of the amending Act is repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 222(a)**, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

## SCHEDULE 26

Section 323.

### MAKING OF ASSESSMENTS UNDER SECTION 323

#### *Introductory*

- 1 In this Schedule “assessment” means an assessment of a child’s educational needs under section 323.

#### *Medical and other advice*

- 2 (1) Regulations shall make provision as to the advice which a local education authority are to seek in making assessments.
- (2) Without prejudice to the generality of sub-paragraph (1), the regulations shall require the authority, except in such circumstances as may be prescribed, to seek medical, psychological and educational advice and such other advice as may be prescribed.

#### *Manner; and timing, of assessments, etc.*

- 3 (1) Regulations may make provision—
- (a) as to the manner in which assessments are to be conducted,
  - (b) requiring the local education authority, where, after conducting an assessment under section 323 of the educational needs of a child for whom a statement is maintained under section 324, they determine not to amend the statement, to serve on the parent of the child a notice giving the prescribed information, and
  - (c) in connection with such other matters relating to the making of assessments as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1)(b) does not apply to a determination made following the service of notice under [F1022 paragraph 2A] of Schedule 27 (amendment of statement by LEA) of a proposal to amend the statement.

[F1023] (3) Regulations may provide—

- (a) that where a local education authority are under a duty under section 323, 329 or 329A [F1024, or under regulations under sub-paragraph (1)(b), ] to serve any notice, the duty must be performed within the prescribed period,
- (b) that where a local education authority have served a notice under section 323(1) or 329A(3) on a child’s parent, they must decide within the prescribed period whether or not to make an assessment of the child’s educational needs,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) that where a request has been made to a local education authority under section 329(1), they must decide within the prescribed period whether or not to comply with the request, and
  - (d) that where a local education authority are under a duty to make an assessment, the duty must be performed within the prescribed period.
- (4) Provision made under sub-paragraph (3)—
- (a) may be subject to prescribed exceptions, and
  - (b) does not relieve the authority of the duty to serve a notice, or make a decision or assessment, which has not been served or made within the prescribed period.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1022** Words in Sch. 26 para. 3(2) substituted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 42(1), Sch. 8 para. 14(2) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

**F1023** Sch. 26 para. 3(3)(4) substituted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1), 43(4)(e), Sch. 8 para. 14(3) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

**F1024** Words in Sch. 26 para. 3(3)(a) inserted (8.1.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 174(2), 188(2) (with s. 174(4))

#### *Attendance at examinations*

- 4 (1) Where a local education authority [<sup>F1025</sup>are considering whether] to make an assessment, they may serve a notice on the parent of the child concerned requiring the child's attendance for examination in accordance with the provisions of the notice.
- (2) The parent of a child examined under this paragraph may be present at the examination if he so desires.
- (3) A notice under this paragraph shall—
- (a) state the purpose of the examination,
  - (b) state the time and place at which the examination will be held,
  - (c) name an officer of the authority from whom further information may be obtained,
  - (d) inform the parent that he may submit such information to the authority as he may wish, and
  - (e) inform the parent of his right to be present at the examination.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1025** Words in Sch. 26 para. 4(1) substituted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 42(1), Sch. 8 para. 11(2) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Offence*

- 5 (1) Any parent who fails without reasonable excuse to comply with any requirements of a notice served on him under paragraph 4 commits an offence if the notice relates to a child who is not over compulsory school age at the time stated in it as the time for holding the examination.
- (2) A person guilty of an offence under this paragraph is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 2 on the standard scale.

## SCHEDULE 27

Section 324.

### MAKING AND MAINTENANCE OF STATEMENTS UNDER SECTION 324

#### *Introductory*

- [<sup>F1026</sup>1] In this Schedule—
- “amendment notice” has the meaning given in paragraph 2A,
  - “statement” means a statement under section 324,
  - “periodic review” means a review conducted in accordance with section 328(5)(b), and
  - “re-assessment review” means a review conducted in accordance with section 328(5)(a).]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1026**Sch. 27 para. 1 substituted (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 2** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4; S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**)

#### *Copy of proposed statement*

- [<sup>F1027</sup>2] (1) Before making a statement, a local education authority shall serve on the parent of the child concerned a copy of the proposed statement.
- (2) But that is subject to sub-paragraphs (3) and (4).
- (3) The copy of the proposed statement shall not specify any prescribed matter.
- (4) The copy of the proposed statement shall not specify any matter in pursuance of section 324(4).]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1027**Sch. 27 paras. 2-2B substituted for Sch. 27 para. 2 (15.6.2001 for E. for certain purposes and otherwise 1.1.2002 and 8.12.2001 for W. for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 3** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, arts. 4, 5, **Sch. Pts. I, II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, arts. 4, 5, **Sch. Pts. I, II**)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Amendments to a statement*

- <sup>F1028</sup>2A(1) A local education authority shall not amend a statement except—
- (a) in compliance with an order of the Tribunal,
  - (b) as directed by the Secretary of State under section 442(4), or
  - (c) in accordance with the procedure laid down in this Schedule.
- (2) If, following a re-assessment review, a local education authority propose to amend a statement, they shall serve on the parent of the child concerned a copy of the proposed amended statement.
- (3) Sub-paragraphs (3) and (4) of paragraph 2 apply to a copy of a proposed amended statement served under sub-paragraph (2) as they apply to a copy of a proposed statement served under paragraph 2(1).
- (4) If, following a periodic review, a local education authority propose to amend a statement, they shall serve on the parent of the child concerned—
- (a) a copy of the existing statement, and
  - (b) an amendment notice.
- (5) If, at any other time, a local education authority propose to amend a statement, they shall proceed as if the proposed amendment were an amendment proposed after a periodic review.
- (6) An amendment notice is a notice in writing giving details of the amendments to the statement proposed by the authority.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1028**Sch. 27 paras. 2-2B substituted for Sch. 27 para. 2 (15.6.2001 for E. for certain purposes and otherwise 1.1.2002 and 8.12.2001 for W. for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 3** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, arts. 4, 5, Sch. Pts. I, II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, arts. 4, 5, Sch. Pts. I, II

### *Provision of additional information*

- <sup>F1029</sup>2B(1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies when a local education authority serve on a parent—
- (a) a copy of a proposed statement under paragraph 2,
  - (b) a copy of a proposed amended statement under paragraph 2A, or
  - (c) an amendment notice under paragraph 2A.
- (2) The local education authority shall also serve on the parent a written notice explaining (to the extent that they are applicable)—
- (a) the arrangements under paragraph 3,
  - (b) the effect of paragraph 4, and
  - (c) the right to appeal under section 326.
- (3) A notice under sub-paragraph (2) must contain such other information as may be prescribed.



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F1029**Sch. 27 paras. 2-2B substituted for Sch. 27 para. 2 (15.6.2001 for E. for certain purposes and otherwise 1.1.2002 and 8.12.2001 for W. for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 3** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, arts. 4, 5, **Sch. Pts. I, II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, **art. 4**); S.I. 2001/3992, arts. 4, 5, **Sch. Pts. I, II**

### *Choice of school*

- 3 (1) Every local education authority shall make arrangements for enabling [<sup>F1030</sup>a parent—
- (a) on whom a copy of a proposed statement has been served under paragraph 2,
  - (b) on whom a copy of a proposed amended statement has been served under paragraph 2A, or
  - (c) on whom an amendment notice has been served under paragraph 2A which contains a proposed amendment about —
    - (i) the type or name of a school or institution, or
    - (ii) the provision made for the child concerned under arrangements made under section 319,
- to be specified in the statement,] to express a preference as to [<sup>F1031</sup>the maintained school] at which he wishes education to be provided for his child and to give reasons for his preference.
- (2) Any such preference must be expressed or made within the period of 15 days beginning—
- (a) with the date on which the written notice mentioned in [<sup>F1032</sup>paragraph 2B] was served on the parent, or
  - (b) if a meeting has (or meetings have) been arranged under paragraph 4(1)(b) or (2), with the date fixed for that meeting (or the last of those meetings).
- (3) Where a local education authority make a statement in a case where the parent of the child concerned has expressed a preference in pursuance of such arrangements as to the school at which he wishes education to be provided for his child, they shall specify the name of that school in the statement unless—
- (a) the school is unsuitable to the child's age, ability or aptitude or to his special educational needs, or
  - (b) the attendance of the child at the school would be incompatible with the provision of efficient education for the children with whom he would be educated or the efficient use of resources.
- (4) <sup>F1033</sup> .....

### Textual Amendments

**F1030**Words in Sch. 27 para. 3(1) substituted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 4** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, **art. 5, Sch. Pt II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, **art. 4**); S.I. 2001/3992, **art. 5, Sch. Pt. II**

**F1031**Words in Sch. 27 para 3(1) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 186(2)(a)**(with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, **art. 2(1), Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1032** Words in Sch. 27 para 3(2) substituted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 5** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

**F1033** Sch. 27 para. 3(4) repealed (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 10, 42(6), Sch. 1 para. 6, Sch. 9 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C143** Sch. 27 para. 3 excluded (prosp.) by **Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (c. 41), ss. 36(5)(e)(10), 162** (with s. 159)

*Consultation on specifying name of school in statement*

- <sup>F1034</sup> (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies if a local education authority are considering—
- (a) specifying the name of a maintained school [<sup>F1035</sup>or maintained nursery school] in a statement, or
  - (b) amending a statement—
    - (i) if no school was specified in the statement before the amendment, so that a maintained school [<sup>F1035</sup>or maintained nursery school] will be specified in it,
    - (ii) if a school was specified in the statement before the amendment, so that a different school, which is a maintained school [<sup>F1035</sup> or maintained nursery school], will be specified in it.
- (2) The local education authority shall—
- (a) serve a copy of the proposed statement or amended statement, or of the existing statement and of the amendment notice, on each affected body, and
  - (b) consult each affected body.
- (3) “Affected body” means—
- (a) the governing body of any school which the local education authority are considering specifying; and
  - (b) if a school which the local education authority are considering specifying is maintained by another local education authority, that authority.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F1034** Sch. 27 para. 3A inserted (1.1.2002 (E.) 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10 **Sch. 1 para. 7** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614 art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

**F1035** Words in Sch. 27 para. 3A(1) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by **Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 21 para. 58(a)** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.

*Representations*

- 4 (1) A parent on whom a copy of a proposed statement has been served under paragraph 2 [<sup>F1036</sup>, or on whom a proposed amended statement or an amendment notice has been served under paragraph 2A,] may—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) make representations (or further representations) to the local education authority about the content of the [F1037 proposed statement or the statement as it will have effect if amended in the way proposed by the authority], and
  - (b) require the authority to arrange a meeting between him and an officer of the authority at which the [F1037 proposed statement or the statement as it will have effect if amended in the way proposed by the authority] can be discussed.
- (2) Where a parent, having attended a meeting arranged by a local education authority under sub-paragraph (1)(b) [F1038; in relation to—
  - (c) a proposed statement, or
  - (d) an amendment proposed following a re-assessment review,]disagrees with any part of the assessment in question, he may require the authority to arrange such meeting or meetings as they consider will enable him to discuss the relevant advice with the appropriate person or persons.
- (3) In this paragraph—

“relevant advice” means such of the advice given to the authority in connection with the assessment as they consider to be relevant to that part of the assessment with which the parent disagrees, and

“appropriate person” means the person who gave the relevant advice or any other person who, in the opinion of the authority, is the appropriate person to discuss it with the parent.
- (4) Any representations under sub-paragraph (1)(a) must be made within the period of 15 days beginning—
  - (a) with the date on which the written notice mentioned in [F1039 paragraph 2B] was served on the parent, or
  - (b) if a meeting has (or meetings have) been arranged under sub-paragraph (1) (b) or (2), with the date fixed for that meeting (or the last of those meetings).
- (5) A requirement under sub-paragraph (1)(b) must be made within the period of 15 days beginning with the date on which the written notice mentioned in [F1040 paragraph 2B] was served on the parent.
- (6) A requirement under sub-paragraph (2) must be made within the period of 15 days beginning with the date fixed for the meeting arranged under sub-paragraph (1)(b).

#### Textual Amendments

**F1036** Words in Sch. 27 para. 4(1) inserted (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 8(a)** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

**F1037** Words in Sch. 27 para. 4(1)(a)(b) substituted (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 8(b)** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614 art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

**F1038** Sch. 27 para. 4(2)(c)(d) inserted (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by virtue of 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para 9** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614 art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

**F1039** Words in Sch. 27 para. 4(4)(a) substituted (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 10** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F1040** Words in Sch. 27 para. 4(5) substituted (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 10** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

### *Making the statement*

- 5 (1) Where representations are made to a local education authority under paragraph 4(1)(a), the authority shall not make [<sup>F1041</sup>or amend] the statement until they have considered the representations and the period or the last of the periods allowed by paragraph 4 for making requirements or further representations has expired.
- (2) [<sup>F1042</sup>If a local education authority make a statement, it] may be in the form originally proposed (except as to the matters required to be excluded from the copy of the proposed statement) or in a form modified in the light of the representations.
- [<sup>F1043</sup>(2A) If a local education authority amend a statement following service of a proposed amended statement under paragraph 2A, the amended statement made may be in the form proposed or in a form modified in the light of the representations.
- (2B) If a local education authority amend a statement following service of an amendment notice, the amendments may be those proposed in the notice or amendments modified in the light of the representations.]
- [<sup>F1044</sup>(3) Regulations may provide that, where a local education authority are under a duty (subject to compliance with the preceding requirements of this Schedule) to make a statement, the duty to make the statement, or any step required to be taken for or in connection with the performance of the duty or the maintenance of the statement (including any step in relation to the amendment of the statement) must, subject to prescribed exceptions, be performed within the prescribed period.]
- (4) Such provision shall not relieve the authority of the duty to make a statement, or take any step, which has not been performed or taken within that period.

### **Textual Amendments**

**F1041** Words in Sch. 27 para. 5(1) inserted (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 11** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

**F1042** Words in Sch. 27 para. 5(2) inserted (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 12** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

**F1043** Sch. 27 para. 5(2A)(2B) inserted (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 13** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

**F1044** Sch. 27 para. 5(3) substituted (8.1.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), **ss. 174(3)(a), 188(2)** (with s. 174(4))

### *Service of statement*

- [<sup>F1045</sup>6 (1) Where a local education authority make or amend a statement they shall serve a copy of the statement, or the amended statement, on the parent of the child concerned.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) They shall, at the same time, give the parent written notice of his right to appeal under section 326(1) against—
- (a) the description in the statement of the authority's assessment of the child's special educational needs,
  - (b) the special educational provision specified in the statement (including the name of a school specified in the statement), or
  - (c) if no school is named in the statement, that fact.
- (3) A notice under sub-paragraph (2) must contain such other information as may be prescribed.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F1045**Sch. 27 para. 6 substituted (15.6.2001 for E. for certain purposes and otherwise 1.1.2002 and 8.12.2001 for W. for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, **Sch. 1 para. 14** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, arts. 4, 5, **Sch. Pts. I, II** (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, **art. 4**); S.I. 2001/3992, arts. 4, 5, **Sch. Pts. I, II**

#### *Keeping, disclosure and transfer of statements*

- 7 (1) Regulations may make provision as to the keeping and disclosure of statements.
- (2) Regulations may make provision, where a local education authority become responsible for a child for whom a statement is maintained by another authority, for the transfer of the statement to them and for Part IV to have effect as if the duty to maintain the transferred statement were their duty.

#### *Change of named school*

- 8 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies where—
- (a) the parent of a child for whom a statement is maintained which specifies the name of a school or institution asks the local education authority to substitute for that name the name of [F1046 a maintained school ] [F1047 or maintained nursery school] specified by the parent, and
  - (b) the request is not made less than 12 months after—
    - (i) an earlier request under this paragraph,
    - (ii) the service of a copy of the statement under paragraph 6,
    - (iii) [F1048 if the statement has been amended, the date when notice of the amendment is given under paragraph 10(3)(b), or]
    - (iv) if the parent has appealed to the Tribunal under section 326 or this paragraph, the date when the appeal is concluded,whichever is the later.
- (2) The local education authority shall comply with the request unless—
- (a) the school is unsuitable to the child's age, ability or aptitude or to his special educational needs, or
  - (b) the attendance of the child at the school would be incompatible with the provision of efficient education for the children with whom he would be educated or the efficient use of resources.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Where the local education authority determine not to comply with the request—
  - (a) they shall give [<sup>F1049</sup>notice in writing of that fact] to the parent of the child, and
  - (b) the parent of the child may appeal to the Tribunal against the determination.
- [<sup>F1050</sup>(3A) A notice under sub-paragraph (3)(a) must inform the parent of the right of appeal under sub-paragraph (3)(b) and contain such other information as may be prescribed.]
- (4) On the appeal the Tribunal may—
  - (a) dismiss the appeal, or
  - (b) order the local education authority to substitute for the name of the school or other institution specified in the statement the name of the school specified by the parent.
- (5) Regulations may provide that, where a local education authority are under a duty to comply with a request under this paragraph, the duty must, subject to prescribed exceptions, be performed within the prescribed period.
- (6) Such provision shall not relieve the authority of the duty to comply with such a request which has not been complied with within that period.

**Textual Amendments**

**F1046** Words in Sch. 27 para. 8(1)(a) substituted (1.9.1999) by [School Standards and Framework Act 1998 \(c. 31\), ss. 140\(1\)\(2\), 145\(3\), Sch. 30 para. 186\(3\)](#); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)

**F1047** Words in Sch. 27 para. 8(1)(a) inserted (1.9.2003 for E., 31.10.2005 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), s. 216\(4\), Sch. 21 para. 58\(b\)](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.

**F1048** Sch. 27 para. 8(1)(b)(iii) repealed (1.4.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by [2001 c. 10, ss. 10, 42\(6\), 43, Sch. 1 para. 15\(f\), Sch. 9 \(with s. 43\(13\)\)](#); S.I. 2002/74, [art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)

**F1049** Words in Sch. 27 para. 8(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by [2001 c. 10, ss. 42\(1\), 43, Sch. 8 para. 9\(1\) \(with s. 43\(13\)\)](#); S.I. 2002/74, [art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)

**F1050** Sch. 27 para. 8(3A) inserted (1.4.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by [2001 c. 10, ss. 42\(1\), 43, Sch. 8 para. 9\(2\) \(with s. 43\(13\)\)](#); S.I. 2002/74, [art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C144** Sch. 27 para. 8 excluded (prosp.) by [Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 \(c. 41\), ss. 36\(5\) \(e\)\(10\), 162 \(with s. 159\)](#)

*Procedure for amending or ceasing to maintain a statement*

- 9 (1) A local education authority may not <sup>F1051</sup> . . . cease to maintain, a statement except in accordance with paragraph <sup>F1051</sup> . . . 11.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply where the local education authority—
  - (a) cease to maintain a statement for a child who has ceased to be a child for whom they are responsible, [<sup>F1052</sup>or]
  - <sup>F1053</sup>(b) . . . . .
  - (c) are ordered to cease to maintain a statement under section 326(3)(c), <sup>F1054</sup> . . .
  - <sup>F1055</sup>(d) . . . . .

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F1051** Words in Sch. 27 para. 9(1) repealed (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 10, 42(6), Sch. 1 para. 16(g), Sch. 9 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F1052** Word in Sch. 27 para. 9(2)(a) inserted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 10, Sch. 1 para. 16(h)(i) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F1053** Sch. 27 para. 9(2)(b) omitted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by virtue of 2001 c. 10, s. 10, Sch. 1 para. 16(h)(ii) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II, (as amended by 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F1054** Word in Sch. 27 para. 9(2)(c) omitted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by virtue of 2001 c. 10, s. 10, Sch. 1 para. 16(h)(ii) (with s. 42(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F1055** Sch. 27 para. 9(2)(d) omitted (1.1.2002 (E.) and 1.4.2002 (W.)) by virtue of 2001 c. 10, s. 10, Sch. 1 para. 16(h)(ii) (with s. 42(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

**F1056** 10 . . . . .

#### Textual Amendments

- F1056** Sch. 27 para. 10 repealed (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 10, 42(6), Sch. 1 para. 17, Sch. 9 (with s. 42(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

- 11 (1) A local education authority may cease to maintain a statement only if it is no longer necessary to maintain it.
- (2) Where the local education authority determine to cease to maintain a statement—
- (a) they shall give [<sup>F1057</sup>notice in writing of that fact] to the parent of the child, and
- (b) the parent of the child may appeal to the Tribunal against the determination.
- [<sup>F1058</sup>(2A) A notice under sub-paragraph (2)(a) must inform the parent of the right of appeal under sub-paragraph (2)(b) and contain such other information as may be prescribed.]
- [<sup>F1059</sup>(2B) Where the local education authority determine to cease to maintain a statement following a periodic review or a re-assessment review, regulations may provide that a notice under sub-paragraph (2)(a) must be given within the prescribed period beginning with the date of the review.]
- (3) On an appeal under this paragraph the Tribunal may—
- (a) dismiss the appeal, or
- (b) order the local education authority to continue to maintain the statement in its existing form or with such amendments of—
- (i) the description in the statement of the authority’s assessment of the child’s special educational needs, or
- (ii) the special educational provision specified in the statement, and such other consequential amendments, as the Tribunal may determine.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) Except where the parent of the child appeals to the Tribunal under this paragraph, a local education authority may only cease to maintain a statement under this paragraph within the prescribed period beginning with the service of the notice under subparagraph (2).
- [<sup>F1060</sup>(5) A local education authority may not, under this paragraph, cease to maintain a statement if—
- (a) the parent of the child has appealed under this paragraph against the authority's determination to cease to maintain the statement, and
  - (b) the appeal has not been determined by the Tribunal or withdrawn.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1057** Words in Sch. 27 para. 11(2)(a) substituted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1), 43(4)(e), Sch. 8 para. 10(1) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F1058** Sch. 27 para. 11(2A) inserted (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, 1.1.2002 otherwise for E. and 1.4.2002 otherwise for W.) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 42(1), 43(4)(e), Sch. 8 para. 10(2) (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2002/74, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II
- F1059** Sch. 27 para. 11(2B) inserted (8.1.2007) by Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40), ss. 174(3)(b), 188(2) (with s. 174(4))
- F1060** Sch. 27 para. 11(5) inserted (1.1.2002 (E.), 1.4.2002 (W.)) by 2001 c. 10, s. 6 (with s. 42(13)); S.I. 2001/2217, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II (as amended by S.I. 2001/2614, art. 4); S.I. 2001/3992, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II

#### <sup>F1061</sup>SCHEDULE 28

#### Textual Amendments

- F1061** Sch. 28 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 187, Sch. 31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 6 para. 2, Sch. 7 paras. 2, 10); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

#### <sup>F1065</sup>SCHEDULE 29

#### Textual Amendments

- F1065** Sch. 29 repealed (1.3.1998) by 1997 c. 44, s. 57(4), Sch. 8; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F1066 SCHEDULE 30

**Textual Amendments**

F1066 Sch. 30 repealed and replaced (1.10.1997) by 1997 c. 44, ss. 27(5), 57(4), Schs. 5,8; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(3), Sch. 1 Pt. III

SCHEDULE 31

Section 375.

AGREED SYLLABUSES OF RELIGIOUS EDUCATION

*Duty to convene conference to reconsider agreed syllabus*

- 1 (1) Where the agreed syllabus for the time being adopted by a local education authority was adopted by them on or after 29th September 1988 but before 1st April 1994, they shall, within the period of five years beginning with the date on which they adopted the syllabus, convene a conference for the purpose of reconsidering the syllabus.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply where the authority have already convened such a conference on or after 1st April 1994 in pursuance of paragraph 12(3) of Schedule 5 to the <sup>M61</sup>Education Act 1944.

**Marginal Citations**

M61 1944 c. 31.

- 2 (1) A local education authority shall from time to time cause further conferences to be convened for the purpose of reconsidering any agreed syllabus for the time being adopted by them (whether adopted before, on or after 1st April 1994).
- (2) No such conference shall be convened later than the end of the period of five years beginning with the date (falling after 31st March 1994) on which—
- (a) the authority adopted the syllabus, or
- (b) the authority gave effect to a recommendation under paragraph 10(2) below (or under paragraph 13 of Schedule 5 to the Education Act 1944) that the syllabus should continue to be the agreed syllabus.
- 3 On receipt by a local education authority of written notification of any such requirement as is mentioned in section 391(3), the authority shall cause a conference to be convened for the purpose of reconsidering any agreed syllabus to which the requirement relates.

*Constitution of conference*

- 4 (1) A conference convened under this Schedule shall consist of such groups of persons (“committees”) appointed by the local education authority which convenes the conference as are required by sub-paragraph (2).

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Those committees are—
- (a) a committee of persons representing such Christian denominations and other religions and denominations of such religions as, in the opinion of the authority, will appropriately reflect the principal religious traditions in the area;
  - (b) except in the case of an area in Wales, a committee of persons representing the Church of England;
  - (c) a committee of persons representing such associations representing teachers as, in the opinion of the authority, ought to be represented, having regard to the circumstances of the area; and
  - (d) a committee of persons representing the authority.
- (3) Where a committee is required to be appointed by virtue of sub-paragraph (2)(b), the committee required to be appointed by virtue of sub-paragraph (2)(a) shall not include persons appointed to represent the Church of England.
- (4) The number of persons appointed under sub-paragraph (2)(a) to represent each denomination or religion required to be represented shall, so far as is consistent with the efficient discharge of the committee's functions, reflect broadly the proportionate strength of that denomination or religion in the area.
- 5 Any sub-committees appointed by the conference shall each include at least one member of each of the committees constituting the conference.
- 6 On any question to be decided by the conference or by any sub-committee of the conference, a single vote shall be given for each of the committees constituting the conference.
- 7 (1) Before appointing a person to represent any religion, denomination or associations as a member of a committee, the local education authority shall take all reasonable steps to assure themselves that he is representative of the religion, denomination or associations in question.
- (2) No proceedings under this Schedule shall be invalidated on the ground that a member of a committee did not represent the religion, denomination or associations which he was appointed to represent, unless it is shown that the authority failed to take the steps required by sub-paragraph (1).
- 8 A person appointed as a member of a committee—
- (a) may resign his membership, or
  - (b) may be withdrawn from membership by the local education authority if, in their opinion, he ceases to be representative of the religion, denomination or associations which he was appointed to represent or (as the case may be) of the authority.
- 9 Where a person resigns or is withdrawn from a committee, the local education authority shall appoint someone in his place in the same manner as that in which they made the original appointment.
- Reconsideration of agreed syllabus*
- 10 (1) This paragraph applies where a local education authority cause a conference to be convened for the purpose of reconsidering any agreed syllabus under any of paragraphs 1 to 3.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) If—
- (a) the conference—
    - (i) unanimously recommend that the existing syllabus should continue to be the agreed syllabus, or
    - (ii) unanimously recommend a new syllabus to be adopted in substitution for the existing syllabus, and
  - (b) it appears to the local education authority that the syllabus or, as the case may be, the new syllabus, reflects the fact that the religious traditions in Great Britain are in the main Christian while taking account of the teaching and practices of the other principal religions represented in Great Britain,
- the authority may give effect to the recommendation.
- (3) If—
- (a) the authority report to the Secretary of State that the conference are unable to reach unanimous agreement, or
  - (b) the conference unanimously recommend that the existing syllabus should continue to be the agreed syllabus but the local education authority consider that sub-paragraph (2)(b) prevents them from giving effect to the recommendation, or
  - (c) it appears to the Secretary of State that the authority have failed to exercise their power under sub-paragraph (2) to give effect to the unanimous recommendation of the conference,
- the Secretary of State shall proceed in accordance with paragraph 12.

F1067 11 . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

F1067 Sch. 31 para. 11 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 188, Sch.31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

*Preparation of new syllabus by appointed body*

- 12 (1) Where required by paragraph 10 to proceed in accordance with this paragraph, the Secretary of State shall appoint a body of persons having experience in religious education to prepare a syllabus of religious education.
- (2) The appointed body shall, so far as is practicable, be of a representative character which is the same as that required by paragraph 4 in the case of a conference.
- 13 (1) The appointed body shall—
- (a) give the local education authority, the conference and every committee constituting the conference an opportunity of making representations to it;
  - (b) after considering any such representations made to it, prepare a syllabus of religious education; and
  - (c) transmit a copy of that syllabus to the authority and to the Secretary of State.
- (2) Subject to sub-paragraph (1)(a), the appointed body may conduct its proceedings in such manner as it thinks fit.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 14 The syllabus prepared by the appointed body shall be deemed to be the agreed syllabus adopted for use in the schools for which, or for the class or description of pupils for which, it was prepared—
  - (a) as from such date as the Secretary of State may direct, and
  - (b) until a new syllabus is adopted for use in those schools, or for pupils of that class or description, in accordance with this Schedule.

*Special provisions applicable where order under section 27(1)(b) applies*

F1068 15 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
 F1068 Sch. 31 para. 15 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 188, **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

F1069 SCHEDULE 32

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
 F1069 Sch. 32 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(a), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and with savings in S.I. 1999/1016, art. 6, **Sch. 4 para. 6**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

F1070 SCHEDULE 33

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
 F1070 Sch. 33 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(b), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and subject to savings in S.I. 1999/1016, art. 6, **Sch. 4 para. 8** and S.I. 1999/2323, Sch. 6 paras. 2, 5); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

F1071 SCHEDULE 33A

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F1071** Sch. 33A repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(c), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and with savings in S.I. 1999/1016, art. 6, **Sch. 4 para. 8**); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

**F1091** SCHEDULE 33B

**Textual Amendments**

**F1091** Sch. 33B repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(d), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6) and with savings in S.I. 1999/1016, art. 6, Sch. 4 paras. 2, 8); S.I. 1999/1016, art. 2(3), **Sch. 3**

**F1100** SCHEDULE 34

Section 476.

**Textual Amendments**

**F1100** Sch. 34 repealed (1.9.2003 for E., 1.1.2004 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4; S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III

**F1101** SCHEDULE 35

**Textual Amendments**

**F1101** Sch. 35 repealed (1.9.1997) by 1997 c. 59, ss. 1(1)(c), 6(3), 7(3)(a), **Sch. Pt. I** (with s. 1(3))

**F1102** SCHEDULE 35A

ACADEMIES: LAND

**Textual Amendments**

**F1102** Sch. 35A inserted (26.7.2002) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), ss. 65(3), 216(2), **Sch. 7 para. 1** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2002/2002, art. 2

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Transfer schemes*

- 1 (1) The Secretary of State may make a scheme in relation to land if these requirements are met—
  - (a) a local education authority holds a freehold or leasehold interest in the land when the scheme is made;
  - (b) at any time in the period of eight years ending with the day on which the scheme is made the land was used wholly or mainly for the purposes of a county school or community school;
  - (c) at the time the scheme is made the land is no longer used as mentioned in paragraph (b) or the Secretary of State thinks it is about to be no longer so used;
  - (d) before making the scheme the Secretary of State consulted the authority.
- (2) The Secretary of State may also make a scheme in relation to land if these requirements are met—
  - (a) a local education authority holds a freehold or leasehold interest in the land when the scheme is made;
  - (b) the land forms the whole or part of a site specified in a notice [<sup>F1103</sup>published under section 7 of the Education and Inspections Act 2006 (invitation for proposals for establishment of new schools) as a possible site for a new school] ;
  - (c) before making the scheme, the Secretary of State consulted the authority.
- (3) These requirements must be met as regards a scheme under sub-paragraph (1) or (2)
  - (a) the scheme must provide for a transfer of the authority's interest in the land or in such part of it as is specified in the scheme;
  - (b) the transfer must be to a person (the transferee) who is specified in the scheme and is concerned with the running of an Academy;
  - (c) the transfer must be made to the transferee for the purposes of the Academy;
  - (d) in the case of a scheme under sub-paragraph (2), the Academy must have been the subject of proposals [<sup>F1104</sup>published under section 7 of the Education and Inspections Act 2006] ;
  - (e) the scheme must provide for the transfer to the transferee of any right or liability held by the authority as holder of the interest in the land or specified part concerned.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3) the reference to a right or liability—
  - (a) includes a reference to a right or liability as a trustee, but
  - (b) excludes a reference to a liability in respect of the principal of or interest on a loan.
- (5) A scheme may include such supplementary, incidental, consequential or transitional provisions as the Secretary of State thinks are appropriate.
- (6) A scheme must be so expressed that it does not come into force while the land concerned is used as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b).
- (7) A scheme comes into force—
  - (a) on the day it specifies for it to come into force, or
  - (b) on the day it otherwise identifies as the day for it to come into force.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) When a scheme comes into force it has effect to transfer (in accordance with its provisions) the interests, rights and liabilities to which it applies.
- (9) A transfer made by virtue of a scheme is binding on all persons (as well as on the authority and the transferee) even if, apart from this sub-paragraph, it would have required the consent or concurrence of any person.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1103** Words in Sch. 35A para. 1(2)(b) substituted (25.5.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), [Sch. 3 para. 12\(2\)](#); S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)

**F1104** Words in Sch. 35A para. 1(3)(d) substituted (25.5.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), [Sch. 3 para. 12\(3\)](#); S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)

#### *Restriction on disposal*

- 2 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies if—
    - (a) a freehold or leasehold interest in land is held by a local education authority,
    - (b) the authority proposes to make a disposal in respect of the interest, or to enter into a contract to make a disposal in respect of it, or to grant an option to make an acquisition in respect of it, and
    - (c) at any time in the period of eight years ending with the day on which the disposal, contract or option is proposed to be made, entered into or granted, the land was used wholly or mainly for the purposes of a county school or community school.
  - (2) Unless the Secretary of State consents, the authority must not make the disposal or enter into the contract or grant the option.
  - (3) Sub-paragraph (2) does not apply to a disposal made in pursuance of a contract made, or option granted, before the coming into force of this paragraph.
  - (4) Sub-paragraph (2) does not apply to—
    - (a) a disposal in favour of a person for the purposes of an Academy and for no consideration;
    - (b) a contract to make such a disposal;
    - (c) a grant of an option for a person to make an acquisition for the purposes of an Academy and for no consideration.
  - (5) A disposal or contract or grant is not invalid by reason only that it is made in contravention of sub-paragraph (2).
  - (6) A person acquiring an interest in land or entering into a contract to acquire it is not to be concerned to enquire whether consent required by sub-paragraph (2) has been given.
- 3 (1) This paragraph applies if an authority makes a disposal or enters into a contract or grants an option in contravention of paragraph 2(2).
  - (2) In the case of a grant of an option, the Secretary of State may by notice served on the option holder repudiate the option at any time before it is exercised.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In the case of a contract to make a disposal in respect of an interest, the Secretary of State may by notice served on the other party to the contract repudiate it at any time before a conveyance of the interest is executed.
  - (4) A repudiation under sub-paragraph (2) or (3) has effect—
    - (a) when the notice is served, and
    - (b) as if the repudiation were made by the authority.
  - (5) In the case of a disposal in respect of an interest (whether or not in pursuance of an option or contract falling within sub-paragraph (2) or (3)) the Secretary of State may purchase the interest concerned compulsorily.
  - (6) The Acquisition of Land Act 1981 (c. 67) is to apply in relation to the compulsory purchase of an interest under sub-paragraph (5).
  - (7) On completion of a compulsory purchase of an interest under sub-paragraph (5) the Secretary of State must transfer it to a person concerned with the running of an Academy.
  - (8) If the Secretary of State acquires an interest by compulsory purchase under sub-paragraph (5) he is entitled to recover from the authority an amount equal to the aggregate of—
    - (a) the compensation agreed or awarded in respect of the purchase,
    - (b) any interest payable by him in respect of the compensation, and
    - (c) the costs and expenses incurred by him in connection with the making of the compulsory purchase order.
  - (9) The authority must provide the Secretary of State with such information as he may require it to provide in connection with a compulsory purchase under sub-paragraph (5).
- 4 (1) For the purposes of paragraphs 2 and 3—
- (a) references to a disposal in respect of an interest are to a disposal of the whole interest or of a lesser interest;
  - (b) references to an acquisition in respect of an interest are to an acquisition of the whole interest or of a lesser interest.
- (2) If the disposal referred to in paragraph 3(3) or (5) is a disposal of a lesser interest, the reference there to the interest concerned is to the lesser interest.

#### *Restriction on appropriation*

- 5 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies if—
- (a) a freehold or leasehold interest in land is held by a local education authority,
  - (b) the authority proposes to make an appropriation of the land under section 122 of the Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70), and
  - (c) at any time in the period of eight years ending with the day on which the appropriation is proposed to be made the land was used wholly or mainly for the purposes of a county school or community school.
- (2) Unless the Secretary of State consents, the authority must not make the appropriation.
- 6 (1) This paragraph applies if an authority makes an appropriation in contravention of paragraph 5(2).



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The Secretary of State may purchase the interest concerned compulsorily.
- (3) Paragraph 3(6) to (9) apply to a compulsory purchase of an interest under sub-paragraph (2) above as they apply to a compulsory purchase of an interest under paragraph 3(5).

#### *Duty to inform*

- 7 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies if—
  - (a) a freehold or leasehold interest in land is held by a local education authority,
  - (b) the authority proposes to change the use of the land in such a way that (were the change made) the land would cease to be capable of use wholly or mainly for the purposes of a school, and
  - (c) at any time in the period of eight years ending with the date of the proposed change of use the land was used wholly or mainly for the purposes of a county school or community school.
- (2) The authority must inform the Secretary of State of the proposal.

#### *Former Academies*

- 8 (1) This paragraph applies if—
  - (a) a freehold or leasehold interest in land is transferred from a local education authority on or after 28th July 2000,
  - (b) the transfer is made to a person for the purposes of an Academy, and
  - (c) the first or the second condition set out below is satisfied.
- (2) The first condition is that—
  - (a) the school concerned ceases to be an Academy, and
  - (b) immediately before the school ceases to be an Academy the interest is held by a person for the purposes of the Academy.
- (3) The second condition is that, although the school concerned continues to be an Academy, the interest ceases to be held for the purposes of the Academy.
- (4) This paragraph applies whether or not the transfer is made by virtue of a scheme under paragraph 1.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (2) applies whether or not, on the school ceasing to be an Academy, it simultaneously ceases to function as a school.
- (6) The Secretary of State may make a scheme providing for the transfer of the interest—
  - (a) from the person holding it;
  - (b) to the authority from which the transfer mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) was made.
- (7) A scheme may include such supplementary, incidental, consequential or transitional provisions as the Secretary of State thinks are appropriate.
- (8) A scheme comes into force on the day it specifies for it to come into force.
- (9) When a scheme comes into force it has effect to transfer (in accordance with its provisions) the interest to which it applies.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (10) A transfer made by virtue of a scheme is binding on all persons (as well as on the authority and the transferee) even if, apart from this sub-paragraph, it would have required the consent or concurrence of any person.

*Disapplication of rule against perpetuities*

- 9       Where—
- (a) a freehold or leasehold interest in land is transferred for no consideration from a local authority to a person for the purposes of an Academy (whether or not by virtue of a scheme under paragraph 1), and
  - (b) at any time on or after the day on which this Schedule comes into force the authority is granted an option to make a re-acquisition of the interest (subject to whatever conditions),
- the rule against perpetuities does not apply to the option.

*Other Acts*

- 10       (1) Where a lease is granted by or transferred from a local authority to a person for the purposes of an Academy on or after the day on which this Schedule comes into force, section 153 of the Law of Property Act 1925 (c.20) (enlargement of leases granted for no rent etc) does not apply to permit that person to enlarge the term under the lease.
- (2) Section 123(2) of the Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70) (disposal for consideration less than the best reasonably obtainable) does not apply to a disposal to a person for the purposes of an Academy.
- (3) Section 123(2A) of that Act (disposal of open space requires certain procedures) does not apply to a disposal which is made—
- (a) to a person for the purposes of an Academy, and
  - (b) for no consideration.
- (4) Section 77(1) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31) (restriction on disposal of playing fields) does not apply to a disposal which is made—
- (a) by a local authority (within the meaning of that section) to a person for the purposes of an Academy, and
  - (b) for no consideration.

*Regulations*

- 11       Regulations under this Schedule may in particular include—
- (a) provision requiring a person to be appointed by the Secretary of State in connection with the proposed making of a scheme under paragraph 1;
  - (b) provision requiring the appointed person to identify the interests, rights and liabilities to be the subject of a scheme under paragraph 1;
  - (c) provision requiring the authority concerned to provide the appointed person with such documents as he may require in order to identify the interests, rights and liabilities to be the subject of a scheme under paragraph 1;
  - (d) provision requiring an authority whose interest is (or is to be) transferred by virtue of a scheme under paragraph 1 to execute instruments and deliver certificates for the purposes of the enactments relating to registered land;

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (e) provision treating such an authority as having given acknowledgement in writing of the right to production of documents;
- (f) provision that consent under paragraph 2 is to be sought in a specified way;
- (g) provision that information is to be given under paragraph 7 in a specified way.

#### *Class consents*

- 12 For the purposes of paragraphs 2(2) and 5(2), the consent of the Secretary of State—
- (a) may be given in relation to a particular case or class of case, and
  - (b) may be given subject to conditions.

#### *Interpretation*

- 13 A dwelling-house used by an authority for occupation by a person employed to work at a school is to be treated for the purposes of this Schedule as used for the purposes of the school.]

## [<sup>F1105</sup>SCHEDULE 35B

Section 508B

### MEANING OF “ELIGIBLE CHILD” FOR PURPOSES OF SECTION 508B

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F1105** Sch. 35B inserted (1.9.2007 for the insertion of Sch. 35B para. 1 for specified purposes and paras. 2-10, 14, 15 for all purposes, 1.9.2008 in so far as not already in force) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006](#) (c. 40), s. 188(3), [Sch. 8](#); S.I. 2007/1801, art. 4(k); S.I. 2008/1971, art. 2(b)

- 1 For the purposes of section 508B (travel arrangements for eligible children) an “eligible child” means a child who falls within any of paragraphs 2 to 7 or 9 to 13.

#### *Children with special educational needs, a disability or mobility problems*

- 2 A child falls within this paragraph if—
- (a) he is of compulsory school age and is any of the following—
    - a child with special educational needs;
    - a disabled child;
    - a child with mobility problems,
  - (b) he is a registered pupil at a qualifying school which is within walking distance of his home,
  - (c) no suitable arrangements have been made by the local education authority for enabling him to become a registered pupil at a qualifying school nearer to his home, and
  - (d) having regard to whichever of the following are relevant—
    - his special educational needs;
    - his disability;
    - his mobility problems,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

he cannot reasonably be expected to walk to the school mentioned in paragraph (b).

- 3 A child falls within this paragraph if—
- (a) he is of compulsory school age and is any of the following—
    - a child with special educational needs;
    - a disabled child;
    - a child with mobility problems,
  - (b) he is receiving education at a place other than a school by virtue of arrangements made in pursuance of section 19(1), and
  - (c) having regard to whichever of the following are relevant—
    - his special educational needs;
    - his disability;
    - his mobility problems,
- he cannot reasonably be expected to walk to that place.

*Children who cannot reasonably be expected to walk because of nature of routes*

- 4 A child falls within this paragraph if—
- (a) he is of compulsory school age and is a registered pupil at a qualifying school which is within walking distance of his home,
  - (b) no suitable arrangements have been made by the local education authority for enabling him to become a registered pupil at a qualifying school nearer to his home, and
  - (c) having regard to the nature of the routes which he could reasonably be expected to take, he cannot reasonably be expected to walk to the school mentioned in paragraph (a).
- 5 A child falls within this paragraph if—
- (a) he is of compulsory school age and is receiving education at a place other than a school by virtue of arrangements made in pursuance of section 19(1), and
  - (b) having regard to the nature of the routes which he could reasonably be expected to take, he cannot reasonably be expected to walk to that place.

*Children outside walking distance where no suitable alternative arrangements made*

- 6 A child falls within this paragraph if—
- (a) he is of compulsory school age and is a registered pupil at a qualifying school which is not within walking distance of his home,
  - (b) no suitable arrangements have been made by the local education authority for boarding accommodation for him at or near the school, and
  - (c) no suitable arrangements have been made by the local education authority for enabling him to become a registered pupil at a qualifying school nearer to his home.
- 7 A child falls within this paragraph if—
- (a) he is of compulsory school age and is receiving education at a place other than a school by virtue of arrangements made in pursuance of section 19(1),
  - (b) that place is not within walking distance of his home,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) no suitable arrangements have been made by the local education authority for boarding accommodation for him at or near that place, and
- (d) no suitable arrangements have been made by the local education authority for enabling him to become a registered pupil at a qualifying school nearer to his home.

8 (1) Where—

- (a) a child of compulsory school age has been excluded from a relevant school,
- (b) he remains for the time being a registered pupil at the school, and
- (c) he is required by the appropriate authority for the school to attend at a place outside the school premises for the purpose of receiving any instruction or training,

paragraph 6 has effect as if the place at which the child is required to attend were a qualifying school and the child were a registered pupil at that school (and not at the school mentioned in paragraph (b)).

(2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)—

- (a) “relevant school” and “appropriate authority” have the same meaning as in section 444ZA (application of section 444 to alternative educational provision), and
- (b) subsection (3) of that section applies in relation to that sub-paragraph as it applies in relation to subsection (2) of that section.

*Children entitled to free school meals etc*

9 A child falls within this paragraph if—

- (a) he has attained the age of 8 but not the age of 11,
- (b) he is a registered pupil at a qualifying school which is more than two miles from his home,
- (c) no suitable arrangements have been made by the local education authority for enabling him to become a registered pupil at a qualifying school nearer to his home, and
- (d) the appropriate condition is met in relation to him.

10 A child falls within this paragraph if—

- (a) he has attained the age of 8 but not the age of 11,
- (b) he is receiving education at a place other than a school by virtue of arrangements made in pursuance of section 19(1),
- (c) that place is more than two miles from his home, and
- (d) the appropriate condition is met in relation to him.

11 A child falls within this paragraph if—

- (a) he has attained the age of 11,
- (b) he is a registered pupil at a qualifying school which is more than two miles, but not more than six miles, from his home,
- (c) there are not three or more suitable qualifying schools which are nearer to his home, and
- (d) the appropriate condition is met in relation to him.

12 A child falls within this paragraph if—

- (a) he has attained the age of 11,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) he is a registered pupil at a qualifying school which is more than two miles, but not more than fifteen miles, from his home,
  - (c) his parent has expressed a wish, based on the parent's religion or belief, for him to be provided with education at that school,
  - (d) having regard to the religion or belief on which the parent's wish is based, there is no suitable qualifying school which is nearer to the child's home, and
  - (e) the appropriate condition is met in relation to him.
- 13 A child falls within this paragraph if—
- (a) he has attained the age of 11,
  - (b) he is receiving education at a place other than a school by virtue of arrangements made in pursuance of section 19(1),
  - (c) that place is more than two miles, but not more than six miles, from his home, and
  - (d) the appropriate condition is met in relation to him.
- 14 (1) For the purposes of paragraphs 9 to 13, the appropriate condition is met in relation to a child if condition A or condition B is met.
- (2) Condition A is met if the child is within section 512ZB(4) (provision of free school lunches and milk).
- (3) Condition B is met if—
- (a) a parent of the child, with whom the child is ordinarily resident, is a person to whom working tax credit is awarded, and
  - (b) the award is at the rate which is the maximum rate for the parent's case or, in the case of an award to him jointly with another, at the rate which is the maximum rate for their case.

*Meaning of “qualifying school” etc*

- 15 (1) The definitions in sub-paragraphs (2) to (5) apply for the purposes of this Schedule.
- (2) “Qualifying school” in relation to a child means—
- (a) a community, foundation or voluntary school,
  - (b) a community or foundation special school,
  - (c) a school approved under section 342 (non-maintained special schools),
  - (d) a pupil referral unit,
  - (e) a maintained nursery school, or
  - (f) a city technology college, a city college for the technology of the arts or an Academy.
- (3) In relation to a child with special educational needs, an independent school, other than a college or Academy falling within sub-paragraph (2)(f), is also a “qualifying school” if—
- (a) it is the only school named in the statement maintained for the child under section 324, or
  - (b) it is one of two or more schools named in that statement and of those schools it is the nearer or nearest to the child's home.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) “Disabled child” means a child who has a disability for the purposes of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995, and “disability” is to be construed accordingly.
- (5) “Walking distance” has the meaning given by section 444(5).
- (6) “Religion” and “belief” are to be read in accordance with section 509AD(3).
- (7) In the case of a child who is a registered pupil at both a pupil referral unit and at a school other than a unit, references in this Schedule to the school at which he is a registered pupil are to be read as references to the unit.]

## [<sup>F1106</sup>SCHEDULE 35C

Section 508E

### SCHOOL TRAVEL SCHEMES

#### Textual Amendments

**F1106**Sch. 35C inserted (1.4.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), [Sch. 9](#); [S.I. 2007/935](#), art. 5(dd)

#### *Power to make scheme*

- 1 (1) A local education authority in England may make a school travel scheme for their area.
- (2) Before making a school travel scheme, a local education authority must consult such persons as the authority consider appropriate.

#### *Arrangements to be included in scheme*

- 2 (1) A school travel scheme must set out (in general terms) what arrangements in connection with the attendance of children in the authority's area receiving education—
  - (a) at schools,
  - (b) at any institution within the further education sector, or
  - (c) at any other place by virtue of arrangements made in pursuance of section 19(1),the scheme authority consider it appropriate to be made in relation to travel to and from such places.
- (2) Those arrangements are to be either or both of the following—
  - (a) arrangements to be made by the authority;
  - (b) arrangements to be made by any other persons.
- (3) A school travel scheme may include travel arrangements of any description and may, in particular, include—
  - (a) arrangements for the provision of transport;
  - (b) any of the following arrangements only if made with the relevant parental consent—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) arrangements for the provision of one or more persons to escort a child (whether alone or together with other children) when travelling to or from any of the places mentioned in any of paragraphs (a) to (c) of sub-paragraph (1);
  - (ii) arrangements for the payment of the whole or any part of a person's reasonable travelling expenses;
  - (iii) arrangements for the payment of allowances in respect of the use of particular modes of travel;
  - (c) arrangements to facilitate or promote the use of particular modes of travel.
- (4) The reference in sub-paragraph (3) to the relevant parental consent is to the consent of a parent of each child in relation to whom the arrangements in question are made.
- (5) A school travel scheme must require that if any arrangements set out in the scheme involve arrangements to be made by any person other than the scheme authority and those arrangements—
- (a) are not made by that person or by any other persons, or
  - (b) are so made but are not given effect to in compliance with the requirements of the scheme,
- the scheme authority must make suitable alternative arrangements.

*Travel arrangements for “eligible children”*

- 3 (1) A school travel scheme must require that, in the case of an eligible child in the scheme authority's area to whom sub-paragraph (2) applies, the authority must make such travel arrangements as they consider necessary in order to secure that suitable home to school travel arrangements, for the purpose of facilitating the child's attendance at the relevant educational establishment in relation to him, are made in relation to the child.
- (2) This sub-paragraph applies to an eligible child if—
- (a) no travel arrangements relating to travel in either direction between his home and the relevant educational establishment in relation to him, or in both directions, are provided in relation to him by any person who is not the scheme authority, or
  - (b) such travel arrangements are provided in relation to him by any person who is not the scheme authority but those arrangements, taken together with any other such travel arrangements which are so provided, do not provide suitable home to school travel arrangements for the purpose of facilitating his attendance at the relevant educational establishment in relation to him.
- (3) “Home to school travel arrangements”, in relation to an eligible child, are travel arrangements relating to travel in both directions between the child's home and the relevant educational establishment in question in relation to that child.
- (4) “Travel arrangements”, in relation to an eligible child, are travel arrangements of any description and include—
- (a) arrangements for the provision of transport, and
  - (b) any of the following arrangements only if they are made with the consent of a parent of the child—
    - (i) arrangements for the provision of one or more persons to escort the child (whether alone or together with other children) when travelling



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- to or from the relevant educational establishment in relation to the child;
- (ii) arrangements for the payment of the whole or any part of a person's reasonable travelling expenses;
  - (iii) arrangements for the payment of allowances in respect of the use of particular modes of travel.
- (5) “Travel arrangements”, in relation to an eligible child, include travel arrangements of any description made by any parent of the child only if those arrangements are made by the parent voluntarily.
- (6) Regulations may modify sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) to provide for their application in cases where there is more than one relevant educational establishment in relation to a child.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C146** Sch. 35C para. 3(1)(2) modified (E.) (1.6.2007) by [The School Travel \(Pupils with Dual Registration\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1367\)](#), regs. 1(2)(a), 2

- 4 (1) For the purposes of paragraph 3, an “eligible child” is a child who falls within any of the following paragraphs of Schedule 35B—
- (a) paragraph 2 or 3 (children of compulsory school age with special educational needs, a disability or mobility problems);
  - (b) paragraph 4 or 5 (children of compulsory school age who cannot reasonably be expected to walk because of the nature of the routes);
  - (c) paragraph 6 or 7 (children of compulsory school age who live outside walking distance and for whom no suitable alternative arrangements are made);
  - (d) paragraph 9, 10, 11, 12 or 13 (children aged 8 or over who are entitled to free school meals etc).
- (2) References in paragraph 3 to the “relevant educational establishment”, in relation to an eligible child, are references to—
- (a) in the case of a child who is an eligible child by virtue of falling within any of paragraphs 2, 4, 6, 9, 11 and 12 of Schedule 35B, the qualifying school at which the child is a registered pupil referred to in the paragraph in question, and
  - (b) in the case of a child who is an eligible child by virtue of falling within any of paragraphs 3, 5, 7, 10 and 13 of Schedule 35B, the place other than a school, where the child is receiving education by virtue of arrangements made in pursuance of section 19(1), referred to in the paragraph in question.

*Charges*

- 5 (1) A school travel scheme must set out the policy applicable to charging in relation to anything provided in pursuance of the scheme.
- (2) The policy to be set out under sub-paragraph (1) must include provision to the effect that anything provided in pursuance of the scheme for a protected child is provided free of charge.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The policy to be set out under sub-paragraph (1) must include provision to the effect mentioned in sub-paragraph (3) of paragraph 7 in relation to any child falling within sub-paragraph (1) or (2) of that paragraph.
- 6 (1) For the purposes of paragraph 5, a “protected child” is a child of compulsory school age in the scheme authority's area who falls within any of sub-paragraphs (2) to (4).
- (2) A child falls within this sub-paragraph if he is a child falling within any of the following paragraphs of Schedule 35B—
- (a) paragraph 2 or 3 (children of compulsory school age with special educational needs, a disability or mobility problems);
  - (b) paragraph 4 or 5 (children of compulsory school age who cannot reasonably be expected to walk because of nature of routes).
- (3) A child falls within this sub-paragraph if he is within section 512ZB(4) (provision of free school lunches and milk).
- (4) A child falls within this sub-paragraph if—
- (a) a parent of the child, with whom the child is ordinarily resident, is a person to whom working tax credit is awarded, and
  - (b) the award is at the rate which is the maximum rate for the parent's case or, in the case of an award to him jointly with another, at the rate which is the maximum rate for their case.
- 7 (1) For the purposes of paragraph 5(3), a child falls within this sub-paragraph if—
- (a) he is of compulsory school age and is any of the following—  
a child with special educational needs;  
a disabled child;  
a child with mobility problems,
  - (b) he is a registered pupil at a qualifying school which is not within walking distance of his home, and
  - (c) no suitable arrangements have been made by the local education authority for enabling him to become a registered pupil at a qualifying school nearer to his home.
- (2) For the purposes of paragraph 5(3), a child falls within this sub-paragraph if—
- (a) he is of compulsory school age and is any of the following—  
a child with special educational needs;  
a disabled child;  
a child with mobility problems,
  - (b) he is receiving education at a place other than a school by virtue of arrangements made in pursuance of section 19(1), and
  - (c) that place is not within walking distance of his home.
- (3) The effect referred to in paragraph 5(3) is that the amount payable in respect of anything provided in pursuance of the scheme for a child falling within sub-paragraph (1) or (2) is not to exceed the amount (if any) which would be payable under the scheme if—
- (a) he were a child who is not a child with special educational needs, a disabled child or a child with mobility problems,
  - (b) in the case of a child falling within sub-paragraph (1), he were registered as a pupil at his nearest qualifying school, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) he took full advantage of any arrangements under the scheme for the provision of transport for persons of his description.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3)(b), the reference to the child's nearest qualifying school is to whichever of the following is the nearest to his home to provide education for persons of his age who are not children with special educational needs, disabled children or children with mobility problems—
- (a) a community school,
  - (b) a foundation school,
  - (c) a voluntary school,
  - (d) an Academy,
  - (e) a city technology college, and
  - (f) a city college for the technology of the arts.
- 8 Any sum payable in respect of a charge for anything provided by the scheme authority in pursuance of arrangements made by that authority in pursuance of a school travel scheme is to be recoverable summarily as a civil debt.
- 9 (1) This paragraph applies if a school travel scheme will give rise to any need to incur expenditure in order for a child to take advantage of anything provided for him in pursuance of the scheme.
- (2) The scheme must include provision for any expenditure that needs to be incurred for the purpose mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) in the case of a protected child to be met by the scheme authority.
- (3) “Protected child” has the meaning given for the purposes of paragraph 5.

#### *Commencement of scheme*

- 10 (1) A school travel scheme is not to come into force unless approved by the Secretary of State.
- (2) A school travel scheme which has been approved by the Secretary of State is to come into force in accordance with directions given by the Secretary of State.
- (3) The earliest date on which a school travel scheme may come into force is 31 August 2007.

#### *Amendment or revocation of scheme*

- 11 (1) The scheme authority may amend or revoke a school travel scheme.
- (2) Before amending a school travel scheme, the scheme authority must consult such persons as they consider appropriate.
- (3) The power of amendment under sub-paragraph (1) is exercisable only with the consent of the Secretary of State.
- (4) The Secretary of State may consent to the exercise of the power of amendment under sub-paragraph (1) on an application by the scheme authority specifying the proposed exercise of the power.
- (5) If on an application under sub-paragraph (4) the Secretary of State consents to the exercise of the power of amendment under sub-paragraph (1), the scheme authority must exercise the power accordingly.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) Any amendment under this paragraph is to come into force in accordance with directions given by the Secretary of State.

*Provision of information*

- 12 (1) The scheme authority must—
- (a) make such reports and returns to the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) compile and give to the Secretary of State such information,
- as the Secretary of State may require for any of the purposes mentioned in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) Those purposes are—
- (a) the purpose of monitoring the operation or effect of a school travel scheme approved under this Schedule;
  - (b) the purpose of preparing or publishing an evaluation under section 80 of the Education and Inspections Act 2006.

*Guidance*

- 13 (1) The Secretary of State must issue, and may from time to time revise, guidance as to the matters which he will take into account in exercising his power under paragraph 10(1) or 11(3).
- (2) Before issuing or revising guidance under sub-paragraph (1), the Secretary of State must consult such persons as he considers appropriate.

*Interpretation*

- 14 In this Schedule—
- “disabled child” means a child who has a disability for the purposes of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995, and “disability” is to be construed accordingly;
  - “qualifying school” has the same meaning as it has for the purposes of Schedule 35B;
  - “scheme authority”, in relation to a school travel scheme, means the local education authority by which the scheme is made;
  - “walking distance” has the meaning given by section 444(5).]

SCHEDULE 36

Section 557.

UNIFORM STATUTORY TRUSTS FOR EDUCATIONAL ENDOWMENTS

- 1 The trustees may, after payment of any expenses incurred in connection with the administration of the trust, apply the capital and income of the relevant trust assets for any of the following purposes—
- (a) in or towards the purchase of a site for, or the erection, improvement or enlargement of, the premises of any relevant school in the area,
  - (b) for the maintenance of any relevant school in the area;

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) in or towards the purchase of a site for, or the erection, improvement or enlargement of, the premises of a teacher’s house for use in connection with any relevant school in the area; and
  - (d) for the maintenance of a teacher’s house for use in connection with any relevant school in the area.
- 2 The trustees may also, after payment of any expenses incurred in connection with the administration of the trust, apply the income of the relevant trust assets for any of the following purposes—
- (a) in or towards the provision of advice, guidance and resources (including materials) in connection with any matter related to the management of, or education provided at, any relevant school in the area;
  - (b) the provision of services for the carrying out of any inspection of any relevant school in the area required by [<sup>F1107</sup>Part 1 of the Education Act 2005] ; and
  - (c) to defray the cost of employing or engaging staff in connection with—
    - (i) the application of income of the relevant trust assets for either of the purposes referred to in sub-paragraphs (a) and (b) above, or
    - (ii) the application of capital or income of the relevant trust assets for any of the purposes referred to in paragraph 1 above.

#### Textual Amendments

**F1107** Words in Sch. 36 para. 2(b) substituted (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 9 para. 10](#); [S.I. 2005/2034](#), art. 4; [S.I. 2006/1338](#), art. 3, Sch. 1

## SCHEDULE 37

Section 582(1).

### CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

#### PART I

##### AMENDMENTS COMING INTO FORCE ON 1ST NOVEMBER 1996

##### *Children and Young Persons Act 1933 (c. 12)*

- 1 Section 96 of the <sup>M67</sup>Children and Young Persons Act 1933 (provisions as to local authorities) shall continue to have effect with the following amendments (originally made by Schedule 8 to the Education Act 1944)—
- (a) in subsection (3), for the words from “for elementary education” onwards there is substituted “ shall be defrayed as expenses under the enactments relating to education ”; and
  - (b) in subsection (4), for the second “under” there is substituted “in accordance with”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Marginal Citations**

**M67** 1944 c. 31.

*Public Records Act 1958 (c. 51)*

- 2 In Schedule 1 to the Public Records Act 1958 (definition of public records) Part II of the Table at the end of paragraph 3 (organisations whose records are public records) shall continue to include the following entries (originally inserted by Schedule 19 to the <sup>M68</sup>Education Act 1993, taken with Schedule 15 to that Act)—

“Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales”,  
“Funding Agency for Schools”,  
“School Curriculum and Assessment Authority”, and  
“Schools Funding Council for Wales”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M68** 1993 c. 35.

*Church Schools (Assistance by Church Commissioners) Measure 1958 (1958 No. 2)*

- 3 In section 2(1) of the Church Schools (Assistance by Church Commissioners) Measure 1958 (interpretation) for “the Education Acts, 1944 to 1993” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ” .

*Education Act 1962 (c. 12)*

- 4 (1) Section 1 of the Education Act 1962 (local education authority awards for designated courses) shall continue to have effect with the following amendment (originally made by section 4 of the <sup>M69</sup>Education (Grants and Awards) Act 1984).
- (2) In subsection (3)(d), for the words from “for the higher diploma” onwards there is substituted “ or for the higher national diploma of the body corporate known at the passing of the Education (Grants and Awards) Act 1984 as the Business & Technician Education Council. ”

**Marginal Citations**

**M69** 1984 c. 11.

- 5 In section 3(c)(i) of that Act (awards by Secretary of State) for “section 100 of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 485 of the Education Act 1996 ”.
- 6 For section 14(4) of that Act there is substituted—  
“(4) This Act shall be construed as one with the Education Act 1996.”

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 7 In paragraph 2 of Schedule 1 to that Act (ordinary residence) for “section 31(3) of the Education Act 1980” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 in accordance with regulations made under section 579(4) of that Act. ”

*London Government Act 1963 (c. 33)*

- 8 In section 30(1) of the London Government Act 1963 (local education authorities) for “the Education Acts 1944 to 1962 or in any other Act” there is substituted “ any Act ”.

F1108<sup>9</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1108 Sch. 37 para. 9 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), Sch.31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

*Children and Young Persons Act 1963 (c. 37)*

- 10 In section 37(3) of the Children and Young Persons Act 1963 (exceptions to restriction on persons under 16 taking part in public performances etc.) for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.

- 11 In section 38 of that Act (restriction on licences for performances by children under 13)—
- (a) in subsection (1) for “thirteen” there is substituted “ fourteen ”;
  - (b) subsection (2) is omitted; and
  - (c) in the sidenote, for “13” there is substituted “ 14 ”.

*Veterinary Surgeons Act 1966 (c. 36)*

- 12 In Schedule 3 to the Veterinary Surgeons Act 1966 (exemptions from restrictions on practice of veterinary surgery), in the definition of “recognised institution” following paragraph 5, for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.

*Education Act 1967 (c. 3)*

F1109<sup>13</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1109 Sch. 37 para. 13 repealed (1.4.2003 for E., 2.1.2008 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

*Public Expenditure and Receipts Act 1968 (c. 14)*

- 14 In Schedule 3 to the Public Expenditure and Receipts Act 1968 (variation of fees, etc.) for “The Education Act 1944 (c.31) section 94” there is substituted “ The Education Act 1996 (c.56) section 564 ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Children and Young Persons Act 1969 (c. 54)*

F1110<sup>15</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1110 Sch. 37 paras. 15, 16 repealed (25.8.2000) by 2000 c. 6, ss. 165(4), 168, Sch. 12 Pt. I (with Sch. 11 paras. 1, 2)

F1111<sup>16</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1111 Sch. 37 paras. 15, 16 repealed (25.8.2000) by 2000 c. 6, ss. 165(4), 168, Sch. 12 Pt. I (with Sch. 11 paras. 1, 2)

*Local Authorities (Goods and Services) Act 1970 (c. 39)*

F1112<sup>17</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1112 Sch. 37 para. 17 repealed (1.3.1998 in so far as Sch. 37 relates to School Curriculum and Assessment Authority and otherwise 1.10.1997) by 1997 c. 44, ss. 57(4), 58(3), Sch.8; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(3), Sch. 1 Pt. III; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt.I

*Local Authority Social Services Act 1970 (c. 42)*

18 In Schedule 1 to the Local Authority Social Services Act 1970 (enactments conferring functions assigned to social services committee) the entry relating to the Education Act 1993 is omitted and at the end there is added—

---

“Education Act 1996.  
Section 322..... Help for local education authority in exercising functions under Part IV of the Act.”

---

*Chronically Sick and Disabled Persons Act 1970 (c. 44)*

19 In section 8(2) of the Chronically Sick and Disabled Persons Act 1970 (access to and facilities at university and school buildings) for the words from “and expressions used” onwards there is substituted “ and expressions used in paragraph (b) above and in the Education Act 1996 have the same meanings as in that Act. ”

*Pensions (Increase) Act 1971 (c. 56)*

20 In Part II of Schedule 2 to the Pensions (Increase) Act 1971 (official pensions payable out of local funds), in paragraph 57, for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996. ”



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Superannuation Act 1972 (c. 11)*

- 21 (1) Schedule 1 to the Superannuation Act 1972 shall continue—
- (a) to include <sup>F1113</sup> . . . and the entries relating to the Funding Agency for Schools and the Schools Funding Council for Wales (originally inserted by Schedule 19 to that Act); <sup>F1114</sup> . . .
- <sup>F1114</sup>(b) . . . . .
- <sup>F1115</sup>(2) . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

- F1113** Words in Sch. 37 para. 21(1)(a) repealed (1.3.1998 in so far as relating to School Curriculum and Assessment Authority and otherwise 1.10.1997) by 1997 c. 44, ss. 57(4), 58(3), **Sch.8**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. III**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt.I**
- F1114** Sch. 37 para. 21(1)(b) and the word immediately preceding it repealed (1.3.1998 in so far as relating to the School Curriculum and Assessment Authority and otherwise 1.10.1997) by 1997 c. 44, ss. 57(4), 58(3), **Sch.8**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. III**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt.I**
- F1115** Sch. 37 para. 21(2) repealed (1.3.1998 in so far as relating to the School Curriculum and Assessment Authority and otherwise 1.10.1997) by 1997 c. 44, ss. 57(4), 58(3), **Sch. 8**; S.I. 1997/1468, art. 2(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. III**; S.I. 1998/386, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt.I**

*Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70)*

- 22 (1) Section 104(2)(a) of the Local Government Act 1972 (teachers not disqualified for being members of committees) shall continue to have effect with the following amendment (originally made by Schedule 19 to the <sup>M70</sup>Education Act 1993).
- (2) For “for the purposes of the enactments relating to education” there is substituted “wholly or partly for the purpose of discharging any functions with respect to education conferred on them in their capacity as local education authorities”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M70** 1993 c. 35.

- 23 In section 112(4)(b) of that Act (appointment of staff) for “section 88 of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “section 532 of the Education Act 1996”.
- 24 In section 139(4) of that Act (acceptance of gifts of property) for “the Education Acts 1944 to 1971” there is substituted “the Education Act 1996”.
- 25 In section 177(1) of that Act (supplementary provisions as to allowances) for “paragraph 4 of Schedule 2 to the Education Act 1980” there is substituted “paragraph 4 of Schedule 33 to the Education Act 1996”.

*Fair Trading Act 1973 (c. 41)*

<sup>F1116</sup>26 . . . . .

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1116** Sch. 37 para. 26 repealed (20.6.2003) by [The Enterprise Act 2002 \(Consequential and Supplemental Provisions\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1398\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. para. 25**

#### *Local Government Act 1974 (c. 7)*

**F1117**27 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F1117** Sch. 37 para. 27 repealed (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31, s. 140\(1\)\(3\)](#), [Sch. 30 para. 189\(e\)](#), **Sch.31** (with ss. [138\(9\)](#), [144\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1999/2323](#), art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

- 28 In section 31A(2) of that Act (consideration of adverse reports) for “paragraph 1 of Schedule 2 to the Education Act 1980” there is substituted “ paragraph 1 of Schedule 33 to the Education Act 1996 ”.
- 29 In paragraph 5(1) of Schedule 5 to that Act (matters not subject to investigation) for the words from “section 23” to “1986” there is substituted “ section 370 of the Education Act 1996 or section 17 of the Education (No.2) Act 1986 ”.

#### *House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24)*

- 30 (1) Part III of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (disqualifying offices)—
- (a) shall be amended as provided in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3); and
  - (b) shall continue to include the entries set out in sub-paragraph (4) (originally inserted by Schedule 19 to the <sup>M71</sup>Education Act 1993).
- (2) For the entry relating to the Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales there is substituted—
- “Any member of the Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales constituted under section 360 of the Education Act 1996 in receipt of remuneration”.
- (3) For the entry relating to the School Curriculum and Assessment Authority there is substituted—
- “Any member of the School Curriculum and Assessment Authority constituted under section 358 of the Education Act 1996 in receipt of remuneration”.
- (4) The entries referred to in sub-paragraph (1)(b) are—
- “Any member of an education association in receipt of remuneration”,
- “Any member of the Funding Agency for Schools in receipt of remuneration”, and
- “Any member of the Schools Funding Council for Wales in receipt of remuneration”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Marginal Citations**

**M71** 1993 c. 35.

*Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (c. 65)*

31 In section 23(1) of the Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (other discrimination by local education authorities) for “the Education Acts 1944 to 1996” there is substituted “ the Education Acts ”.

32 In section 23A of that Act (discrimination by Further Education and Higher Education Funding Councils) for “the Education Acts 1944 to 1994” there is substituted “ the Education Acts ”.

<sup>F1118</sup>33 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1118** Sch. 37 para. 33 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

34 In section 24(2)(c) of that Act (designated establishments) for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.

35 (1) Section 25 of that Act (general duty in public sector of education)—  
(a) shall be amended in accordance with sub-paragraphs (2)(a) to (c), (3)(b), and (4)(a); and  
(b) shall continue to have effect with the amendments set out in sub-paragraphs (2)(d), (3)(a) and (4)(b) (originally made by Schedule 19 to the Education Act 1993 and subsequently amended by the <sup>M72</sup>Education Act 1994).

(2) In subsection (2)—  
(a) for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”;  
(b) in paragraph (a), for “section 68” there is substituted “ section 496 ”;  
(c) in paragraph (b), for “section 99” there is substituted “ section 497 ”; and  
(d) for “and 23” there is substituted “ 23, 23A, 23C and 23D ”.

(3) In subsection (4)—  
(a) for “and 23” there is substituted “ 23, 23A, 23C and 23D ”; and  
(b) for “either” there is substituted “ any ”.

(4) In subsection (6)—  
(a) in paragraph (c)(iii), for “section 100 of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 485 of the Education Act 1996 ”; and  
(b) after paragraph (d) there is added—  
“(e) the Funding Agency for Schools and the Schools Funding Council for Wales.”

**Marginal Citations**

**M72** 1994 c. 30.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 36 In section 82 of that Act (general interpretation), in subsection (1)—
- (a) after the definition of “education” there is inserted—
    - ““the Education Acts” has the meaning given by section 578 of the Education Act 1996;”;
  - (b) in the definition of “further education”, for “section 41(3) of the Education Act 1944 as read with section 14 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992” there is substituted “ section 2 of the Education Act 1996 ”;
  - (c) in the definition of “independent school”, for “section 114(1) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 463 of the Education Act 1996 ”;
  - (d) in the definition of “proprietor”, for “section 114(1) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 579 of the Education Act 1996 ”; and
  - (e) in the definition of “school”, for “section 114(1) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 4 of the Education Act 1996 ”.

37 In Schedule 2 to that Act (transitional exemption orders for educational admissions)

- 
- <sup>F1119</sup>(a) .....
- (b) in paragraph 3—
    - (i) for “section 100 of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 485 of the Education Act 1996 ”; and
    - (ii) for “subsection (1)(b) of the said section 100” there is substituted “ the said section 485 ”.

**Textual Amendments**  
**F1119** Sch. 37 para. 37(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Restrictive Trade Practices Act 1976 (c. 34)*

38 In Schedule 1 to the Restrictive Trade Practices Act 1976 (services excluded from section 13), in paragraph 14, for “the Education Act 1944,” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996, ”.

*Race Relations Act 1976 (c. 74)*

39 In section 18(1) of the Race Relations Act 1976 (other discrimination by local education authorities) for “the Education Acts 1944 to 1996” there is substituted “ the Education Acts ”.

40 In section 18A of that Act (discrimination by Further Education and Higher Education Funding Councils) for “the Education Acts 1944 to 1994” there is substituted “ the Education Acts ”.

<sup>F1120</sup>41 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F1120** Sch. 37 para. 41 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F1121 42 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1121 Sch. 37 para. 42 repealed (2.4.2001) by 2000 c. 34, s. 9(2), **Sch. 3** (with s. 10(5)); S.I. 2001/566, **art. 2(1)**

- 43 In section 78 of that Act (general interpretation), in subsection (1)—
- (a) after the definition of “education” there is inserted—  
“the Education Acts” has the meaning given by section 578 of the Education Act 1996;”;
  - (b) in the definition of “independent school”, for “section 114(1) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 463 of the Education Act 1996 ”;
  - (c) in the definition of “proprietor”, for “section 114(1) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 579 of the Education Act 1996 ”; and
  - (d) in the definition of “school”, for “section 114(1) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 4 of the Education Act 1996 ”.

*National Health Service Act 1977 (c. 49)*

F1122 44 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1122 Sch. 37 paras. 44-46 repealed (1.3.2007) by **National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43)**, s. 8(2), **Sch. 4** (with Sch. 2 Pt. 1 Sch. 3 Pt. 1)

F1122 45 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1122 Sch. 37 paras. 44-46 repealed (1.3.2007) by **National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43)**, s. 8(2), **Sch. 4** (with Sch. 2 Pt. 1 Sch. 3 Pt. 1)

F1122 46 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1122 Sch. 37 paras. 44-46 repealed (1.3.2007) by **National Health Service (Consequential Provisions) Act 2006 (c. 43)**, s. 8(2), **Sch. 4** (with Sch. 2 Pt. 1 Sch. 3 Pt. 1)

*Education Act 1980 (c.20)*

- 47 (1) Section 38 of the Education Act 1980 (citation etc.) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) Subsections (2) and (4) to (6) are omitted.
  - (3) For subsection (3) there is substituted—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“(3) This Act shall, in its application to England and Wales, be construed as one with the Education Act 1996.”

(4) In subsection (7), for the words from the beginning to “Northern Ireland;” there is substituted “ In this Act section 20 and this section extend to Northern Ireland, ”.

*Education (Scotland) Act 1980 (c. 44)*

48 (1) Section 48A of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980 (corporal punishment) shall continue to have effect with the following amendments (originally made by section 294 of the <sup>M73</sup>Education Act 1993).

(2) In subsection (1), after “pupil” there is inserted “ to whom this subsection applies ”, and after that subsection there is inserted—

“(1A) Where, in any proceedings, it is shown that corporal punishment has been given to a pupil by or on the authority of a member of the staff, giving the punishment cannot be justified if the punishment was inhuman or degrading.

(1B) In determining whether punishment is inhuman or degrading regard shall be had to all the circumstances of the case, including the reason for giving it, how soon after the event it is given, its nature, the manner and circumstances in which it is given, the persons involved and its mental and physical effects.”

(3) In subsection (5) for the words preceding paragraph (a) there is substituted “In this section “pupil” means a person for whom education is provided at a school or for whom school education is provided by an education authority otherwise than at a school.

(5A) Subsection (1) above applies to a pupil”.

(4) In subsection (8)(a) for “(5)(a)(iii)” there is substituted “ (5A)(a)(iii) ”.

**Marginal Citations**

M73 1993 c. 35.

*Local Government, Planning and Land Act 1980 (c.65)*

F1123 49 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1123 Sch. 37 para. 49 repealed (22.7.2004) by [Statute Law \(Repeals\) Act 2004 \(c. 14\)](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. 10](#) Group 2

*Acquisition of Land Act 1981 (c. 67)*

50 In section 1(2) of the Acquisition of Land Act 1981 (application of Act) for “section 90(1) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 530(1) of the Education Act 1996 ”.

51 (1) Section 17(4) of that Act (statutory undertakers) shall have effect with the following amendment instead of that made by section 11 of the <sup>M74</sup>Education Act 1993.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) After paragraph (aa) of the definition of “statutory undertakers” there is inserted—  
“the Funding Agency for Schools,  
the Schools Funding Council for Wales,”.

**Marginal Citations**

M74 1993 c. 35.

*Greater London Council (General Powers) Act 1981 (c. xvii)*

- 52 In section 16 of the Greater London Council (General Powers) Act 1981 (exemptions from Part IV)—
- (a) in paragraph (b) for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”; and
  - (b) in paragraph (k) for “section 100(1)(b) of the said Act of 1944” there is substituted “ section 485 of the Education Act 1996 ”.

*Agricultural Training Board Act 1982 (c. 9)*

F112453 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1124 Sch. 37 para. 53 repealed (22.7.2004) by [Statute Law \(Repeals\) Act 2004 \(c. 14\)](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. 2](#) Group 2

*Industrial Training Act 1982 (c. 10)*

- 54 In section 5 of the Industrial Training Act 1982 (functions of boards) for the subsection (7) inserted by the <sup>M75</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 there is substituted—
- “(8) In this section “post-school education” means—
- (a) in England and Wales, “higher education” as defined by section 120(1) of the Education Reform Act 1988 or “further education” as defined by section 2(3) to (5) of the Education Act 1996; and
  - (b) in Scotland, “further education” within the meaning of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980.”

**Marginal Citations**

M75 1988 c. 40.

*Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1982 (c. 30)*

F112555 .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F1125** Sch. 37 para. 55 repealed (1.10.2002 for E., 1.9.2003 for W.) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\), s. 216\(4\), Sch. 22 Pt. 3](#) (with [ss. 210\(8\), 214\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#); [S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)

#### *Representation of the People Act 1983 (c. 2)*

- 56 (1) Paragraph 22 of Schedule 1 to the Representation of the People Act 1983 (use of schools for the purpose of taking a poll) shall continue to have effect with the following amendment (originally made by Schedule 19 to the <sup>M76</sup>Education Act 1993).
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(i), after “authority” there is inserted “ a grant-maintained school ”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M76** 1993 c. 35.

#### *Education (Fees and Awards) Act 1983 (c. 40)*

- 57 In section 1(4) of the Education (Fees and Awards) Act 1983 (fees at universities and further education establishments)—
- (a) for “section 100(1)(b) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 485 of the Education Act 1996 ”; and
- (b) for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the 1996 Act ”.

#### *Registered Homes Act 1984 (c. 23)*

**F1126** 58 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F1126** Sch. 37 para. 58 repealed (1.4.2002) by [2000 c. 14, s. 117\(2\), Sch. 6](#); [S.I. 2001/4150, art. 3\(c\)\(xii\)](#) (subject to [art. 4](#)); [S.I. 2002/920, art. 3\(3\)\(g\)\(x\)](#) (subject to [art. 3\(2\)](#), [Schs. 1-3](#) and with [art. 3\(5\)-\(10\)](#))

#### *Building Act 1984 (c. 55)*

- 59 In section 4(1)(a) of the Building Act 1984 (exemption of educational buildings etc) for sub-paragraphs (i) to (iv) substitute—
- “(i) plans that have been approved by the Secretary of State,
- (ii) particulars submitted and approved under section 39 or 44 of the Education Act 1996 or under regulations made under section 544 of that Act or section 218(7) of the Education Reform Act 1988,
- (iii) particulars approved or adopted under section 214, 262 or 341 of the Education Act 1996, or
- (iv) particulars given in a direction under section 428 of that Act.”



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Greater London Council (General Powers) Act 1984 (c. xxvii)*

- 60 In section 10(2)(g) of the Greater London Council (General Powers) Act 1984 (buildings excepted from Part IV) for “section 100(1)(b) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 485 of the Education Act 1996 ”.

*Further Education Act 1985 (c. 47)*

- 61 In section 8(3) (short title etc.) for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996. ”

*Housing Act 1985 (c. 68)*

- 62 In Schedule 1 (tenancies which are not secure tenancies), in paragraph 10(4), for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.

*Local Government Act 1986 (c. 10)*

F1127 63 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1127 Sch. 37 para. 63 repealed (28.9.2000) by 2000 c. 22, ss. 107(2), 108(2)(c), Sch. 6

*Disabled Persons (Services, Consultation and Representation) Act 1986 (c. 33)*

- 64 (1) Section 5 of the Disabled Persons (Services, Consultation and Representation) Act 1986 (disabled persons leaving special education) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(a) for “or 168 of the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ section 168 of the Education Act 1993 or section 324 of the Education Act 1996 ”.
- (3) In subsection (8)—
- (a) for “paragraph 7 of Schedule 10 to the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ paragraph 7 of Schedule 27chedul to the Education Act 1996 ”, and
  - (b) for “maintained under section 168” there is substituted “ maintained under section 324 ”.
- (4) In subsection (9)—
- (a) for “Part III of the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ Part IV of the Education Act 1996 ”; and
  - (b) for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.

*Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (c. 61)*

F1128 65 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1128 Sch. 37 para. 65 repealed (1.9.2005) by Education Act 2005 (c. 18), s. 125(3)(b), Sch. 19 Pt. 3

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 66 (1) Section 67 of that Act (short title etc.) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) Subsections (2), (5) and (6) are omitted.
- (3) In subsection (3), for “the 1944 Act” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996. ”
- (4) In subsection (7), for the words from the beginning to “Northern Ireland;” there is substituted “ In this Act section 48 and this section extend to Scotland, ”.

*Reverter of Sites Act 1987 (c. 15)*

- 67 (1) The Reverter of Sites Act 1987 shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In section 1(5) (right of reverter replaced by trust for sale) for “section 2 of the Education Act 1973” there is substituted “ section 554 of the Education Act 1996 ”.
- (2) In section 5 (orders under Education Act 1973)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “section 2 of the Education Act 1973” there is substituted “ section 554 of the Education Act 1996 ”; and
- (b) for “section 2 of the said Act of 1973”, wherever occurring, there is substituted “ section 554 of the 1996 Act ”.

*Local Government Act 1988 (c. 9)*

- 68 In paragraph 8(3)(a) of Schedule 1 to the Local Government Act 1988 (competition) for “section 53 of the Education Act 1944 (whether or not also provided under section 41 of that Act)” there is substituted “ section 508 of the Education Act 1996 (whether or not also provided under section 15 of that Act) ”.

*Criminal Justice Act 1988 (c. 33)*

- 69 In section 139A(6) and (7) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 (as amended by the Offensive Weapons Act 1996), for “section 14(5) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992” there is substituted “ section 4 of the Education Act 1996 ”.

*Education Reform Act 1988 (c. 40)*

<sup>F1129</sup>70 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1129** Sch. 37 para. 70 repealed (1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 153, **Sch. 11** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. I** (with art. 3)

- 71 In section 161(1)(b)(i) of that Act (interpretation of Part II) for “section 41 of the 1944 Act” there is substituted “ section 15 of the Education Act 1996 ”.
- 72 In section 163(1) of that Act (new education authorities for London) for “the Education Acts 1944 to 1996” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.
- 73 In section 166(5) of that Act (responsibility for schools) for “the Education Acts 1944 to 1993” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.
- 74 (1) Section 197 of that Act ([<sup>F1130</sup>Education Transfer Council]) shall be amended as follows.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) In subsection (6), for “the Education Acts 1944 to 1993” there is substituted “ the Education Acts ”.
- (3) Subsection (7) shall continue to have effect with the insertion of the words “and any governing body of a maintained or grant-maintained school” (originally inserted by section 47(5) of the<sup>M77</sup> Education Act 1993); and in that subsection for “the Education Acts 1944 to 1993” there is substituted “ the Education Acts ”.
- (4) In subsection (7B), for “the Education Acts 1944 to 1992” there is substituted “ the Education Acts ”.
- (5) At the end of the section there is added—
  - “(10) In this section “the Education Acts” has the meaning given by section 578 of the Education Act 1996.”

**Textual Amendments**

**F1130** Words in Sch. 37 para. 74 substituted (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 136 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. 1**

**Marginal Citations**

**M77** 1993 c. 35.

**F1131**<sup>75</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1131** Sch. 37 para. 75 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**F1132**<sup>76</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1132** Sch. 37 para. 76 repealed (2.1.2008 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), **Sch. 22 Pt. 3** (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

**77** For section 219 of that Act there is substituted—

**“219 Powers of the Secretary of State in relation to certain educational institutions.**

- (1) This section applies to any institution which is maintained by a local education authority and provides higher education or further education (or both).
- (2) Section 495(1) of the Education Act 1996 (determination of disputes by the Secretary of State) shall apply in relation to the governing body of an institution to which this section applies as it applies in relation to the governing body of a school.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(3) Each of sections 496 and 497 of that Act (power of Secretary of State to prevent unreasonable exercise of functions and Secretary of State’s general default powers) shall have effect as if any reference to a body to which that section applies included a reference to the governing body of an institution to which this section applies.

(4) Section 498 of that Act (powers of Secretary of State where there is no properly constituted governing body) shall have effect as if any reference to a school to which that section applies included a reference to an institution to which this section applies.”

F1133 78 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F1133 Sch. 37 para. 78 repealed (11.9.1998) by 1998 c. 18, ss. 54(3), 55(2), Sch.5

79 In section 228 of that Act (transfer of property to grant-aided institutions in Wales), in subsection (2)(a), for “section 100(1)(b) of the 1944 Act” there is substituted “section 485 of the Education Act 1996 ”.

80 In section 232 of that Act (orders and regulations)—  
(a) in subsection (2), for the words from “sections” to “Schedule 5” there is substituted “ section 157 ”;  
(b) subsection (3) is omitted; and  
(c) in subsection (4), “3(4)(a), 4(2)(c), 24,” is omitted.

81 (1) Section 235 of that Act (general interpretation) shall be amended as follows.  
(2) In subsection (1) the definition of “the 1980 Act” is omitted.  
(3) In subsection (2)(c), after “1944 Act” there is inserted “ or section 485 of the Education Act 1996 ”.  
(4) In subsections (7) and (8), for “the 1944 Act” in each place there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.

82 (1) Schedule 10 to that Act (supplementary provisions with respect to transfers)—  
(a) shall continue to have effect with the amendments set out in sub-paragraph (2) (originally made by section 47 of the <sup>M78</sup>Education Act 1993);  
F1134

F1134(b) .....

(2) The amendments mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) are as follows—

F1135(a) .....

(b) in paragraph 4(1) of the Schedule, for “by virtue of section 126 or 130” there is substituted “ to which this Schedule applies ”; F1136 . . .

F1136(c) .....

F1137(3) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

- F1134** Sch. 37 para. 82(1)(b) and the word immediately preceding it repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F1135** Sch. 37 para. 82(2)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F1136** Sch. 37 para. 82(2)(c) and the word immediately preceding it repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 31 para. 189(e), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F1137** Sch. 37 para. 82(3) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

**Marginal Citations**

- M78** 1993 c. 35.

*Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (c. 48)*

- 83 In section 174(3) of the Copyright, Patents and Designs Act 1988 (meaning of “school”) for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.

*Children Act 1989 (c. 41)*

- 84 In section 28(4) of the Children Act 1989 (local authority support for children and families: consultation with local education authorities) for “Part III of the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ Part IV of the Education Act 1996 ”.
- 85 In section 36(5) of that Act (education supervision orders: presumption that child is not being properly educated)—
- (a) for “section 37 of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 437 of the Education Act 1996 ”; and
  - (b) for “section 39” there is substituted “ section 444 ”.

**F1138**86 .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F1138** Sch. 37 para. 86 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2000 c. 14, s. 117(2), Sch. 6; S.I. 2001/4150, arts. 3(3)(c)(xii) (subject to art. 4); S.I. 2002/920, **art. 3(3)(g)(x)** (subject to art. 3(2), Schs. 1-3 and with art. 3(5)-(10))

- 87 In section 87(10) of that Act (welfare of children accommodated in independent schools) for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.

**F1139**88 .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F1139** Sch. 37 para. 88 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2000 c. 14, ss. 117(2), Sch. 6; S.I. 2001/4150, arts. 3(3)(c)(xii) (subject to art. 4); S.I. 2002/920, **art. 3(3)(g)(x)** (subject to art. 3(2), Schs. 1-3 and with art. 3(5)-(10))

**F1140**89 .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F1140** Sch. 37 para. 89 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2000 c. 14, s. 117(2), Sch. 6; S.I. 2001/4150, arts. 3(3)(c)(xii) (subject to art. 4); S.I. 2002/920, art. 3(3)(g)(x) (subject to art. 3(2), Schs. 1-3 and with art. 3(5)-(10))

- 90 In section 91(5) of that Act (effect and duration of orders: school attendance orders) for “section 37 of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 437 of the Education Act 1996 ”.
- 91 In section 105(1) of that Act (interpretation) for “the Education Act 1944” in each place where it occurs, and for “the Education Act 1993”, there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.
- 92 In paragraph 3(b) of Schedule 2 to that Act (local authority support for children and families: assessment of children’s needs) for “Part III of the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ Part IV of the Education Act 1996 ”.
- 93 (1) Part III of Schedule 3 to that Act (education supervision orders) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 13—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1) for “section 36 of the Education Act 1944 (duty to secure education of children) and section 199 of the Education Act 1993 (duty)” there is substituted “ sections 7 and 444 of the Education Act 1996 (duties to secure education of children and ”; and
- (b) in sub-paragraph (2)—
- (i) in paragraph (a)(i) for “section 192 of that Act” there is substituted “ section 437 of the Education Act 1996 ”,
- (ii) in paragraph (b)(i) for “section 192” there is substituted “ section 437 ”,
- (iii) in paragraph (b)(ii) for “section 76 of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 9 of that Act ”, and
- (iv) in paragraph (b)(iii) for “sections 6 and 7 of the Education Act 1980” there is substituted “ sections 411 and 423 of that Act ”.
- (3) In paragraph 21 for “the Education Act 1944 (as amended by Schedule 13)” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996. ”
- 94 (1) Paragraph 3 of Schedule 9 to that Act (child minding and day care: exemption of certain schools) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) for “section 100 of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 485 of the Education Act 1996 ”, and
- (b) for “section 53 of the Act of 1944” there is substituted “ section 508 of that Act ”.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (3)—
- (a) for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”, and
- (b) for “the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ that Act ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (c. 42)*

95 In section 2(6)(a) of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (politically restricted posts) for “section 88 of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “section 532 of the Education Act 1996”.

96 (1) Section 13 of that Act (voting rights of members of committees)—  
(a) shall be amended as provided in sub-paragraphs (2), (3) and (5); and  
(b) shall continue to have effect with the amendment set out in sub-paragraph (4) (originally made by Schedule 19 to the <sup>M79</sup>Education Act 1993).

<sup>F1141</sup>(2) .....

(3) For subsection (5) there is substituted—

“(5) Nothing in this section shall prevent the appointment of a person who is not a member of a local education authority as a voting member of—

- (a) any committee or sub-committee appointed by the local authority wholly or partly for the purpose of discharging any functions with respect to education conferred on them in their capacity as a local education authority,
- (b) any joint committee appointed by two or more local authorities wholly or partly for the purpose of discharging any functions with respect to education conferred on them in their capacity as local education authorities, or
- (c) any sub-committee appointed by any such committee or joint committee wholly or partly for the purpose of discharging any of that committee’s functions with respect to education,

where that appointment is required by directions given by the Secretary of State under section 499 of the Education Act 1996 (power of Secretary of State to direct appointment of members of committees).”

(4) In subsection (7) for “education committee or sub-committee of an education committee” there is substituted “ committee, joint committee or sub-committee appointed for the purpose mentioned in that subsection ”.

(5) In subsection (9) the definition of “foundation governors” and the “and” immediately following it are omitted.

**Textual Amendments**

<sup>F1141</sup>Sch. 37 para. 96(2) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

**Marginal Citations**

<sup>M79</sup> 1993 c. 35.

<sup>F1142</sup>97 .....

**Textual Amendments**

<sup>F1142</sup>Sch. 37 para. 97 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Education (Student Loans) Act 1990 (c. 6)*

98 In section 1(3)(a) of the Education (Student Loans) Act 1990 (meaning of “institutions receiving support from public funds”) for “section 100(1)(b) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 485 of the Education Act 1996 ”.

*Town and Country Planning Act 1990 (c. 8)*

99 In section 76 of the Town and Country Planning Act 1990 (duty to draw attention to certain provisions for benefit of disabled) for subsection (3) there is substituted—  
 “(3) Expressions used in subsection (1)(e) and in the Education Act 1996 have the same meanings as in that Act.”

*Environmental Protection Act 1990 (c. 43)*

100 In section 98(2) of the Environmental Protection Act 1990 (definitions)—  
 (a) in paragraph (c)(i) for “section 100(1)(b) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 485 of the Education Act 1996 ”; and  
 (b) in paragraph (e) for “section 105 of the Education Reform Act 1988” there is substituted “ section 482 of the Education Act 1996 ) ”.

*School Teachers’ Pay and Conditions Act 1991 (c. 49)*

F1143 101 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
 F1143 Sch. 37 para. 101 repealed (1.8.2003) by [Education Act 2002 \(c. 32\)](#), s. 216(2), [Sch. 22 Pt. 1](#) (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/1667, art. 2

*Diocesan Boards of Education Measure 1991 (1991 No. 2)*

F1144 102 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
 F1144 Sch. 37 para. 102 repealed (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), s. 140(1)(3), [Sch. 30 para. 189\(e\)](#), [Sch.31](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)

F1145 103 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
 F1145 Sch. 37 para. 103 repealed (1.9.1999) by [1998 c. 31](#), s. 140(1)(3), [Sch. 30 para. 189\(e\)](#), [Sch.31](#) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1](#)

104 (1) Section 6 of that Measure (Board to be consulted in certain cases) shall be amended as follows.  
 (2) In subsection (1)—



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) for “section 13(1) of the 1988 Act” there is substituted “ section 392(2) of the Education Act 1996 ”; and
- (b) for “section 11” there is substituted “ section 390 ”.

F1146(3) . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

F1146 Sch. 37 para. 104(3) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), Sch.31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

F1147 105 . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

F1147 Sch. 37 para. 105 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), Sch.31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

F1148 106 . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

F1148 Sch. 37 para. 106 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), Sch.31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

F1149 107 . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

F1149 Sch. 37 para. 107 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 107, Sch.31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

*Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c. 13)*

F1150 108 . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

F1150 Sch. 37 para. 108 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), Sch.31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

109 In section 28(3)(a) of that Act (institutions which are grant-aided or eligible to receive aid by way of grant) for “section 100(1)(b) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 485 of the Education Act 1996 ”.

110 (1) Section 37 of that Act (attribution of surpluses and deficits) shall be amended as follows.

F1151(2) . . . . .

(3) In subsection (7)—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F1151 (a) .....
- (b) in the definition of “financial year”, for “the Education Reform Act 1988” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.

**Textual Amendments**

**F1151** Sch. 37 para. 110(2)(3)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

- 111 In section 54(2) of that Act (duty to give information) for the words from “section 51” to “section 52 of that Act” there is substituted “ regulations under section 492 or 493 of the Education Act 1996 ”.

F1152 112 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1152** Sch. 37 para. 112 repealed (1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 153, **Sch. 11** (with s. 150); S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3); S.I. 2001/1274, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. I** (with art. 3)

F1153 113 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1153** Sch. 37 para. 113 repealed (1.1.2001 (W.) 1.4.2001 (E.)) by 2000 c. 21, s. 153, **Sch. 11** (with s. 150); S.I. 2000/3230, art. 2, **Sch.**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II**

- 114 In section 89(5) of that Act (orders, regulations and directions) for “Section 111 of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ Section 570 of the Education Act 1996 ”.

- 115 (1) Section 90 of that Act (interpretation) shall be amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

- (a) in the definition of “the Education Acts”, for “means the Education Acts 1944 to 1996” there is substituted “ has the meaning given by section 578 of the Education Act 1996 ”; and
- (b) after that definition there is inserted—  
““further education” has the meaning given by section 2(3) to (5) of that Act;”.

(3) In subsection (5), for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.

- 116 In section 92 of that Act (Index)—

- (a) in the entry for “further education”, for “section 14(1) to (4)” there is substituted “ section 90(1) ”; and
- (b) the entries for “pupil”, “secondary education” and “school” are omitted.

- 117 (1) Schedule 8 to that Act—

- (a) shall continue to have effect with the amendment set out in sub-paragraph (2) (originally made by section 47(6) of the <sup>M80</sup>Education Act 1993); and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) shall be amended as provided in sub-paragraphs (3) and (4).
- (2) In paragraph 61, for “by virtue of section 126 or 130 and in such a case” there is substituted “ and ”.
- (3) In paragraph 62(3), for “or (as the case may be) the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ or (as the case may be) the Education Act 1996 ”.
- (4) In—
- (a) paragraph 79(2) (which provides that, in relation to a further education corporation or a Further Education Funding Council, the reference in section 25(2) of the <sup>M81</sup>Sex Discrimination Act 1975 to section 99 of the <sup>M82</sup>Education Act 1944 is to be read as a reference to section 57(3) of the 1992 Act), <sup>F1154</sup> . . .
- <sup>F1154</sup>(b) . . . . .
- for “section 99 of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 497 of the Education Act 1996 ”.

**Textual Amendments**

**F1154** Sch. 37 para. 117(4)(b) and preceding word repealed (2.4.2001) by 2000 c. 34, s. 9(2), **Sch. 3** (with s. 10(5)); S.I. 2001/566, **art. 2(1)** (with art. 2(2))

**Marginal Citations**

- M80** 1993 c. 35.  
**M81** 1975 c. 65.  
**M82** 1994 c. 31.

*Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 (c. 53)*

- 118 (1) The Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 shall be amended as follows.
- (2) Section 11(1) (appeals from certain tribunals) shall continue to have effect with the substitution for “15(a) or (d)” of “15(a), (d) or (e)” (originally made by section 181 of the Education Act 1993).
- (3) In paragraph 15 of Schedule 1 (tribunals under general supervision of Council on Tribunals)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (a), for “section 72 of, and Schedule 6 to, the Education Act 1944 (c. 31)” there is substituted “ section 476 of, and Schedule 34 to, the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) ”;
- (b) in sub-paragraph (b), for “Part I of Schedule 2 to the Education Act 1980 (c. 20)” there is substituted “ Part I of Schedule 33 to that Act ”;
- (c) in sub-paragraph (c), for “paragraph 5(1) of Schedule 6 to the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ paragraph 6(1) of Schedule 23 to that Act ”; and
- <sup>F1155</sup>(d) . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

**F1155** Sch. 37 para. 118(3)(d) repealed (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, s. 42(1)(6), **Sch. 8** para. 4, **Sch. 9** (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, **art. 3**, **Sch. 1 Pt. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Charities Act 1993 (c. 10)*

- 119 For section 79(9) of the Charities Act 1993 (parochial charities) there is substituted—
- “(9) This section shall not affect the trusteeship, control or management of any voluntary or grant-maintained school within the meaning of the Education Act 1996.”
- 120 (1) Schedule 2 to that Act (exempt charities) shall continue to have effect with the following amendments (originally made by Schedules 15 and 19 to the<sup>M83</sup> Education Act 1993).
- (2) After paragraph (d) there is inserted—
- “(da) the School Curriculum and Assessment Authority;”.
- (3) For paragraph (f) there is substituted—
- “(f) the Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales;”.

**Marginal Citations**

**M83** 1993 c. 35.

- 121 At the end of paragraph 1(b) of Schedule 4 to that Act (charities over which the court has jurisdiction) there is added “ or section 554 of the Education Act 1996 ”.

*Welsh Language Act 1993 (c. 38)*

<sup>F1156</sup>122 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1156** Sch. 37 para. 122 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

*Local Government (Wales) Act 1994 (c. 19)*

- 123 (1) Section 30 of the Local Government (Wales) Act 1994 (area committees) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (7) for “section 297 of the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ section 499 of the Education Act 1996 ”.
- (3) In subsections (9) and (14) for “section 297 of the Act of 1993” there is substituted “ section 499 of the Act of 1996 ”.
- 124 (1) Section 31 of that Act (sub-committees of area committees) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (6) for “section 297 of the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ section 499 of the Education Act 1996 ”.
- (3) In subsections (8) and (12) for “section 297 of the Act of 1993” there is substituted “ section 499 of the Act of 1996 ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Value Added Tax Act 1994 (c. 23)*

- 125 In Schedule 9 to the Value Added Tax Act 1994 (exemptions), in paragraph (a) of Note (1) to Group 6 (education)—
- (a) for “the Education Acts 1944 to 1996” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”;
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (iii), for “a maintained school within the meaning of the Education Act 1993 or” there is substituted “ a county school, voluntary school or maintained special school (other than one established in a hospital) within the meaning of the Education Act 1996 or a maintained school within the meaning of ”;
- F1157(c) .....
- F1157(d) .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1157 Sch. 37 para. 125(c)(d) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(e), Sch.31 (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

*Education Act 1994 (c. 30)*

- 126 After section 11 of the Education Act 1994 there is inserted—

*“ General duty of Secretary of State*

**11A General duty of Secretary of State with respect to teacher training.**

In carrying out his duties under sections 10 and 11 of the Education Act 1996 the Secretary of State shall, in particular, make such arrangements as he considers expedient for securing that sufficient facilities are available for the training of teachers to serve in schools maintained by local education authorities, grant-maintained schools, institutions within the further education sector and institutions which are maintained by such authorities and provide higher education or further education (or both).”

- 127 (1) Section 12 of that Act (power of schools to provide courses of initial teacher training) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (5), for “section 12 or 13 of the Education Act 1980 or section 96 of the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ section 35, 41 or 259 of the Education Act 1996 ”.
- (3) In subsection (6)—
- (a) for “sections 33 to 43 of the Education Reform Act 1988” there is substituted “ sections 101 to 123 of the Education Act 1996 ”, and
  - (b) for “Chapter VI of Part II of the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ Chapter VI of Part III of that Act ”.
- 128 In section 19 of that Act (interpretation)—
- (a) in subsection (3), for “section 156 of the Education Act 1993” there is substituted “ section 312 of the Education Act 1996 ”; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in subsection (5), for “the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ the Education Act 1996 ”.

*Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)*

F1158 129 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1158 Sch. 37 para. 129 repealed (1.9.2002) by 2001 c. 10, ss. 38(14), 42(6), Sch. 9 (with s. 43(13)); S.I. 2002/2217, art. 3, Sch. 1 Pt. 1

*Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18)*

- 130 In section 134(1) of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (dismissal of teachers in aided schools) for “paragraph (a) of the proviso to section 24(2) of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ section 134(3) of the Education Act 1996 ”.

*Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996 (c. 57)*

F1159 131 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F1159 Sch. 37 para. 131 repealed (1.4.2003 for E., 2.1.2008 for W.) by Education Act 2002 (c. 32), s. 216(4), Sch. 22 Pt. 3 (with ss. 210(8), 214(4)); S.I. 2003/124, art. 4; S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1)

- 132 In section 11 of that Act (citation etc.) for subsection (2) there is substituted—  
“(2) This Act shall be construed as one with the Education Act 1996.”

**PART II**

AMENDMENTS COMING INTO FORCE ON APPOINTED DAY

*Children and Young Persons Act 1933 (c. 12)*

- 133 In section 30(1)(a) of the Children and Young Persons Act 1933 (interpretation) for the words from “for the purposes” to the end of paragraph (a) there is substituted “ over compulsory school age (construed in accordance with section 8 of the Education Act 1996) ”.

*Agriculture (Safety, Health and Welfare Provisions) Act 1956 (c. 49)*

- 134 In section 24(1) of the Agriculture (Safety, Health and Welfare Provisions) Act 1956 (interpretation) in the definition of “young person”, for “for the purposes of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ (construed in accordance with section 8 of the Education Act 1996) ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Factories Act 1961 (c. 34)*

- 135 In section 176(1) of the Factories Act 1961 (general interpretation) for the definition of “child” there is substituted—
- ““child” means any person who is not over—
- (a) compulsory school age (construed in accordance with section 8 of the Education Act 1996), or
- (b) school age (construed in accordance with section 31 of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980);”.

*Matrimonial Causes Act 1973 (c. 18)*

- 136 In section 29(2)(a) of the Matrimonial Causes Act 1973 (age limit on making certain orders in favour of children) for the words from “(that is to say” to “that section)” there is substituted “ (construed in accordance with section 8 of the Education Act 1996) ”.

*Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (c. 65)*

- 137 In section 24(2)(d) of the Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (designated establishments) after “school age” there is inserted “ (construed in accordance with section 8 of the Education Act 1996) ”.

*Domestic Proceedings and Magistrates’ Courts Act 1978 (c. 22)*

- 138 In section 5(2)(a) of the Domestic Proceedings and Magistrates’ Courts Act 1978 (age limit on making certain orders in favour of children) for the words from “(that is to say” to “that section)” there is substituted “ (construed in accordance with section 8 of the Education Act 1996) ”.

*Employment Act 1989 (c. 38)*

- 139 In section 10 of the Employment Act 1989 (removal of restrictions relating to employment of young persons), in subsection (6), for “for the purposes of the Education Act 1944” there is substituted “ (construed in accordance with section 8 of the Education Act 1996) ”.

SCHEDULE 38

Section 582(2).

REPEALS AND REVOCATIONS

PART I

REPEALS COMING INTO FORCE ON 1ST NOVEMBER 1996

Chapter	Short title	Extent of repeal
1944 c.31.	Education Act 1944.	The whole Act.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

1946 c.49.	Acquisition of Land (Authorisation Procedure) Act 1946.	In Schedule 4, the entry relating to the Education Act 1944.
1946 c.50.	Education Act 1946.	The whole Act.
1948 c.40.	Education (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1948.	The whole Act.
1953 c.33.	Education (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1953.	The whole Act.
1959 c.53.	Town and Country Planning Act 1959.	In Schedule 4, paragraph 4.
1959 c.60.	Education Act 1959.	The whole Act.
1961 c.45.	Rating and Valuation Act 1961.	The whole Act.
1962 c.12.	Education Act 1962.	Section 9. Section 13(4). Section 14(2).
1963 c.37.	Children and Young Persons Act 1963.	Section 38(2).
1964 c.82.	Education Act 1964.	The whole Act.
1967 c.3.	Education Act 1967.	Section 2.  In section 6(1), the words from “and this Act” onwards.
1967 c.80.	Criminal Justice Act 1967.	In Part I of Schedule 3, the entry relating to the Education Act 1944.
1968 c.17.	Education Act 1968.	The whole Act.
1968 c.xxxix	Greater London Council (General Powers) Act 1968.	Section 56.
1970 c.42.	Local Authority Social Services Act 1970.	In Schedule 1, the entry relating to the Education Act 1993.
1970 c.52.	Education (Handicapped Children) Act 1970.	The whole Act.
1972 c.70.	Local Government Act 1972.	Section 192.
1973 c.16.	Education Act 1973.	Section 1(2). Section 2.  In section 5(1), the words from “, and the Education Acts” onwards.  In Schedule 1, paragraph 3.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

1973 c.23.	Education (Work Experience) Act 1973.	The whole Act.
1975 c.2.	Education Act 1975.	The whole Act.
1976 c.5.	Education (School-leaving Dates) Act 1976.	The whole Act.
1976 c.81.	Education Act 1976.	The whole Act.
1977 c.49.	National Health Service Act 1977.	In Schedule 14, in paragraph 13(1)(b) “7 to 9”.  In Schedule 15, paragraphs 2 and 3.
1979 c.49.	Education Act 1979.	The whole Act.
1980 c.20.	Education Act 1980.	Sections 1 to 18.  Sections 21 and 22.  Section 24.  Section 26.  Sections 28 to 30.  Section 33(3).  Sections 34 and 35.  Section 37.  In section 38, subsections (2) and (4) to (6).  Schedules 1 to 4.  Schedule 7.
1980 c.65.	Local Government, Planning and Land Act 1980.	Section 2(3).
1981 c.60.	Education Act 1981.	The whole Act.
1982 c.48.	Criminal Justice Act 1982.	In Schedule 3, the entries relating to the Education Act 1944.
1984 c.11.	Education (Grants and Awards) Act 1984.	The whole Act.
1985 c.47.	Further Education Act 1985.	Section 8(2).
1986 c.50.	Social Security Act 1986.	Section 77 so far as relating to section 22 of the Education Act 1980.
1986 c.61.	Education (No.2) Act 1986.	Sections 1 to 42.  Sections 44 to 47.  Sections 51 to 60.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

		In section 62(1), paragraph (a) and the “(b)” immediately following it.
		In section 63, in subsection (1) the words “(other than under section 2(7), 9(6) or 54)”, in subsection (2) “51 or”, and subsection (2A).
		In section 65(1), all the definitions except that of “establishment of higher or further education”.
		In section 66, in subsection (1) “60 and” and “to (3)”, and in subsection (2) “and 59”.
		In section 67, subsections (2), (5) and (6).
		Schedules 1 to 3.
		In Schedule 4, paragraphs 1, 2 and 5.
		Schedules 5 and 6.
1987 c.15.	Reverter of Sites Act 1987.	Section 8(1).
1988 c.40.	Education Reform Act 1988.	Part I. Section 120(5) and (9). In section 210, in each of subsections (1) and (3)(d) the words “local education authorities or”. In section 211, paragraphs (a) and (b) and the words “the school or”. Sections 212 and 213. In section 218, in subsection (1) in each of paragraphs (e) and (f) the words “schools and” and paragraph (g), in subsection (7) the words from “or, in such cases” to “the funding authority” and the words “school or” (where first occurring) and “any

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

		school or”, and subsections (8) and (13).
		Section 222.
		Sections 225 and 227.
		Section 229(1).
		In section 230(1), “section 15(2)”.
		In section 232, subsection (3) and, in subsection (4)(b), “3(4)(a), 4(2)(c), 24”.
		Section 234.
		In section 235, in subsection (1) the definition of “the 1980 Act”.
		In section 236, in subsection (1) the words from “section 1” to “section 119” and “sections 212 and 213”, and subsections (2) and (3).
		Section 238(2).
		Schedules 1 to 4.
		In Schedule 12, paragraphs 1 to 8, 14, 17, 24, 25, 34, 35, 37, 54 to 62, 69(4), 76, 77, 81, 82, 87(3), 99, 102, 103 and 106.
1989 c.41.	Children Act 1989.	In Schedule 13, paragraphs 9 and 10.
1989 c.42.	Local Government and Housing Act 1989.	In section 13(9), the definition of “foundation governors” and the “and” immediately following it.
		Section 188.
1990 c.6.	Education (Student Loans) Act 1990.	Section 4(2).
1990 c.19.	National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990.	In Schedule 9, paragraph 31.
1990 c.38.	Employment Act 1990.	Section 14.
		In section 18(2), the words from “section 14” to “experience”.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

1991 c.21.	Disability Living Allowance and Disability Working Allowance Act 1991.	In Schedule 3, paragraph 12.
1991 c.49.	School Teachers' Pay and Conditions Act 1991.	Section 6(2).
1991 No.2.	Diocesan Boards of Education Measure 1991.	In section 10(1), the definition of "the 1988 Act".
1992 c.13.	Further and Higher Education Act 1992.	Sections 10 to 14.  Section 59.  In section 92, the entries for "pupil", "secondary education" and "school".  Section 94(2).  In Schedule 8, paragraphs 1 to 17, 24 to 26, 28, 43(b), 50, 53, 54, 56, 57 and 82.
1992 c.38.	Education (Schools) Act 1992.	Section 16.  In Schedule 4, paragraphs 1 and 4 to 6.
1993 c.8.	Judicial Pensions and Retirement Act 1993.	In Schedule 6, paragraph 51.
1993 c.10.	Charities Act 1993.	In Schedule 2, paragraphs (e) and (g).
1993 c.35.	Education Act 1993.	The whole Act.
1994 c.19.	Local Government (Wales) Act 1994.	Section 21.  In Schedule 16, paragraphs 8 and 105.
1994 c.30.	Education Act 1994.	Section 27(2).  In Schedule 2, paragraphs 5(2) and (4)(a), 6(2) and (4)(a) and 8(2) to (4).
1995 c.17.	Health Authorities Act 1995.	In Schedule 1, paragraphs 112 and 124.
1995 c.18.	Jobseekers Act 1995.	In Schedule 2, paragraphs 3 and 17.
1995 c.21.	Merchant Shipping Act 1995.	In Schedule 13, paragraph 48.
1995 c.50.	Disability Discrimination Act 1995.	Section 29(1) and (2).  Section 30(7) to (9).

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

1996 c.9.	Education (Student Loans) Act 1996.	Section 4(2).
1996 c.18.	Employment Rights Act 1996.	In Schedule 1, paragraph 59.
1996 c.23.	Arbitration Act 1996.	In Schedule 3, paragraphs 4 and 59.
1996 c.50.	Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996.	Section 7.  In Schedule 3, paragraphs 1 to 8 and 10 to 15.

## PART II

### REPEALS COMING INTO FORCE ON APPOINTED DAY

Chapter	Short title	Extent of repeal
1975 c.65.	Sex Discrimination Act 1975.	In section 82(1), the definition of “upper limit of compulsory school age”.
1976 c.74.	Race Relations Act 1976.	In section 78(1), the definition of “upper limit of compulsory school age”.
1995 c.36.	Children (Scotland) Act 1995.	In Schedule 4, paragraph 10(a).

## PART III

### REVOCATIONS

S.I. Number	Title	Extent of revocation
S.I. 1977/293.	Local Authorities etc. (Miscellaneous Provision) Order 1977.	Article 4(1) and (5).
S.I. 1991/1890.	Education (Financial Delegation for Primary Schools) Regulations 1991.	The whole Regulations.
S.I. 1992/110.	Education (Financial Delegation for Primary Schools) (Amendment) Regulations 1992.	The whole Regulations.
S.I. 1992/1548.	Education (National Curriculum) (Foundation	The whole Order.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

	Subjects at Key Stage 4) Order 1992.	
S.I. 1993/2709.	Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (Amendment) Order 1993.	The whole Order.
S.I. 1993/2827.	Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 1993.	The whole Order.
S.I. 1994/692.	Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (Amendment) Order 1994.	The whole Order.
S.I. 1994/1814.	Education (National Curriculum) (Foundation Subjects at Key Stage 4) Order 1994.	The whole Order.
S.I. 1994/2092.	Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 1994.	The whole Order.
S.I. 1994/2732.	Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (Amendment) (No. 3) Order 1994.	The whole Order.
S.I. 1996/710.	Local Government Changes for England (Education) (Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 1996.	Regulation 19.
S.I. 1996/951.	Deregulation (Length of the School Day) Order 1996.	The whole Order.

---

## SCHEDULE 39

Section 582(3).

## TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS AND SAVINGS

**PART I**

## GENERAL

*General transitional provisions*

- 1 (1) The repeal and re-enactment of provisions by this Act does not affect the continuity of the law.
- (2) Any subordinate legislation made or other thing done, or having effect as if made or done, under or for the purposes of any provision repealed and re-enacted by this Act shall, if in force or effective immediately before the commencement of the corresponding provision of this Act, have effect thereafter as if made or done under or for the purposes of that corresponding provision.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Any reference (express or implied) in this Act or any other enactment or in any instrument or document—
- (a) to any provision of this Act, or
  - (b) to things done or falling to be done under or for the purposes of any provision of this Act,
- shall (so far as the context permits) be construed as including, in relation to times, circumstances or purposes in relation to which the corresponding provision repealed by this Act had effect, a reference—
- (i) to that corresponding provision, or
  - (ii) to things done or falling to be done under or for the purposes of that corresponding provision,
- as the case may be.
- (4) Any reference (express or implied) in any enactment or in any instrument or document—
- (a) to any provision repealed and re-enacted by this Act, or
  - (b) to things done or falling to be done under or for the purposes of any such provision,
- shall (so far as the context permits) be construed as including, in relation to times, circumstances or purposes in relation to which the corresponding provision of this Act has effect, a reference—
- (i) to that corresponding provision, or
  - (ii) to things done or falling to be done under or for the purposes of that corresponding provision,
- as the case may be.
- (5) Without prejudice to the generality of sub-paragraph (4), where a power conferred by an Act is expressed to be exercisable in relation to enactments contained in Acts passed before or in the same Session as the Act conferring the power, the power is also exercisable in relation to provisions of this Act which reproduce such enactments.
- (6) Sub-paragraphs (1) to (5) have effect instead of section 17(2) of the <sup>M84</sup>Interpretation Act 1978 (but are without prejudice to any other provision of that Act); and sub-paragraph (1) has effect subject to any amendments of the law which give effect to recommendations of the Law Commission.
- (7) Sub-paragraph (2) does not apply to any subordinate legislation in so far as it is reproduced in this Act.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C147 Sch. 39 Pt. I para. 1 applied (24.7.1998) by 1998 c. 31, ss. 142(8)(9), 145(4) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6))

**Marginal Citations**

M84 1978 c. 30.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Extension of references to provisions repealed by Education Act 1993*

- 2 (1) Paragraph 1(3) above shall have effect, for the purpose of extending references so as to include references to (or to things done or falling to be done under) the pre-1993 Act enactments, as if any reference in paragraph 1(3) to the corresponding provision repealed by this Act were a reference to the corresponding provision of those enactments.
- (2) Paragraph 1(4) above shall have effect, for the purpose of extending references to (or to things done or falling to be done under) the pre-1993 Act enactments, as if any reference in paragraph 1(4) to any provision repealed and re-enacted by this Act were a reference to a provision of those enactments.
- <sup>F1160</sup>(3) . . . . .
- (4) In this paragraph “the pre-1993 Act enactments” means the enactments specified in Part I of Schedule 21 to the <sup>M85</sup>Education Act 1993 (repeals).

**Textual Amendments**

<sup>F1160</sup>Sch. 39 Pt. I para. 2(3) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), **Sch. 30 para. 189(f)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2, **Sch. 1**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

<sup>C148</sup> Sch. 39 Pt. I para. 2 applied (24.7.1998) by 1998 c. 31, **ss. 142(8)(9)**, 145(4) (with ss. 138(9), 144(6))

**Marginal Citations**

<sup>M85</sup> 1993 c. 35.

*Construction of pre-1944 Act references*

- 3 Where immediately before the commencement of this Act any reference in any enactment, instrument or document had effect as if it were a reference to the Secretary of State or the Department for Education and Employment by virtue of the operation of section 2(1) of the <sup>M86</sup>Education Act 1944 and any order made under the Ministers of the <sup>M87</sup>Crown Act 1975, it shall continue to do so despite the repeal of that provision by this Act.

**Marginal Citations**

<sup>M86</sup> 1944 c. 31.

<sup>M87</sup> 1975 c. 26.

- 4 (1) This paragraph applies to enactments passed before 1st April 1945.
- (2) Unless the context otherwise requires any such enactment shall be construed as if—
- (a) any reference to an elementary school or to a public elementary school (whether or not any reference is made there to the payment of parliamentary grants in respect of the school) were a reference to a county school or voluntary school, as the context may require;
- (b) any reference to a school certified by the Board of Education, in accordance with the provisions of Part V of the <sup>M88</sup>Education Act 1921, as suitable for



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- providing education for blind, deaf, defective or epileptic children were a reference to a special school;
- (c) any reference to the managers of a school, in relation to a county school or voluntary school, were a reference to the governors (or, if the context so requires, the governing body) of the school;
  - (d) any reference to elementary education or to higher education were a reference to such education as may be provided by a local education authority in the exercise of their functions under sections 13 to 15 of this Act; and
  - (e) any reference to a local education authority, to a local education authority for elementary education or to a local education authority for higher education were a reference to a local education authority within the meaning of this Act.

**Marginal Citations**

**M88** 1921 c. 51.

*Effect of old transitional provisions and savings*

- 5 The repeals made by this Act shall not affect the operation of any transitional provision or saving relating to the coming into force of a provision reproduced in this Act in so far as the transitional provision or saving is not specifically reproduced in this Act but remains capable of having effect in relation to the corresponding provision of this Act or otherwise.
- 6 (1) The repeal by this Act of an enactment previously repealed subject to savings does not affect the continued operation of those savings.
- (2) The repeal by this Act of a saving on the previous repeal of an enactment does not affect the saving so far as it is not specifically reproduced in this Act but remains capable of having effect.

*Use of existing forms etc.*

- 7 Any reference to an enactment repealed by this Act which is contained in a document made, served or issued after the commencement of that repeal shall be construed, except so far as a contrary intention appears, as a reference or (as the context may require) including a reference to the corresponding provision of this Act.

*Pre-commencement offences*

- 8 Nothing in this Act affects the enactments repealed by this Act in their operation in relation to offences committed before the commencement of this Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART II

### SPECIFIC PROVISIONS

#### *Governing bodies of LEA-maintained schools*

- 9 (1) Any governing body which immediately before the commencement of this Act was incorporated by virtue of section 238 of the <sup>M89</sup>Education Act 1993 (incorporation of governing bodies of county, voluntary and maintained special schools) shall continue in existence as a body corporate despite the repeal of that section by this Act.
- (2) In Schedule 7 to this Act any reference to a governing body incorporated under section 88(1) of this Act includes a reference to a governing body falling within subparagraph (1).
- (3) Despite the repeal by this Act of Schedule 13 to the Education Act 1993 (incorporated governing bodies for county, voluntary and maintained special schools)—
- (a) paragraph 3 of that Schedule (contracts of employment) shall continue to apply to, or in relation to, any contract of employment to which it applied immediately before the commencement of this Act; and
  - (b) to the extent that any provision of paragraphs 13 to 15 (general provisions about transfers) applied in relation to any transfer immediately before the commencement of this Act, it shall continue so to apply.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M89** 1993 c. 35.

- 10 (1) The reproduction by this Act of any reference, in an enactment repealed by this Act, to the governors of a school of any description as a reference to the governing body of a school of that description shall not be taken to affect the construction or operation of that enactment in relation to any times, circumstances or purposes in relation to which it had effect.
- (2) Where by virtue of section 1(4) of the <sup>M90</sup>Education Act 1980 any enactment or document referred immediately before the commencement of this Act to the governors, foundation governors, instrument of government or articles of government of a primary school to which section 1(2) and (3) of that Act applied, it shall continue to do so despite the repeal of section 1(4) by this Act.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M90** 1980 c. 20.

- 11 Where any instrument under which the governing body of an aided or special agreement school is constituted was in force immediately before the commencement of this Act by virtue of paragraph 1 of Schedule 5 to the <sup>M91</sup>Education (No. 2) Act 1986, the instrument shall have effect thereafter as if made by order under section 76 of this Act; but this paragraph shall cease to apply to any such school if it is grouped with any other school or schools under section 89 of this Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Marginal Citations**

**M91** 1986 c. 61.

*Special agreement schools*

- 12 (1) Any order under section 15(2) of the <sup>M92</sup>Education Act 1944 directing that a school is to be a special agreement school shall, if in force immediately before the commencement of this Act, continue in force despite the repeal by this Act of section 15(2) of that Act.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not prejudice the operation of paragraph 1(2) above in relation to other orders in force under section 15(2) of that Act immediately before the commencement of this Act.

**Marginal Citations**

**M92** 1944 c. 31.

*Proposals to establish etc. maintained or grant-maintained schools*

- 13 (1) Nothing in sections 35 to 45 or in sections 259 to 263 of this Act applies in relation to any proposals published before the commencement of this Act; and the corresponding provisions of the <sup>M93</sup>Education Act 1980 and the <sup>M94</sup>Education Act 1993 shall continue to apply in relation to any proposals duly published under section 12(1)(a) to (d) or 13 of the 1980 Act or section 96 or 97 of the 1993 Act as if this Act had not been passed.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent references in other provisions of this Act to proposals published or implemented under any of those sections of this Act from applying, by virtue of paragraph 1(3) above, to any proposals falling within sub-paragraph (1).

**Marginal Citations**

**M93** 1980 c. 20.

**M94** 1993 c. 35.

*Review of constitution of governing bodies*

- 14 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), nothing in section 82 of this Act applies in relation to the implementation of any proposal made before the commencement of this Act, and section 11 of the <sup>M95</sup>Education (No. 2) Act 1986 shall continue to apply in relation to the implementation of any such proposal falling within subsection (2)(a) of that section as if this Act had not been passed.
- (2) In section 82(2) of this Act—
- (a) in paragraph (b), the reference to proposals falling within subsection (3) of that section includes a reference to proposals falling within section 11(2) of the 1986 Act; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in paragraph (c) the reference to a relevant event for the purposes of section 82 includes a reference to a relevant event for the purposes of section 11 of the 1986 Act;
- and any date determined by the local authority under section 11(6) of the 1986 Act shall be taken, for the purposes of section 82(2) of this Act, to be the date on which the proposals in question were implemented.

#### Marginal Citations

**M95** 1986 c. 61.

#### *Confirmation of certain decisions of governing body*

**F1161** 15

#### Textual Amendments

**F1161** Sch. 39 para. 15 repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(f), **Sch.31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**

#### *Review of grouping*

- 16 The reference in section 94(2)(c) of this Act to an order under section 50 or 51 or 58(1) of this Act does not, by virtue of paragraph 1(3) above, include a reference to an order made before the commencement of this Act under section 2 of the <sup>M96</sup>Education Act 1946 or section 15(5) of the <sup>M97</sup>Education Act 1944.

#### Marginal Citations

**M96** 1946 c. 50.

**M97** 1944 c. 31.

#### *Financial delegation*

- 17 (1) Without prejudice to paragraph 1(3) above—
- (a) the reference in section 101(1) of this Act to a scheme made by a local education authority under section 103 of this Act includes a reference to a scheme in force immediately before the commencement of this Act which was made under section 33 of the <sup>M98</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 (including one made by way of variation or replacement of such a scheme under section 35 of that Act); and
- (b) the reference in section 104(6) of this Act to section 104(5) includes a reference to section 34(6) of that Act.
- (2) In relation to any such scheme made (or treated as if made) under section 33 of that Act, the reference in section 110(2) of this Act to the date of the coming into force of the scheme is (subject to sub-paragraph (3) below) a reference to the date of its coming into force as first made under section 33 (or 34(6)) of that Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Where the initial period of any such scheme made before 1st January 1994 (the date on which section 274 of the <sup>M99</sup>Education Act 1993 came into force) was before 1st January 1994 determined by reference to a date later than that referred to in subparagraph (2) above, section 110(2) of this Act shall have effect in relation to the scheme as if it instead referred to that later date.

**Marginal Citations**

**M98** 1988 c. 40.

**M99** 1993 c. 35.

- 18 Nothing in section 141 of this Act requires a local education authority to amend the articles of government of a school if, before the commencement of this Act, they have already amended those articles in accordance with section 44(4) of the <sup>M100</sup>Education Reform Act 1988.

**Marginal Citations**

**M100** 1988 c. 40.

*School sessions*

- 19 For the purposes of section 147(1)(b) of this Act as it applies to a county, controlled or maintained special school, any determination as to the times of the school sessions (within the meaning of section 147) which had effect immediately before the commencement of this Act, whether made—
- (a) by the governing body, or
  - (b) by the local education authority before 1st May 1989 (the date on which section 115 of the Education Reform Act 1988 came into force),
- shall continue to have effect, as if made for those purposes, subject to any new determination under section 148 of this Act.

*Exclusion of pupils*

- 20 Nothing in section 157 of this Act applies in relation to any pupil excluded from a school before the commencement of this Act, and section 23 of the <sup>M101</sup>Education (No. 2) Act 1986 shall continue to apply to any such pupil as if this Act had not been passed.

**Marginal Citations**

**M101** 1986 c. 61.

*School premises: pre-1993 Act transfer of control agreements*

- 21 (1) This paragraph applies to any agreement to which paragraph 6 or 7 of Schedule 13 to the Education Act 1993 (pre-existing transfer of control agreements) applied immediately before the commencement of this Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The provisions of paragraph 6 or (as the case may be) paragraph 7 shall continue to apply in relation to any such agreement as if this Act had not been passed.

*Variation of trust deeds etc.*

- 22 In section 179(1) of this Act—
- (a) paragraph (b) does not apply to a transfer made before the commencement of this Act unless it was made in pursuance of proposals that fell to be implemented under section 12 or 13 of the <sup>M102</sup>Education Act 1980; but
  - (b) in paragraph (d) the reference to any order made by the Secretary of State under section 47 of this Act includes a reference to any order made under section 16(1) of the <sup>M103</sup>Education Act 1944 (whether made in relation to a county school or a voluntary school).

**Marginal Citations**

**M102** 1980 c. 20.

**M103** 1944 c. 31.

*Ballots relating to acquisition of grant-maintained status*

- 23 Section 190(2)(b) of this Act applies where after the commencement of this Act the Secretary of State has given his consent for the purposes of section 186(3) or section 187(5) of this Act.

*Instruments and articles for grant-maintained schools incorporated under pre-1993 Act law*

- 24 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to a grant-maintained school where—
- (a) the governing body of the school were incorporated under Chapter IV of Part I of the <sup>M104</sup>Education Reform Act 1988;
  - (b) an instrument and articles of government were made for the school under that Chapter before 1st January 1994; and
  - (c) immediately before the commencement of this Act those instruments had effect (in accordance with paragraph 1(2) of Schedule 20 to the <sup>M105</sup>Education Act 1993 (transitional provisions and savings)) subject to the modifications specified in either or both of paragraphs 8 and 9 of the <sup>M106</sup>Education Act 1993 (Commencement No. 2 and Transitional Provisions) Order 1993.
- (2) The instrument and articles of government for the school shall continue to have effect, subject to those modifications, as if made under section 220 of this Act and in accordance with Part III of this Act.

**Marginal Citations**

**M104** 1988 c. 40.

**M105** 1993 c. 35.

**M106** S.I. 1993/3106.

- 25 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to a grant-maintained school where—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the governing body of the school were incorporated under Chapter IV of Part I of the Education Reform Act 1988;
  - (b) paragraph 24(1)(b) above does not apply; and
  - (c) immediately before the commencement of this Act the instrument and articles of government prescribed by virtue of section 56 of the Education Act 1993 had effect in relation to the school (in accordance with paragraph 1(3) of Schedule 20 to that Act).
- (2) The instrument and articles of government for the school shall continue to have effect as if made under section 219 of this Act; and while they remain in force Schedule 24 to this Act shall apply in relation to the school with the following modifications.
- (3) In paragraph 10(1) there shall be inserted at the end of paragraph (d) “or
- (e) in the case of a governing body incorporated under Chapter IV of Part I of the Education Reform Act 1988, became a member of the governing body on the incorporation date in relation to the school (as defined by section 104(3) of that Act) and—
    - (i) immediately before that date, was a parent governor (within the meaning of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986) in relation to the school, or
    - (ii) was elected under section 66, or elected or nominated under section 68, of the Education Reform Act 1988 to hold office as a parent governor on the governing body.”
- (4) In paragraph 11(1) there shall be inserted at the end of paragraph (c) “or
- (d) in the case of a governing body incorporated under Chapter IV of Part I of the Education Reform Act 1988, became a member of the governing body on the incorporation date in relation to the school (as defined by section 104(3) of that Act) and—
    - (i) immediately before that date, was a teacher governor (within the meaning of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986) in relation to the school, or
    - (ii) was elected under section 66, or elected or nominated under section 68, of the Education Reform Act 1988 to hold office as a teacher governor on the governing body.”
- (5) In paragraph 12(1) there shall be inserted at the end of paragraph (c) “or
- (d) in the case of a governing body incorporated under Chapter IV of Part I of the Education Reform Act 1988—
    - (i) became a member of the governing body on the incorporation date in relation to the school (as defined by section 104(3) of that Act), and
    - (ii) was selected under section 66, or nominated under section 68, of that Act as being a person appearing to be a member of the local community committed to the good government and continuing viability of the school.”
- 26 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to a grant-maintained school where—
- (a) the governing body of the school were incorporated under Chapter IV of Part I of the <sup>M107</sup>Education Reform Act 1988; and
  - (b) the school was a voluntary school before it became grant-maintained.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(2) Schedule 24 to this Act shall apply in relation to the school with the substitution of the following paragraph for paragraph 13—

“13 “Foundation governor” means—

- (a) a person appointed otherwise than by a local education authority for the purpose of securing, so far as is practicable, that the established character of the school at the time when it became grant-maintained is preserved and developed and, in particular, that the school is conducted in accordance with the provisions of any trust deed relating to it; or
- (b) a person selected under section 66, or nominated under section 68, of the Education Reform Act 1988 for the purpose referred to in subparagraph (a) above.”

**Marginal Citations**

M107 1988 c. 40.

*Appeal committees*

- 27 Nothing in—
- (a) section 308(3) of this Act, or
  - (b) paragraph 7 of Schedule 33 to this Act,
- applies in relation to any decision or action taken by the members of an appeal committee before 1st January 1994.
- 28 Paragraph 13(4) of Schedule 22 to this Act does not apply to any appeal committee constituted before 1st January 1994 in accordance with the instrument of government for any grant-maintained school for the purposes referred to in section 58(5)(d) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (articles of government admission appeal committees) while all the members of the committee are persons who were nominated before that date.
- 29 Where immediately before the commencement of this Act an appeal committee was constituted in accordance with the provisions of Part I of Schedule 2 to the <sup>M108</sup>Education (No. 2) Act 1986 as they had effect by virtue of paragraph 6 of Schedule 20 to the <sup>M109</sup>Education Act 1993 (namely without the amendments made by Schedule 16 to that Act), those provisions shall continue to apply to the committee (in place of the corresponding provisions of Part I of Schedule 33 to this Act) while all the members of the committee are persons nominated before 1st January 1994.

**Marginal Citations**

M108 1986 c. 61.

M109 1993 c. 35.

- 30 Nothing in this Act affects the restriction imposed by paragraph 4(2) of Schedule 2 to the <sup>M110</sup>Education Act 1993 (Commencement No.1 and Transitional Provisions) Order 1993 on the jurisdiction exercisable by a Local Commissioner, by virtue of



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

section 25(5) of the <sup>M111</sup>Local Government Act 1974, in relation to cases where notice of appeal was served before 1st October 1993.

**Marginal Citations**

[M110 S.I. 1993/1975.](#)

[M111 1974 c. 7.](#)

*Maintenance etc. grants*

- 31 (1) The former grants code shall continue to have effect in relation to—
- (a) any payments of maintenance grant under section 79(1) of the <sup>M112</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 in respect of any financial year ending before 1st April 1994; and
  - (b) any payments of capital and special purpose grants under section 79(3) of that Act made before that date.
- (2) The functions conferred on the Secretary of State by or under the former grants code (as it has effect by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) above) shall, so far as relating to any amounts which—
- (a) fall or may fall to be paid in any financial year beginning on or after 1st April 1994 in respect of any grant under that code, or
  - (b) have been paid by the Secretary of State before that date in respect of any such grant,
- be exercisable by the funding authority.
- (3) In this paragraph “the former grants code” means sections 79 and 80 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (maintenance, special purpose and capital grants) in their application to England.

**Marginal Citations**

[M112 1988 c. 40.](#)

- 32 Section 81 of the Education Reform Act 1988 (recovery from local funds of sums in respect of maintenance grant) shall continue to have effect in relation to any sums recoverable by the Secretary of State under section 81(1) of that Act for any financial year ending before 1st April 1994.
- 33 The <sup>M113</sup>Education (Grant-maintained Schools) (Finance) Regulations 1990, so far as in force immediately before the commencement of this Act, shall continue in force despite the repeals made by this Act.

**Marginal Citations**

[M113 S.I. 1990/549.](#)

*Assessments and statements of special educational needs*

- 34 Any assessment or statement of special educational needs which—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) was made pursuant to a notice or copy of a proposed statement served before 1st September 1994, and
  - (b) immediately before the commencement of this Act was treated, by virtue of paragraph 2(7) or 4(3) of Schedule 4 to the <sup>M114</sup>Education Act 1993 (Commencement No.5 and Transitional Provisions) Order 1994, as if it had been made under section 167 or 168 of the <sup>M115</sup>Education Act 1993,
- shall have effect as if made under section 323 or 324 of this Act (as the case may be).

**Marginal Citations**

**M114** S.I. 1994/2038.

**M115** 1993 c. 35.

*Applications relating to special schools*

- 35 Any application which—
- (a) was made to the Secretary of State before 1st April 1994, and
  - (b) immediately before the commencement of this Act was treated, by virtue of paragraph 5 of Schedule 3 to the <sup>M116</sup>Education Act 1993 (Commencement No. 3 and Transitional Provisions) Order 1994, as if it had been made in accordance with—
    - (i) paragraph (a) or paragraph (b) of subsection (2), and subsection (6), of section 183 of the <sup>M117</sup>Education Act 1993, and
    - (ii) section 184(1) to (3) of that Act,
 shall have effect as if made in accordance with paragraph (a) or (as the case may be) paragraph (b) of subsection (1), and subsection (5), of section 339 of this Act and section 340(1) to (3) of this Act.

**Marginal Citations**

**M116** S.I. 1994/507.

**M117** 1993 c. 35.

*Contracts of staff transferred to School Curriculum and Assessment Authority or Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales*

- 36 (1) The repeal by this Act of—
- (a) section 15 of the <sup>M118</sup>Education Reform Act 1988 (transfer of staff of School Curriculum Development Committee or Secondary Examinations Council), or
  - (b) section 248 of the Education Act 1993 (transfer of staff of National Curriculum Council and School Examinations and Assessment Council),
- shall not affect the continued operation of section 15(3) to (5) or (as the case may be) section 248(2) and (3) in relation to any contract of employment in relation to which those provisions applied immediately before the commencement of this Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Nothing in this Act shall affect the continued operation of Article 4 of the <sup>M119</sup>Education (School Curriculum and Assessment Authority) (Transfer of Functions) Order 1995 in relation to the person mentioned in that Article.

**Marginal Citations**

**M118** 1988 c. 40.

**M119** S.I. 1995/903.

*Information about directions under section 365*

- 37 Nothing in section 366 of this Act applies, by virtue of paragraph 1 above, to any direction given before the commencement of this Act under regulations made under section 19 of the Education Reform Act 1988, and that section shall continue to apply in relation to any such direction as if this Act had not been passed.

*Review of conclusions about policy relating to curriculum*

- 38 Any articles of government of a county, controlled or maintained special school made under section 18(7) of the <sup>M120</sup>Education (No. 2) Act 1986 shall, in their operation after the commencement of this Act in accordance with paragraph 1 above, have effect as if the events requiring the governing body to review their conclusions about the matters mentioned in section 371(2) and (3) of this Act included the implementation of any proposals made after that time which—
- (a) would fall to be published by virtue of section 35 of this Act but for subsection (2)(b) of that section, and
  - (b) materially affect the school.

**Marginal Citations**

**M120** 1986 c. 61.

*Agreed syllabuses of religious education*

- 39 (1) Nothing in this Act affects the constitution of, or the operation of Schedule 5 to the <sup>M121</sup>Education Act 1944 in relation to, any conference convened (or reconvened) before the commencement of this Act.
- (2) Any regulations made under section 258(2) of the <sup>M122</sup>Education Act 1993 and having effect immediately before the commencement of this Act in relation to any conference or other body falling within section 258(1) or (3) shall continue to have effect in relation to any such conference or body, subject to the provisions of any regulations made under section 397(2) of this Act.

**Marginal Citations**

**M121** 1944 c. 31.

**M122** 1993 c. 35.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Arrangements for collective worship*

- 40 In section 385 of this Act—
- (a) subsection (4)(b) does not affect any arrangements for collective worship in the case of a grant-maintained school that was formerly a voluntary school which were made before the commencement of this Act for the purposes of section 6 of the <sup>M123</sup>Education Reform Act 1988; and
  - (b) subsection (6) does not affect any arrangements made for the purposes of section 6(5) of that Act before the commencement of this Act.

**Marginal Citations**

M123 1988 c. 40.

*Disqualification for purposes of Part VII*

- 41 Sections 472 and 473 of this Act shall apply to a person who is disqualified—
- (a) from being the proprietor of an independent school, or
  - (b) from being a teacher in any school,
- by virtue of an order under Part III of the Education Act 1944 made before 1st January 1994 as if the words “or other employee” were omitted, wherever occurring.

*Chairmen of Independent Schools Tribunals*

- 42 In its application to a person who, immediately before 31st March 1995, was a member of the legal panel appointed under paragraph 1 of Schedule 6 to the Education Act 1944, paragraph 3(2) of Schedule 34 to this Act has effect subject to Schedule 7 to the Judicial Pensions and <sup>M124</sup>Retirement Act 1993 (transitional provisions), as well as to section 26(4) to (6) of that Act.

**Marginal Citations**

M124 1993 c. 8.

*Training grants*

- 43 The <sup>M125</sup>Education (Training Grants) Regulations 1993 shall continue to have effect in so far as they relate to the payment of grant on and after 1st April 1994, or to grant paid before that date, in respect of expenditure incurred before that date.

**Marginal Citations**

M125 S.I. 1993/72.

*Education committees etc. and members of those committees*

- 44 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) below applies to—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any education committee established in accordance with paragraph 1 of Part II of Schedule 1 to the Education Act 1944, and
  - (b) any sub-committee of any such committee appointed in accordance with paragraph 10 of that Part,
- which was in existence immediately before 1st April 1994.
- (2) Any committee or sub-committee to which this sub-paragraph applies shall, for the purposes of any enactment, be treated as if it had been—
- (a) appointed on that date—
    - (i) in the case of a committee, by the local authority, or
    - (ii) in the case of a sub-committee, by the committee appointed by the authority,in accordance with section 102(1) of the <sup>M126</sup>Local Government Act 1972, and
  - (b) so appointed wholly or partly for the purpose of discharging any functions with respect to education conferred on them in their capacity as a local education authority or, as the case may be, the committee's functions with respect to education.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (4) below applies to any person who was immediately before 1st April 1994 a member of an education committee or sub-committee of such a committee appointed for a term of office.
- (4) Any person to whom this sub-paragraph applies shall, for the purposes of any enactment, be treated—
- (a) as if he had been appointed on that date as a member of a committee or sub-committee appointed as mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) above for the residue of that term, and
  - (b) if he was a member of an education committee or sub-committee by virtue of directions given by the Secretary of State under paragraph 5A of Part II of Schedule 1 to the <sup>M127</sup>Education Act 1944, as if he had been appointed on that date as a member of a committee or sub-committee appointed as mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) above by virtue of directions given by the Secretary of State under section 297 of the <sup>M128</sup>Education Act 1993 or, in relation to any time after the commencement of this Act, under section 499 of this Act.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M126** 1972 c. 70.

**M127** 1944 c. 31.

**M128** 1993 c. 35.

#### *Documents issued by divisional executives*

- 45 Section 566(1) of this Act applies to a document purporting—
- (a) to be a document issued by a divisional executive (within the meaning of Part III of Schedule 1 to the Education Act 1944), and
  - (b) to be signed by the person authorised by the executive to sign it,
- as it applies to a document falling within paragraph (a) of that provision.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### PART III

#### MISCELLANEOUS SAVINGS ETC.

##### *Handicapped children*

- 46 The repeal by this Act of the <sup>M129</sup>Education (Handicapped Children) Act 1970 shall not affect the operation of any order made under section 1 of that Act so far as in force immediately before the commencement of this Act or of any statement of terms and conditions of employment given in connection with any such order.

##### **Marginal Citations**

**M129** 1970 c. 52.

##### *Byelaws under Children and Young Persons Act 1933*

- 47 Despite the repeal by this Act of section 120(5) of the Education Act 1944—
- (a) references to a “child” in any byelaws made under Part II of the <sup>M130</sup>Children and Young Persons Act 1933 (employment of children) shall continue to be construed as references to a child within the meaning of that Part of that Act; and
  - (b) any such byelaws made before 1st April 1945 which were continued in force by section 120(5) shall, if in force immediately before the commencement of this Act, continue in force as if made by the local education authority for the area in question and may be varied or revoked accordingly.

##### **Marginal Citations**

**M130** 1933 c. 12.

##### *Disputes as to property transferred by virtue of 1944 Act*

- 48 Any question which, if it had arisen before the commencement of this Act, would have fallen to be determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with section 96(2) of the <sup>M131</sup>Education Act 1944 (questions relating to property etc. transferred to LEAs) shall be determined by him despite the repeal of that provision by this Act.

##### **Marginal Citations**

**M131** 1944 c. 31.

##### *Modifications of deeds made prior to Education Act 1973*

- 49 Without prejudice to the generality of paragraph 6(2) above, any order to which paragraph 3 of Schedule 1 to the <sup>M132</sup>Education Act 1973 (saving on repeals made by that Act) applied immediately before the commencement of this Act shall continue

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

in force despite the repeal by this Act of that paragraph; and section 570 of this Act shall apply to any such order as if it had been made under this Act.

**Marginal Citations**

**M132** 1973 c. 16.

*Instruments made prior to Local Government Act 1972*

50 The repeal by this Act of section 192(5) and (6) of the <sup>M133</sup>Local Government Act 1972 (transitional provisions about instruments made by old LEAs) shall not affect the continued operation of those provisions in relation to any instrument in relation to which they applied or were applicable immediately before the commencement of this Act.

**Marginal Citations**

**M133** 1972 c. 70.

**PART IV**

INTERPRETATION

51 In this Schedule “repeal” includes (so far as the context permits) revoke or revocation.

<sup>F1162</sup>SCHEDULE 40

**Textual Amendments**

**F1162** Sch. 40 repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 189(g), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S. I. 1998/2212, art. 2, **Sch. 1 Pt. I**

TABLE OF DERIVATIONS

*Notes:*

- 1 This Table shows the derivation of the provisions of the Bill.
- 2 The following abbreviations are used in the Table:—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

*Acts of Parliament*

---

1944	= Education Act 1944 (c.31)
1946	= Education Act 1946 (c.50)
1948	= Education (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1948 (c.40)
1953	= Education (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1953 (c.33)
1962	= Education Act 1962 (c.12)
1964	= Education Act 1964 (c.82)
1967	= Education Act 1967 (c.3)
1968	= Education Act 1968 (c.17)
1972LG	= Local Government Act 1972 (c.70)
1973EWE	= Education (Work Experience) Act 1973 (c.23)
1973NHSR	= National Health Service Reorganisation Act 1973 (c.32)
1976	= Education Act 1976 (c.81)
1978IA	= Interpretation Act 1978 (c.30)
1980	= Education Act 1980 (c.20)
1981	= Education Act 1981 (c.60)
1982LG(MP)	= Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1982 (c.30)
1984	= Education (Grants and Awards) Act 1984 (c.11)
1986	= Education (No.2) Act 1986 (c.61)
1988	= Education Reform Act 1988 (c.40)
1992FHE	= Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c.13)
1992(S)	= Education (Schools) Act 1992 (c.38)
1993	= Education Act 1993 (c.35)
1994LG(W)	= Local Government (Wales) Act 1994 (c. 19)
1994	= Education Act 1994 (c.30)
1995HA	= Health Authorities Act 1995 (c.17)
1996ER	= Employment Rights Act 1996 (c.18)
1996N	= Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996 (c.50)

---



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Subordinate legislation*

---

S.I. 1968/1699	= Secretary of State for Social Services Order 1968
S.I. 1977/293	= Local Authorities etc. (Miscellaneous Provision) Order 1977
S.I. 1991/1890	= Education (Financial Delegation for Primary Schools) Regulations 1991
S.I. 1992/110	= Education (Financial Delegation for Primary Schools) (Amendment) Regulations 1992
S.I. 1992/1548	= Education (National Curriculum) (Foundation Subjects at Key Stage 4) Order 1992
S.I. 1993/1975	= Education Act 1993 (Commencement No. 1 and Transitional Provisions) Order 1993
S.I. 1993/3106	= Education Act 1993 (Commencement No. 2 and Transitional Provisions) 1993
S.I. 1994/507	= Education Act 1993 (Commencement No. 3 and Transitional Provisions) Order 1994
S.I. 1994/1814	= Education (National Curriculum) (Foundation Subjects at Key Stage 4) Order 1994
S.I. 1994/2038	= Education Act 1993 (Commencement No. 5 and Transitional Provisions) Order 1994
S.I. 1994/2092	= Education (No.2) Act 1986 (Amendment) (No.2) Order 1994
S.I. 1996/951	= Deregulation (Length of the School Day) Order 1996

---

- 3 The abbreviation “Law Com. Rec. No.” followed by a number refers to a recommendation set out in the paragraph of that number in Appendix 1 to the Report of the Law Commission (Cm.3251).
- 4 By virtue of the Secretary of State for Education and Science Order 1964 (S.I. 1964/490) all the functions of the Minister of Education were transferred to the Secretary of State for Education and Science. By virtue of further Transfer of Functions Orders (S.Is.1970/1536, 1978/274 and 1995/2986) all the functions so transferred are now exercisable by the Secretary of State at large. The effect of these Orders is not separately acknowledged in the Table against each of the provisions affected.
- 5 The Table also does not separately acknowledge the provisions of general effect contained in the Criminal Law Act 1977 and the Criminal Justice Act 1982 which secure that, where the maximum fine that may be imposed on the commission of a

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

summary offence was originally expressed as a particular amount (or one particular amount on a first conviction and another on subsequent convictions), the amount of the maximum fine is now a particular level on the standard scale.

<b>Provision</b>	<b>Derivation</b>
1(1)	1944 s.7.
(2) to (4)	Drafting.
2(1)	1944 ss.8(1)(a), 114(1) (“primary education”); 1948 s.3(2).
(2)	1944 ss.8(1)(b), 114(1) (“secondary education”); 1992FHE ss.10(1), 14(2), Sch.8 para.13(2).
(3)	1944 ss.41(3), (4), 114(1) (“further education”); 1992FHE s.11, Sch.8 para.13(2).
(4)	1992FHE s.14(1).
(5)	1992FHE s.14(3).
(6)	1944 s.41(5); 1992FHE s.11.
(7)	1992FHE s.14(4).
3(1)	1944 s.114(1) (“pupil”); 1992FHE s.14(6), Sch.8 para.13(2).
(2)	1944 s.114(1) (“junior pupil”; “senior pupil”).
(3)	1992FHE s.14(6).
4(1)	1944 s.114(1) (“school”); 1992FHE s.14(5); 1993 s.304(1).
(2)	Law Com. Rec. No. 2.
(3)	1992FHE s.91(3).
(4)	1992FHE s.91(5).
5(1)	1944 s.114(1) (“primary school”); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.13(2); 1993 s.304(2).
(2)	1944 s.114(1) (“secondary school”); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.13(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.24(1).
(3)	Drafting.
(4)	1964 s.1(2); 1980 Sch.3 para.12.
(5)	1964 s.1(3); 1993 Sch.19 para.38(3).
6(1)	1944 s.9(4).
(2)	1993 s.182(1).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

7	1944 s.36; 1981 s.17.
8	1993 s.277.
9	1944 s.76; 1993 Sch.19 para.20; 1996N Sch.3 para.1.
10	1993 s.1.
11	1993 s.2.
12(1)	1944 ss.6(1), 114(1) (“county”; “local education authority”); 1972LG ss.179(2), 192(1); S.I. 1977/293; 1994LG(W) s.21(2).
(2)	1944 s.114(1) (“local education authority”); 1972LG s.192(1); S.I. 1977/293 art.4; Local Government Changes for England Regulations 1994 (S.I. 1994/867) reg.5(6); Local Government Changes for England (Amendment) Regulations 1996 (S.I. 1996/611) reg.2.
(3)	London Government Act 1963 (c.33) s.30(1)(a); 1988 s.163.
(4)	1988 ss.163, 235(4).
(5)	1944 ss.6(1), 114(1) (“local education authority”); 1972LG s.192(1); S.I. 1977/293; 1994LG(W) s.21(1), (2).
(6)	Drafting.
13(1)	1944 s.7.
(2)	1992FHE s.91(2), (4), Sch.8 para.2.
14(1)	1944 s.8(1); 1992FHE s.10(1).
(2), (3)	1944 s.8(1).
(4)	1980 s.24(2).
(5)	1944 s.8(1A); 1992FHE s.10(2).
(6)	1944 s.8(2); 1981 s.2(1); 1992FHE s.10(3).
(7)	1944 s.8(2) proviso; 1964 s.1(3).
15(1) to (3)	1944 s.41(1), (2); 1992FHE s.11.
(4)	1944 s.41(6); 1992FHE s.11.
(5)	1944 s.41(7), (8); 1992FHE s.11.
(6), (7)	1944 s.41(9), (10); 1992FHE s.11.
(8)	1944 s.41(2), (11); 1992FHE s.11.
16(1)	1944 s.9(1); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.4.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(2)	1944 s.9(6).
(3)	1944 s.9(7); 1992FHE s.12(1).
17(1)	1980 s.24(1).
(2)	1980 s.24(2).
18	1953 s.6(1).
19(1) to (4)	1993 s.298(1) to (4).
(5) to (7)	1993 s.298(6) to (8).
20	1993 s.3.
21	1993 s.4.
22	Drafting.
23	1993 s.8.
24	1993 s.9.
25	1993 s.6.
26	1993 s.5.
27	1993 s.12.
28	1993 s.20.
29(1)	1944 s.92.
(2)	1993 s.7(3).
(3), (4)	1993 s.21(2), (3).
(5)	1980 s.8(5B), (7); 1992(S) Sch.4 para.4.
(6)	1980 s.9(1).
30(1), (2)	1993 s.7(1), (2).
(3)	1993 s.7(4).
(4)	1993 s.21(1).
(5)	1993 s.21(3).
31(1), (2)	1944 s.9(2).
(3)	1944 s.9(2); 1993 s.298(5).
32(1)	1944 s.15(1).
(2)	1944 s.15(2); 1986 Sch.4 para.1.
(3), (4)	Drafting.
(5)	1944 s.114(1), Sch.3 para.11.
(6)	Drafting.
33	Drafting.
34(1)	1944 s.114(1) (“maintain”), (2); 1993 s.305(1) (“local education authority”); drafting.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(2)	1944 s.114(2).
(3)	1944 s.114(2); 1946 Sch.1 para.1.
(4)	1944 s.114(2); 1946 Sch.1 para.1.
(5)	Rating and Valuation Act 1961 (c.45) s.12(6).
35(1)	1980 s.12(1); 1993 s.229(1).
(2)	1980 s.16(1A); 1993 Sch.19 para.78; Law Com. Rec. No. 3.
(3)	1980 s.12(2).
(4)	1980 s.12(2A); 1988 s.31(4).
(5)	1980 s.12(1A); 1993 s.229(1).
(6)	1992FHE s.59(3), (4).
(7)	1993 ss.272(6), 273(1).
(8)	1993 s.273(2).
36(1)	1980 s.12(3); 1993 s.229(2).
(2)	1980 s.12(3).
(3)	1993 s.229(3).
(4)	1980 s.12(3).
(5), (6)	1980 s.16(3A), (3B); 1988 Sch.12 para.81.
37(1)	1980 s.12(4), (5); 1993 s.273(4).
(2)	1980 s.12(4).
(3)	1980 s.12(5).
(4)	1993 s.273(3).
(5)	1980 s.12(6).
(6)	1980 s.12(4).
(7)	1993 s.273(4).
(8)	1993 s.273(5).
(9)	1993 s.273(6).
38(1), (2)	1980 s.12(7).
(3)	1980 s.12(8).
39(1), (2)	1980 s.14(1).
(3)	Drafting.
40(1)	1980 s.12(9).
(2)	1980 s.14(3).
(3)	1980 s.12(9).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(4), (5)	1980 s.16(1).
41(1)	1980 s.13(1).
(2)	1980 s.13(1); 1993 s.230(1).
(3)	1980 s.16(1A); 1993 Sch.19 para.78; Law Com. Rec. No. 3.
(4)	1980 s.13(1A); 1992FHE s.12(2).
(5), (6)	1980 s.13(2); 1988 s.31(5).
(7)	1980 s.13(1B); 1993 s.230(1).
(8)	1992FHE s.59(3), (4).
(9)	1993 s.273(2).
42(1)	1980 s.13(3); 1993 s.230(2).
(2)	1980 s.13(3).
(3)	1980 s.13(3A); 1993 s.230(3).
(4)	1993 s.230(6).
(5), (6)	1980 s.16(3A), (3B); 1988 Sch.12 para.81.
43(1), (2)	1980 s.13(4).
(3) to (6)	1993 s.273(3) to (6).
(7)	Law Com. Rec. No. 4.
44(1)	1980 s.14(1); 1993 Sch.19 para.77.
(2)	1980 s.14(1).
(3), (4)	1980 s.14(2); Law Com. Rec. No. 4.
45(1)	1980 s.13(5); Law Com. Rec. No. 4.
(2)	1980 s.13(6); 1993 s.230(4).
(3)	1980 s.14(3).
(4)	1980 s.13(7).
(5), (6)	1980 s.16(1).
(7)	1980 s.13(8); 1993 s.230(5).
46(1)	1944 s.16(2); 1980 Sch.3 para.1.
(2)	1944 s.16(2).
(3)	1944 s.16(2).
(4)	1944 s.16(3).
(5)	1944 s.16(3).
47(1)	1944 s.16(1).
(2)	1946 Sch.1 para.2(1); Law Com. Rec. No. 5.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(3), (4)	1944 s.16(3).
48(1)	1944 s.15(2); 1986 Sch.4 para.1.
(2)	1944 s.15(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.7.
(3)	1944 s.105(3).
(4)	1944 s.105(3); 1993 Sch.19 para.23(b).
49	1964 s.1(1); 1968 s.2; 1980 Sch.3 para.11.
50(1)	1946 s.2(1).
(2)	1946 s.2(1), (7).
(3)	1946 s.2(7).
(4)	1946 s.2(2); 1980 Sch.3 para.7.
(5)	1946 s.16(1) (“department”).
51(1)	1946 ss.2(1).
(2), (3)	1946 s.2(3), (4).
(4)	1946 s.2(1), (7).
(5)	1946 s.2(7).
(6)	1946 s.2(2); 1980 Sch.3 para.7.
(7)	1946 s.2(8).
(8)	1946 s.16(1) (“department”).
52(1)	1986 s.54(3).
(2)	1986 s.54(4).
(3)	1986 s.54(3).
53(1), (2)	1986 s.54(5).
(3), (4)	1986 s.54(13), (14); 1988 Sch.12 para.102.
54(1)	1986 s.54(1).
(2)	1986 s.54(2); Law Com. Rec. No. 6.
(3)	1986 s.54(7).
(4)	1986 s.54(6).
(5), (6)	1986 s.54(12).
55	1986 s.54(8) to (11).
56(1)	1986 s.55(1), (2).
(2)	1986 s.55(2).
(3)	1986 s.55(1).
(4), (5)	1986 s.55(3), (4).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

57(1)	1944 s.15(4); 1946 s.2(5), Sch.1 para.2(1).
(2)	1944 s.15(4); 1946 Sch.1 para.2(1).
(3)	1944 s.15(4A); 1946 Sch.1 para.2(2); 1993 s.282(2), (4).
(4)	1944 s.15(4); 1946 s.2(5), Sch.1 para.2(1); drafting.
58(1)	1944 s.15(5).
(2)	1944 s.15(5); 1993 Sch.19 para.7.
(3)	Drafting.
59(1)	1944 s.15(3).
(2)	1944 s.15(3); 1946 Sch.2 Pt.II.
(3)	1944 s.15(3); 1946 Sch.2 Pt.II.
(4)	1944 s.15(3); 1946 Sch.2 Pt.II.
(5)	1946 Sch.1 para.2(1).
60(1)	1946 Sch.1 para.1; 1980 Sch.3 para.8.
(2), (3)	1946 Sch.1 para.6.
(4) to (6)	1946 Sch.1 para.7.
(7)	Reverter of Sites Act 1987 (c.15) s.8(1).
61(1)	1946 Sch.1 para.1; 1980 Sch.3 para.8.
(2), (3)	1946 Sch.1 para.6.
(4)	1946 Sch.1 para.3.
(5)	1946 Sch.1 para.4.
(6)	1946 Sch.1 para.5.
62(1)	1946 s.16(1) (“site”).
(2), (3)	1946 Sch.1 para.8.
(4)	1946 Sch.1 para.9; 1992FHE Sch.8 para.14.
63(1)	1953 s.2; 1980 Sch.3 para.9.
(2)	1953 s.2.
(3)	1953 s.2; 1988 s.114, Sch.12 para.8.
64(1)	1946 s.1(1); 1953 s.3; 1968 Sch.1 para.6; 1980 Sch.3 para.6.
(2)	1946 s.1(1).
(3)	1946 s.1(1); 1953 s.3; 1967 s.2.
65	1993 s.281.
66	1988 s.212.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

67(1), (2)	1944 s.105(1).
(3)	1944 s.105(2); 1968 Sch.1 para.4(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.23(a).
(4)	1944 s.105(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.23(a).
68	1993 s.282(1).
69	1993 s.283.
70	1993 s.284.
71	1944 s.99(3).
72	1944 s.65.
73	1946 s.4(1).
74	1946 s.6.
75	1993 s.285.
76(1)	1986 s.1(1).
(2)	1986 s.1(2).
(3), (4)	1986 s.1(3), (5).
(5)	1986 s.1(6).
77(1) to (7)	1986 s.2.
(8)	Drafting.
78(1)	1986 s.65(1) (“co-opted governor”).
(2)	1944 s.114(1) (“foundation governors”); 1980 Sch.1 para.13(a).
(3)	1986 s.65(1) (“parent governor”).
(4)	1986 s.65(1) (“teacher governor”).
(5)	1986 s.65(1) (“parent governor”; “teacher governor”).
79(1), (2)	1986 s.3(1) to (5).
(3), (4)	1986 s.3(6), (7).
80(1)	1986 s.7(1).
(2)	1986 s.7(2); National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c.19) Sch.9 para.31; 1995HA Sch.1 para.112.
(3) to (5)	1986 s.7(3) to (5).
(6)	1986 s.7(6).
(7)	1986 s.7(6).
(8)	1986 s.7(6).
(9)	1986 s.7(7).
81(1)	1986 s.5(1).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(2)	1986 s.5(3).
(3)	1986 s.5(2).
(4), (5)	1986 s.5(4).
82(1)	1986 s.11(1).
(2)	1986 s.11(2).
(3)	1986 s.11(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.91(a); Law Com. Rec. No. 3.
(4)	1986 s.11(3); 1993 Sch.19 para.91(d); Law Com. Rec. No. 7.
(5), (6)	1986 s.11(4), (5).
(7)	1986 s.11(6); 1993 Sch.19 para.91(d); Law Com. Rec. No. 7.
83	1986 s.14.
84(1)	1986 s.4(1), (2).
(2)	1986 s.4(3).
(3)	1986 s.4(2).
(4) to (6)	1986 s.4(4) to (6).
85	1986 s.4A; 1993 s.271(1).
86	1986 s.13(1) to (3).
87(1)	1986 s.13(4).
(2)	1986 s.13(7), (9).
(3)	1986 s.13(8).
(4)	1986 s.13(5).
(5)	1986 s.13(6), (9).
88(1)	1993 s.238(1), (8); drafting.
(2)	Drafting.
89(1)	1986 s.9(1).
(2)	1986 s.9(1A); 1993 s.271(3)(a).
(3)	1986 s.9(2).
(4)	1986 s.9(3).
(5), (6)	1986 Sch.1 para.1(1), (2).
90(1), (2)	1986 s.10(1).
(3)	1986 s.10(3).
(4)	1986 s.10(2).
(5)	1986 s.10(4).
(6)	1986 s.10(7).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

91(1)	1986 s.10(5).
(2)	1986 s.10(6).
92(1)	1986 Sch.1 para.2(1).
(2)	1986 Sch.1 para.2(1).
(3)	1986 Sch.1 para.2(2).
(4)	1986 Sch.1 para.2(3).
93	1986 Sch.1 para.3.
94(1)	1986 s.9(4).
(2)	1986 s.9(5); 1993 Sch.19 para.90; Law Com. Rec. No. 8.
(3)	1986 s.9(4).
95(1)	1986 s.9(6).
(2)	1986 s.9(7).
(3)	1986 s.9(7); 1993 s.271(3)(b).
(4)	1986 s.9(8).
96(1)	1986 s.12(1); 1993 Sch.19 para.92(a).
(2)	1986 s.12(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.92(b).
(3)	1986 s.12(4); 1993 Sch.19 para.92(d).
(4)	1986 Sch.2 para.5(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.109(c).
(5)	1986 Sch.2 para.5(1).
97(1)	1986 s.12(1), (2), (9).
(2)	1986 s.12(4).
(3)	1986 ss.12(5), (9), 65(1) (“promoters”); Law Com. Rec. No. 9.
(4)	1986 ss.12(6), (9), 65(1) (“promoters”); Law Com. Rec. No. 9.
(5)	1986 ss.12(7), 65(1) (“promoters”); Law Com. Rec. No. 9.
(6)	1986 s.12(8).
(7)	1986 Sch.2 para.5(2).
(8)	1986 Sch.2 para.5(1).
98	Drafting.
99(1)	1986 Sch.2 para.3(1).
(2)	1986 Sch.2 para.3(7).
(3)	Drafting.
100(1), (2)	Law Com. Rec. No. 10.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(3)	1986 Sch.2 para.3(6).
(4)	1986 Sch.2 para.3(6); drafting.
101(1)	1988 s.51(2)(a)(i); 1993 s.274(4).
(2)	1988 s.51(2)(a)(ii).
(3)	1988 s.33(2), (4); 1992FHE s.12(5).
(4)	1988 s.33(4); 1992FHE s.12(5).
(5)	1988 s.33(5).
(6)	1988 s.51(2)(b).
102	1988 s.33(3).
103	1988 s.33(1), (2).
104(1), (2)	1988 s.34(1), (2).
(3)	1988 s.34(4); 1993 s.274(1).
(4) to (6)	1988 s.34(5) to (7)
105(1)	1988 s.33(4).
(2)	1988 s.33(5).
(3)	1988 ss.33(4), 38(4), 51(1) ("expenditure of a capital nature").
106(1)	1988 s.38(1).
(2)	1988 s.38(1), (2).
(3)	1988 s.38(2).
(4)	1988 s.38(3).
(5)	1988 s.38(3A); 1992FHE s.12(7).
(6)	1988 s.33(5).
107(1)	1988 s.39(1); S.I. 1991/1890; S.I. 1992/110.
(2)	1988 s.39(4); S.I. 1991/1890; S.I. 1992/110.
108	1988 s.39(10).
109(1)	1988 s.39(11).
(2)	1988 s.39(12).
(3)	1988 s.39(11).
110(1)	1988 s.40(1).
(2)	1988 s.40(2); 1993 s.274(3).
(3) to (5)	1988 s.40(3) to (5).
111	1988 s.35(1), (2); 1993 s.274(2).
112(1) to (3)	1988 s.35(3); 1993 s.274(2).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(4)	1988 s.35(4); 1993 s.274(2).
113(1), (2)	1988 s.35(5); 1993 s.274(2).
(3), (4)	1988 s.35(6); 1993 s.274(2).
(5)	1988 s.35(4); 1993 s.274(2).
114	1988 s.35(7), (8); 1993 s.274(2).
115	1988 s.33(6)(a), (b).
116(1) to (3)	1988 s.36(1) to (3).
(4)	1988 s.36(4); 1993 Sch.19 para.125(a).
(5)	1988 s.36(5).
(6)	1988 s.36(5A); 1992FHE s.12(6).
(7)	1988 s.36(5B); 1993 Sch.19 para.125(b).
(8)	1988 s.36(6).
117(1)	1988 s.37(1).
(2), (3)	1988 s.37(2).
(4), (5)	1988 s.37(3).
(6)	1988 s.37(4).
118(1) to (3)	1988 s.37(5).
(4), (5)	1988 s.37(6), (7).
119	1988 s.37(8), (9).
120	1988 s.43; 1993 s.276.
121	1988 s.42(1).
122(1), (2)	1988 s.42(2), (3).
(3)	Drafting.
(4)	1988 s.42(4); 1993 s.275(1)(c).
(5)	1988 s.42(7).
(6)	1988 s.42(8); 1993 s.275(1)(d).
(7)	1988 s.42(9).
123	1988 s.42A; 1993 s.275(2).
124(1)	1988 s.50(2), (5).
(2)	1988 s.50(3)
(3)	Drafting.
(4)	1988 s.50(6).
(5)	1988 s.50(10).
(6) to (8)	1988 s.50(7) to (9).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

125(1)	1988 s.49(1).
(2), (3)	1988 s.49(2).
(4)	1988 s.49(3).
126	Drafting.
127(1), (2)	1986 s.1(1), (2).
(3), (4)	1986 s.1(4), (5).
128(1) to (3)	1986 s.2(1) to (3).
(4) to (6)	1986 s.2(5) to (7).
(7)	Drafting.
129(1)	1988 s.51(3).
(2), (3)	1988 s.51(4), (5).
(4)	1988 s.51(4).
(5)	1988 s.51(6).
130	1986 s.16(1).
131	1986 s.16(2).
132	1986 s.16(3); Law Com. Rec. No. 11.
133(1) to (3)	1986 s.34.
(4)	Drafting.
(5)	1986 s.35(1).
(6)	Drafting.
134(1)	1944 s.24(2).
(2), (3)	1944 s.24(2), proviso (a).
(4)	1944 s.24(2), proviso (b).
(5)	1944 s.22(4); 1986 Sch.4 para.2; 1993 Sch.13 para.4(6).
(6)	1944 s.22(5); 1993 Sch.13 para.4(4).
(7)	Drafting.
135(1) to (4)	1986 s.40(1) to (4).
(5), (6)	1986 s.40(6), (7).
(7)	Drafting.
(8)	1986 s.40(5).
136(1), (2)	1988 s.44(1), (2); Law Com. Rec. No. 12.
(3)	1988 s.44(3), (5).
137(1), (2)	1988 s.45(1), (2).
(3), (4)	1988 s.45(3).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(5)	1988 s.45(9).
(6)	1988 s.45(10).
138(1)	1988 s.45(1), (4).
(2)	1988 s.45(6).
(3)	1988 s.45(5).
(4)	1988 s.45(7).
(5)	1988 s.45(8).
139(1), (2)	1988 s.46(2).
(3) to (6)	1988 s.46(3) to (6).
(7)	1988 s.235(2)(f); 1996ER Sch.1 para.37(5).
140	1988 s.47.
141(1)	1988 ss.44(4), 45(11).
(2)	1988 s.44(4); Law Com. Rec. No. 12.
(3)	1988 s.45(11).
(4)	1988 s.51(6).
142	Drafting.
143(1), (2)	1944 s.27(2).
(3)	1944 s.27(2) proviso.
(4) to (6)	1944 s.27(3) to (5); 1988 Sch.1 para.2(1).
(7)	Drafting.
144(1), (2)	1944 s.28(3), Sch.3 para.7; 1988 Sch.1 para.3(2).
(3)	1944 s.28(4); 1988 Sch.1 para.3(2).
(4)	Drafting.
145	1944 s.28(2); 1988 Sch.1 para.3(2).
146(1)	1944 s.30.
(2) to (4)	1944 s.30; 1988 Sch.1 para.4(b).
147(1)	1986 s.21(1); 1988 s.115; S.I. 1996/951 art.3(1).
(2)	1986 s.21(4); 1988 s.115.
(3)	1986 s.21(4); 1988 s.115; S.I. 1996/951 art.3(1).
148(1) to (4)	S.I. 1996/951 art.3(2) to (5).
(5)	Drafting.
149(1), (2)	1986 s.42(1), (2); 1993 Sch.13 para.5.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(3), (4)	1986 s.42(3); 1993 Sch.13 para.5.
(5)	1986 s.42(4); 1993 Sch.13 para.5; S.I. 1996/951 art.5.
150(1)	1944 s.22(3); 1993 Sch.13 para.4(2), (6).
(2)	1944 s.22(1).
(3)	1944 s.22(5); 1993 Sch.13 para.4(4).
151(1) to (3)	1944 s.22(3A) to (3C); 1993 Sch.13 para.4(3).
(4), (5)	1944 s.22(3D); 1993 Sch.13 para.4(3).
(6)	1944 s.22(3E); 1993 Sch.13 para.4(3).
(7)	1944 s.22(6); 1978IA s.17(2)(a); 1993 Sch.13 para.4(5).
(8)	Drafting.
152(1), (2)	1944 s.22(1); 1993 Sch.13 para.4(6).
(3), (4)	1944 s.22(2); 1993 Sch.13 para.4(6).
(5)	Drafting.
153	1986 s.21(5); 1988 s.115.
154(1)	1986 s.22.
(2)	1986 s.22(d).
(3)	1986 s.22(a); 1993 Sch.19 para.95.
(4)	1986 s.22(b).
(5)	1986 s.22(c).
(6)	1986 s.22(e).
155	1986 s.28.
156(1)	1986 s.22(f).
(2), (3)	1993 s.261(1), (2).
157(1)	Law Com. Rec. No. 13.
(2)	1986 s.23(a); Law Com. Rec. No. 13.
(3)	1986 s.23(b).
(4)	1986 s.23(a), (b); Law Com. Rec. No. 13.
(5)	1986 s.23(a); Law Com. Rec. No. 13.
158	Drafting.
159(1) to (4)	1986 s.26(1) to (4).
(5), (6)	1986 s.26(5).
(7)	1986 s.26(1), (2).



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

160	1986 s.27.
161(1)	1986 s.30(1).
(2)	Drafting.
(3)	1986 s.30(3).
(4)	1986 s.30(4).
162(1), (2)	1986 s.31(1), (2).
(3)	Drafting.
163	1986 s.31(7), (8).
164(1)	1986 Sch.1 paras.4, 5.
(2)	1986 Sch.1 para.4(1).
(3)	1986 Sch.1 para.4(2).
(4) to (7)	1986 Sch.1 para.5.
165	1986 s.32.
166	Drafting.
167(1)	1980 s.12(1).
(2)	1980 s.12(2).
(3)	1993 s.273(1).
(4)	1980 s.12(1A); 1993 s.229(1).
(5)	1992FHE s.59(3), (4).
(6)	1993 s.273(2).
168(1)	1980 s.12(3); 1993 s.229(2).
(2)	1980 s.12(3).
(3)	1993 s.229(3).
(4)	1980 s.12(3).
(5), (6)	1980 s.16(3A), (3B); 1988 Sch.12 para.81.
169(1)	1980 s.12(4), (5); 1993 s.273(4).
(2)	1980 s.12(4).
(3)	1980 s.12(5).
(4)	1993 s.273(3).
(5)	1980 s.12(6).
(6)	1993 s.273(4), (5)(a).
170(1), (2)	1980 s.12(7).
(3)	1980 s.12(8).
171	1980 s.12(9).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

172	1980 s.16(1).
173(1)	1944 s.14(1).
(2)	1944 s.14(1), 114(1) (“former authority”); 1946 Sch.2 Pt.II.
(3)	1944 s.14(1); 1946 Sch.2 Pt.II.
(4)	1992FHE s.59(3), (4).
(5)	1993 s.273(2).
(6)	1944 s.14(2).
(7)	1944 s.14(5).
(8)	Drafting.
174(1)	1944 s.14(3).
(2), (3)	1944 s.14(4).
175	1992FHE s.59(1), (2).
176	1986 s.16A; FHE 1992 s.12(3).
177	Drafting.
178	1988 s.222.
179(1)	1973 s.1(2); 1980 Sch.3 para.17; Law Com. Rec. No. 3.
(2)	1973 s.1(2).
180	1980 s.5.
181(1)	1986 Sch.2 para.1 (“new school”); 1988 s.48(2).
(2)	1986 Sch.2 para.1 (“relevant proposal”); 1988 s.48(2).
(3)	1988 s.48(2) (“temporary governing body”); drafting.
182	1986 s.65(2).
183	1993 s.22.
184	1993 s.23.
185	1993 s.24.
186	1993 s.25.
187	1993 s.26.
188	1993 s.27.
189	1993 s.28.
190(1)	1993 s.29(1).
(2)	1993 s.29(2); Law Com. Rec. No. 14.
(3)	1993 s.29(3).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

191	1993 s.30.
192	1993 s.31.
193	1993 s.32.
194	1993 s.33.
195	1993 s.34.
196	1993 s.35.
197	1993 s.36.
198(1) to (5)	1993 s.272(1) to (5).
(6)	1964 s.1(1); 1993 Sch.19 para.38.
199(1) to (3)	1993 s.273(3) to (5).
(4)	1993 s.273(7).
200	1993 s.37.
201(1) to (8)	1993 s.38(1) to (8).
(9)	1993 s.155(8).
(10)	1993 s.38(9).
202	1993 s.39.
203	1993 s.40.
204	1993 s.41.
205	1993 s.42.
206	1993 s.43.
207	1993 s.44.
208	1993 s.45.
209	1993 s.46.
210	1993 s.47(1) to (4).
211	1993 s.48.
212	1993 s.49(1) to (3).
213	1993 s.50.
214	1993 s.51.
215	1993 s.52.
216	1993 s.53.
217	1993 s.54.
218	1993 s.55.
219(1) to (3)	1993 s.56.
(4)	1993 s.301(5).
220	1993 s.57.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

221	1993 s.58.
222	1993 s.59.
223	1993 s.60.
224	1993 s.61.
225	1993 s.62.
226	1993 s.63.
227	1993 s.64.
228	1993 s.65.
229	1993 s.66.
230	1993 s.67.
231(1) to (4)	1993 s.68(1) to (4)
(5) to (7)	1993 s.68(5) to (7); 1996N s.7(2) to (4).
(8)	1993 s.68(8).
232	1993 s.69.
233	1993 s.70.
234	1993 s.71.
235	1993 s.72.
236	1993 s.73.
237	1993 s.74.
238	1993 s.75.
239	1993 s.76.
240	1993 s.77.
241	1993 s.78.
242	1993 s.79.
243	1993 s.80.
244	1993 s.81.
245	1993 s.82.
246	1993 s.83.
247	1993 s.84.
248	1993 s.85.
249	1993 s.86.
250	1993 s.87.
251	1993 s.88.
252	1993 s.89.
253	1993 s.90.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

254	1993 s.91.
255	1993 s.92.
256	1993 s.93(1) to (6).
257	1993 s.94.
258	1993 s.95.
259	1993 s.96; Law Com. Rec. No. 3.
260	1993 s.97; Law Com. Rec. No. 3.
261	1993 s.98.
262	1993 s.99.
263	1993 s.100; Law Com. Rec. No. 3.
264	1993 s.101.
265	1993 s.102.
266	1993 s.103(2), (3).
267	1993 s.104.
268	1993 s.105.
269	1993 s.106.
270	1993 s.107.
271	1993 s.108.
272	1993 s.109.
273	1993 s.110.
274	1993 s.111.
275	1993 s.112.
276	1993 s.113.
277	1993 s.114.
278	1993 s.115.
279	1993 s.116.
280	1993 s.117.
281	1993 s.118.
282	1993 s.119.
283	1993 s.120.
284	1993 s.121.
285	1993 s.122.
286	1993 s.123.
287	1993 s.124.
288	1993 s.125.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

289	1993 s.126.
290(1) to (7)	1993 s.127(1) to (7).
(8), (9)	1993 s.127(8).
(10), (11)	1993 s.127(9), (10).
(12)	1993 s.305(1).
(13)	1993 s.127(11).
291	1964 s.1(1); 1993 Sch.19 para.38.
292(1)	1993 s.231(1); drafting.
(2)	1993 s.232(2).
293	1993 s.128.
294	Drafting.
295	1993 s.129.
296(1)	1993 s.130(1).
(2)	1993 s.130(2); 1996N Sch.3 para.11.
297	1993 s.131.
298	1993 s.132.
299	1993 s.133.
300	1993 s.134.
301	1993 s.135.
302	1993 s.136.
303	1993 s.137.
304	1993 s.143.
305	1993 s.144.
306	1993 s.145.
307(1), (2)	1993 s.261(1), (2).
308(1)	1993 ss.267(1), 268(1).
(2)	1993 s.267(2).
(3)	1993 s.268(2).
309	1993 s.152.
310	1993 s.154.
311(1)	1993 ss.155(1) (“premises”), 305(1) (“Church in Wales school”; “Church of England school”; “Roman Catholic Church school”).
(2)	1993 s.305(4).
(3)	1993 s.155(2).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(4)	1993 s.155(3).
(5)	1993 s.155(6).
(6)	1993 s.155(7)
(7)	Drafting.
(8)	1993 s.155(11).
312(1) to (4)	1993 s.156(1) to (4).
(5)	1993 ss.156(5), 305(1) (“maintained school”).
313(1) to (4)	1993 s.157.
(5)	Drafting.
314	1993 s.158.
315	1993 s.159.
316	1993 s.160.
317(1) to (5)	1993 s.161(1) to (5).
(6), (7)	1993 s.161(6), (7); Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c.50) s.29(2).
318(1), (2)	1993 s.162(1), (2)
(3)	1993 s.162(2A); 1996N Sch.3 para.12.
(4)	1993 s.162(3).
319	1993 s.163.
320	1993 s.164.
321	1993 s.165.
322(1)	1993 s.166(1); 1995HA Sch.1 para.124(2).
(2)	1993 s.166(2)
(3)	1993 s.166(3); 1995HA Sch.1 para.124(2).
(4)	1993 s.166(4).
(5)	1993 s.166(5); 1994LG(W) Sch.16 para.105(1); Local Government Changes for England Regulations 1994 (S.I. 1994/867) reg.5(6); Local Government Changes for England (Amendment) Regulations 1996 (S.I. 1996/611) reg.2.
323	1993 s.167.
324	1993 s.168.
325	1993 s.169.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

326	1993 s.170.
327	1993 s.171.
328	1993 s.172.
329	1993 s.173.
330	1993 s.174.
331	1993 s.175.
332	1993 s.176; 1995HA Sch.1 para.124(3).
333	1993 s.177.
334	1993 s.178.
335	1993 s.179.
336	1993 s.180; Arbitration Act 1996 (c.23) Sch.3 para.59.
337(1)	1993 s.182(1).
(2)	Drafting.
(3), (4)	1993 s.182(2), (3).
338(1)	1993 s.183(1).
(2)	Drafting.
339	1993 s.183(2) to (10).
340	1993 s.184.
341	1993 s.185.
342	1993 s.188.
343	1993 s.231.
344(1)	Drafting.
(2)	1993 s.182(4).
345	1993 s.186.
346	1993 s.187.
347	1993 s.189.
348	1993 s.190.
349	1993 s.191.
350(1)	1988 s.25(1) (“maintained school”); 1993 s.245(5).
(2)	1988 s.25(1) (“assess”).
351(1)	1988 s.1(2).
(2) to (5)	1988 s.1(1).
352(1)	1988 ss.2(1), 8(2); 1993 s.241(1), Sch.19 para.114.



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(2)	1988 s.2(3).
(3)	1944 s.114(1) (“sex education”); 1993 s.241(2).
353	1988 s.2(2); 1993 ss.240(1), 245(5).
354(1)	1988 s.3(1).
(2)	1988 s.3(2); S.I. 1992/1548 art.2; S.I. 1994/1814 art.2(2) to (4).
(3) to (5)	1988 s.3(2A), (2B); S.I. 1994/1814 art.2(5).
(6)	1988 s.3(4).
(7)	1988 s.3(6) (“school”).
(8)	1988 s.3(7).
355(1)	1988 s.3(3); 1993 Sch.19 para.113.
(2)	1988 s.3(4).
(3)	1988 s.3(5).
(4)	1988 s.3(5A); 1993 s.240(2).
(5)	1988 s.3(6) (“class”; “school year”); 1993 s.240(3).
356(1) to (4)	1988 s.4(1) to (4).
(5) to (8)	1988 s.4(5) to (8); 1993 s.240(4).
(9)	1993 s.241(4).
357(1)	1988 s.10(2).
(2)	1988 s.10(3).
358	1993 s.244.
359(1)	1993 s.245(1).
(2)	1993 s.245(4).
(3)	1993 s.245(3).
(4)	1993 s.245(2).
(5)	1993 s.245(5).
360(1)	1988 s.14(1); 1993 s.253(1).
(2) to (4)	1988 s.14(2); 1993 Sch.15 para.4(3), Sch.19 para.118(a).
(5)	1988 s.14(7).
361(1)	1988 s.14(3); 1993 Sch.15 para.4(3), Sch.19 para.118(b); Education (School Curriculum and Assessment Authority) (Transfer of Functions) Order 1994 (S.I. 1994/645); Education (School Curriculum and Assessment Authority)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

	(Transfer of Functions) Order 1995 (S.I. 1995/903).
(2)	1988 s.14(5); 1993 Sch.15 para.4(3), Sch.19 para.118(c).
(3), (4)	1988 s.14(6); 1993 Sch.15 para.4(3), Sch.19 para.118(d).
(5)	Drafting.
362(1), (2)	1988 s.16(1), (2).
(3), (4)	1988 s.16(3); 1993 Sch.19 para.119(a).
(5), (6)	1988 s.16(4), (5).
(7)	1988 s.16(6); 1993 Sch.15 para.4(4), Sch.19 para.119(b).
363	1988 s.17.
364	1988 s.18; 1993 Sch.19 para.120.
365(1)	1988 s.19(1).
(2) to (4)	1988 s.19(2).
(5)	1988 s.19(1).
(6)	1988 s.19(10).
366(1)	1988 s.19(3).
(2)	1988 s.19(4).
(3)	1988 s.19(4); 1993 Sch.19 para.121(a); Law Com. Rec. No. 15.
(4)	Law Com. Rec. No. 15.
(5)	1988 s.19(5); Law Com. Rec. No. 15.
(6)	1988 s.19(6); 1993 Sch.19 para.121(b); Law Com. Rec. No. 15.
(7)	Law Com. Rec. No. 15.
367(1)	1988 s.19(7).
(2), (3)	1988 s.19(8).
(4)	1988 s.19(9).
368(1)	1988 ss.20(1), 21(1).
(2)	1988 ss.20(2), 21(2); 1993 s.243.
(3)	1988 ss.20(3), 21(3); 1993 s.243.
(4), (5)	1988 ss.20(4), 21(3A); 1993 s.243.
(6), (7)	1988 ss.20(5), 21(3B); 1993 s.243.
(8)	1988 ss.20(6), 21(4).
(9)	1993 s.242(1), (3).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(10)	1988 ss.20(2), 21(2); 1993 Sch.15 para.4(5), Sch.19 para.122; drafting.
369	1988 s.227(1).
370(1)	1986 s.17(1)
(2), (3)	1986 s.17(2), (3).
371(1), (2)	1986 s.18(1).
(3)	1986 s.18(2).
(4)	1986 s.18(3).
(5)	1986 s.18(7); 1993 Sch.19 para.94.
(6)	1986 s.18(8).
(7)	1986 s.18(7); Law Com. Rec. No. 3.
(8)	Drafting.
372(1)	1986 s.18(5).
(2) to (4)	1986 s.18(6).
(5)	Drafting.
373(1), (2)	1986 s.19.
374	Drafting.
375(1)	Drafting.
(2)	1944 s.114(1) (“agreed syllabus”); 1988 Sch.1 para.6.
(3)	1988 s.8(3).
(4)	1944 s.114(1) (“agreed syllabus”), Sch.5 para.11; 1988 Sch.1 para.6.
(5)	1988 s.8(3).
376(1)	1944 s.26(1); 1988 Sch.1 para.1.
(2)	1944 s.26(2); 1988 Sch.1 para.1.
(3)	1944 s.26(3), (4); 1988 Sch.1 para.1; 1993 Sch.19 para.9.
377(1)	1944 s.27(6); 1988 Sch.1 para.2(2).
(2)	1944 s.27(1); 1988 Sch.1 para.2(1).
378(1)	1944 s.28(1); 1988 Sch.1 para.3(1).
(2), (3)	1944 s.28(1B); 1988 Sch.1 para.3(1).
(4)	1944 s.28(1C); 1988 Sch.1 para.3(1).
(5)	1944 s.28(1A); 1988 Sch.1 para.3(1).
379(1)	1993 s.138(1).
(2) to (4)	1993 s.138(9) to (11).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

380	1993 s.139.
381	1993 s.140.
382	1993 s.142.
383	1993 s.141.
384	1988 s.10(1).
385(1)	1988 s.6(1), (7).
(2)	1988 s.6(2).
(3)	1988 s.6(7).
(4)	1988 s.6(3); 1993 s.138(8); Law Com. Rec. No. 16.
(5)	1988 s.6(4).
(6)	1988 s.6(5); Law Com. Rec. No. 16.
(7)	1988 s.6(6).
386(1)	1988 s.7(1); 1993 s.138(1).
(2)	1988 s.7(1); 1993 s.138(2).
(3)	1988 s.7(2); 1993 s.138(3).
(4)	1988 s.7(3); 1993 s.138(4).
(5)	1988 s.7(4); 1993 s.138(5).
(6)	1988 s.7(5); 1993 s.138(6).
(7)	1993 s.138(12).
387	1988 s.7(6); 1993 s.138(7).
388	1988 s.10(1).
389(1)	1988 s.9(3).
(2)	1988 s.9(9).
(3)	1988 s.9(4).
(4)	1988 s.9(6).
(5)	1988 s.9(7); 1993 Sch.19 para.115.
(6)	1988 s.9(8).
(7)	1988 s.9(2), (5).
390(1)	1988 s.11(1).
(2)	1988 s.11(3), (4); 1993 s.147(1).
(3)	1988 ss.11(3), 13(4).
(4)	1988 s.11(4); 1993 Sch.19 para.116(a).
(5)	1988 s.11(5).
(6)	1988 s.11(5); 1993 s.255(2).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(7)	1988 s.11(6).
391(1)	1988 s.11(1).
(2)	1988 s.11(2).
(3)	1988 s.11(7).
(4)	1988 s.11(7).
(5)	1988 s.11(8).
(6)	1988 s.11(9).
(7)	1988 s.11(10).
(8), (9)	1988 s.11(11), (12); 1993 s.147(2).
(10)	1988 s.11(13); 1993 Sch.15 para.4(2), Sch.19 para.116(b).
392(1)	1988 s.11(1).
(2)	1988 s.13(1); 1993 Sch.19 para.117.
(3)	1988 s.13(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.117.
(4)	1988 s.13(3).
(5)	1988 s.13(4).
(6)	1988 s.13(5).
(7)	1988 s.13(6).
(8)	1988 s.13(7); 1993 Sch.19 para.117.
393	1993 s.16.
394(1)	1988 ss.11(1), 12(1); 1993 s.148(a).
(2), (3)	1988 s.12(2), (3).
(4)	1988 s.12(4); 1993 s.148(b).
(5)	1988 s.12(1).
(6)	1988 s.12(9); 1993 s.148(c).
(7)	1988 s.12(10).
(8)	1988 s.12(11); 1993 s.148(d).
395(1)	1988 s.12(5).
(2)	1988 s.12(6).
(3), (4)	1988 s.12(7).
(5)	1988 s.12(8).
(6)	1988 s.12(5), (6).
(7)	1988 s.12(9); 1993 s.148(c).
(8)	1988 s.12(10).
396(1)	1988 s.12A(1), (3); 1993 s.257.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(2)	1988 s.12A(2); 1993 s.257.
397	1993 s.258.
398	1988 s.9(1), 9(1A); 1992FHE s.12(4); 1994 Sch.2 para.8(2).
399	1944 s.67(3); 1988 Sch.1 para.4, Sch.12 para.4.
400(1), (2)	1988 s.5(1).
(3)	1988 s.5(2).
(4)	1988 s.10(2).
(5)	1988 s.5(3).
401(1)	1988 s.24(1); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.28.
(2)	1988 s.24(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.124.
(3), (4)	1988 s.24(3), (4).
(5)	1988 s.235(2)(c).
402(1)	1988 s.117(1).
(2)	1988 s.117(2); 1993 s.240(5).
(3) to (5)	1988 s.117(3) to (5).
(6)	1988 s.118(7), (8).
403(1)	1986 ss.46, 46A; 1988 Sch.12 para.34.
(2)	1986 s.46.
404(1), (2)	1993 s.241(5)
(3)	1993 s.241(6)
405	1988 s.17A; 1993 s.241(3).
406(1), (2)	1986 ss.44(1), (2), 46A; 1988 Sch.12 para.34.
(3)	1986 s.44(1).
407(1)	1986 ss.45, 46A; 1988 Sch.12 para.34.
(2)	1986 s.45.
408(1)	1988 s.22(1).
(2)	1988 s.22(2); 1992(S) Sch.4 para.6(2).
(3)	1988 s.22(3); 1993 Sch.19 para.123.
(4)	1988 s.22(1); Law Com. Rec. No. 17.
(5)	1988 s.22(4).
(6)	1988 s.22(5); 1992(S) Sch.4 para.6(3), (4).
(7), (8)	1988 s.22(6), (7).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

409(1) to (3)	1988 s.23(1).
(4)	1988 s.23(2).
410	1988 s.25(2); Law Com. Rec. No. 17.
411(1), (2)	1980 s.6(1), (2).
(3)	1980 s.6(3); 1988 s.30(2).
(4)	1980 s.6(4).
(5)	1980 s.6(5); 1978IA s.17(2)(a).
(6)	1988 s.26(9).
(7)	1988 s.26(10).
(8)	1980 s.38(4).
412	1986 s.33.
413(1)	1980 s.6(6); 1988 s.30(3).
(2) to (4)	1980 s.6(7) to (9); 1993 s.270.
414(1), (2)	1980 s.8(1), (2).
(3), (4)	1980 s.8(3); 1988 s.31(2).
(5)	1980 s.8(4).
(6) to (8)	1980 s.8(5), (5A), (6); 1992(S) Sch.4 para.4(1).
(9)	1980 s.8(7).
415	Drafting.
416(1)	1988 s.26(1).
(2) to (7)	1988 s.26(3) to (8).
(8)	1988 s.26(1), (3), (4).
417(1)	1988 ss.27(1), (2), 32(4).
(2), (3)	1988 s.27(3).
(4), (5)	1988 s.27(9).
418(1)	1988 ss.27(1), (2), 32(4); Education Reform Act 1988 (Commencement No.9) Order 1991 (S.I. 1991/409).
(2)	1988 s.27(3).
(3)	1988 s.27(3), (9).
419(1)	1988 s.29(7).
(2) to (5)	1988 s.29(1) to (4).
420(1) to (3)	1988 s.27(4) to (6).
(4), (5)	1988 s.27(7).
421(1)	1988 s.27(8).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(2)	1988 s.32(1).
422(1) to (6)	1986 Sch.2 para.19.
(7)	1986 s.65(1) (“promoters”), Sch.2 para.1; drafting; Law Com. Rec. No. 9.
423(1)	1980 s.7(1); 1993 Sch.19 para.73.
(2), (3)	1980 s.7(2), (3).
(4)	1980 s.7(4).
(5)	1980 s.7(5).
(6)	1980 s.38(4).
424(1)	1980 s.9(1); 1988 s.31(3).
(2)	1980 s.9(1A); 1988 s.31(3).
(3)	1980 s.9(2); 1981 Sch.3 para.14; 1992(S) Sch.4 para.4(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.74.
425	Drafting.
426	1993 s.149(1) to (4).
427	1993 s.150.
428	1993 s.151.
429	Drafting.
430(1) to (8)	1993 s.260.
(9)	1993 s.305(1) (“maintained school”).
431(1) to (6)	1993 s.13(1) to (6).
(7), (8)	1993 ss.13(7), (8), 305(1) (“maintained school”).
432	1993 s.14.
433(1), (2)	1948 s.4(2).
(3)	1948 s.4(3).
(4)	1948 s.4(3A); 1996N Sch.3 para.2.
(5)	1948 s.4(2).
434(1)	1944 s.80(1).
(2)	1944 s.80(1A); 1988 Sch.12 para.58.
(3)	1948 s.4(6).
(4)	1944 s.80(1); 1993 Sch.19 para.21.
(5)	1944 s.114(1); 1993 s.155(1), Sch.19 para.24(a)(ii).
(6)	1944 s.80(2).
435	1948 s.4(1).



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

436(1)	1980 s.9(1A); 1988 ss.29(5), 31(3); 1993 s.155(6).
(2)	1988 s.29(5), (6); 1993 s.149(5).
437(1) to (7)	1993 s.192(1) to (7).
(8)	1993 ss.192(8), 197(6), 198(4), 305(1) ("maintained school").
438	1993 s.193.
439	1993 s.194.
440	1993 s.195.
441	1993 s.196.
442	1993 s.197(1) to (5).
443(1) to (3)	1993 s.198(1) to (3).
(4)	1993 s.201(2).
444(1) to (4)	1993 s.199(1) to (4).
(5)	1993 s.199(5); Units of Measurement Regulations 1995 (S.I. 1995/1804) Reg.3.
(6), (7)	1993 s.199(6), (7).
(8)	1993 s.201(2).
(9)	1993 s.199(8).
445	1993 s.200.
446	1993 s.201(1).
447	1993 s.202.
448	1993 s.203.
449	1988 s.118(7).
450(1)	1988 s.106(1).
(2)	1988 s.106(1A); 1992FHE s.12(9); 1994 Sch.2 para.8(3).
451(1), (2)	1988 s.106(2).
(3)	1988 s.106(3), (4); 1993 s.280.
(4)	1988 s.106(4).
(5)	1988 s.106(3), (4); 1993 Sch.19 para.127.
452(1) to (4)	1988 s.107(1) to (4).
(5)	1988 s.107(5), (6).
(6)	1988 s.106(9).
453(1)	1988 s.106(5).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(2), (3)	1988 s.108.
454(1)	1988 s.106(6).
(2)	1988 s.118(3).
(3), (4)	1988 s.106(7), (8).
455(1)	1988 s.109(1).
(2)	1988 s.109(2).
(3)	1988 ss.109(2), 110(5).
456(1)	1988 s.109(3); 1978IA s.17(2)(a).
(2) to (8)	1988 s.109(4) to (10).
457(1)	1988 s.110(1); 1993 Sch.19 para.128.
(2), (3)	1988 s.110(2).
(4)	1988 s.110(3); Disability Living Allowance and Disability Working Allowance Act 1991 (c.21) Sch.3 para.12; Jobseekers Act 1995 (c.18) Sch.2 para.17.
(5)	1988 s.110(4).
458(1) to (4)	1988 s.111(1) to (3) and (5); 1993 Sch.19 para.129.
(5)	1988 s.111(6).
459	1988 s.118(5).
460(1), (2)	1988 s.118(1), (2).
(3)	1988 s.118(4).
461	1988 s.118(6).
462(1)	1988 s.118(7)(a), (e).
(2)	1988 s.106(10).
(3)	1988 s.106(11).
(4)	1988 s.118(7)(d).
(5)	1988 s.118(7)(d), (8).
463	1944 s.114(1) (“independent school”); 1980 s.34(1); 1988 Sch.12 para.7.
464(1) to (3)	1944 s.70(1); Transfer of Functions (Education and Employment) Order 1995 (S.I 1995/2986) art.11(2).
(4)	Drafting.
465(1)	1944 s.70(1).
(2)	1944 s.70(1) proviso (a).
(3)	1944 s.70(1) proviso (b).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(4)	1944 s.114(1) (“provisionally registered school”; “registered school”).
466(1)	1944 s.70(3).
(2)	1944 s.70(3A); 1980 s.34(6).
(3)	1944 s.70(3).
467(1)	1944 s.70(4); 1980 s.34(7).
(2)	1944 s.70(4A); 1993 s.292(2).
(3)	1944 s.70(4); 1980 s.34 (7).
(4)	Drafting.
468	1944 s.71(4); 1993 s.290(1).
469(1)	1944 s.71(1); Children Act 1989 (c.41) Sch.13 para.9; 1993 s.290(2).
(2), (3)	1944 s.71(1).
(4)	1944 s.71(2); 1993 s.290(2).
(5)	1944 s.71(3).
(6)	1944 s.71(5); 1993 s.290(1).
470(1)	1944 s.72(1).
(2)	1944 s.72(2); 1993 s.290(2).
471(1)	1944 s.72(3).
(2)	1944 s.72(3) proviso; 1993 s.290(2).
472	1944 s.72(4); 1993 s.290(2).
473(1)	1944 s.73(2).
(2)	1944 s.73(3); 1993 s.290(2).
474	1944 s.74.
475	1944 s.73(1).
476(1)	Drafting.
(2), (3)	1944 s.75(1).
(4)	1944 s.75(2); Arbitration Act 1996 (c.23) Sch.3 para.4.
(5)	1944 s.75(3).
477	1944 s.73(5); 1946 Sch.2 Pt.I; 1978IA s.17(2)(a).
478(1)	1944 s.73(4).
(2)	1944 ss.70(3), 73(2), (3); Criminal Justice Act 1982 (c.48) Sch.3.
479(1) to (3)	1980 s.17(1) to (3).
(4)	1980 s.17(2).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(5)	1980 s.17(4), (5).
(6), (7)	1980 s.17(10).
480(1), (2)	1980 s.17(6), (7).
(3)	1980 s.17(9).
(4)	1980 s.17(8), (9).
481	1980 s.18.
482(1)	1988 s.105(1).
(2)	1988 s.105(2).
(3)	1988 s.105(1), (2).
(4)	1988 s.105(3).
(5)	1988 s.218(2B); 1993 s.291; 1994 Sch.2 para.8(4).
483(1), (2)	1988 s.105(4).
(3), (4)	1988 s.105(5), (6).
484(1)	1984 s.1(1), (2); 1993 s.278(2).
(2)	1984 s.1(2), (6).
(3), (4)	1984 s.1(3), (4); 1993 s.278(2).
(5)	1984 s.1(5).
(6)	1984 s.1(7).
(7)	Drafting.
485	1944 s.100(1)(b); 1988 s.213(3).
486	1988 s.213(1); Transfer of Functions (Science) Order 1995 (S.I. 1995/2985) Sch. para.5.
487	1980 s.21(1).
488	1988 s.210.
489(1)	1944 s.100(3); 1980 s.21(2); 1984 s.1(4); 1988 ss.210(3), 213(2).
(2)	1984 s.1(4A); 1993 s.278(4).
(3), (4)	1973 s.1(2).
490	1988 s.211; 1978IA s.17(2)(a).
491(1)	1944 s.100(1)(c).
(2)	1944 s.100(3).
492(1) to (4)	1986 s.51(1) to (4); 1993 s.279(1).
(5)	1986 s.51(11); 1993 Sch.19 para.103(d).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(6)	1986 s.51(7), (8); 1993 Sch.19 para.103(a).
493(1)	1986 s.52(1); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.25.
(2)	1986 s.52(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.104.
(3)	1986 s.52(3); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.25.
(4)	1986 s.52(4).
494	1993 s.262.
495(1), (2)	1944 s.67(1).
(3)	1944 s.67(2).
496(1)	1944 s.68.
(2)	1944 s.68; 1988 s.219(2).
497(1)	1944 s.99(1).
(2)	1944 s.99(1); 1988 s.219(3).
(3)	1944 s.99(1).
498(1)	1944 s.99(2).
(2)	1944 s.99(2); 1988 s.219(3).
499	1993 s.297.
500	1993 s.232.
501	1993 s.233.
502	1993 s.234.
503(1) to (6)	1993 s.235(1) to (6).
(7)	1993 s.235(8).
504	1993 s.236.
505(1) to (7)	1993 s.237(1) to (7).
(8)	1993 ss.237(8), 305(1) (“maintained school”)
506	1944 s.69(2); Criminal Justice Act 1967 (c.80) Sch.3; 1978IA s.17(2)(a); Medical Act 1983 (c.54) Sch. 6 para.11.
507(1)	1944 s.93.
(2)	1944 s.93; 1972LG s.272(2); 1993 s.235(7).
508(1)	1944 s.53(1).
(2)	1944 s.53(1); 1948 Sch.1 Pt.I; 1988 Sch.12 para.54.
(3)	1944 s.53(2).
509(1), (2)	1944 s.55(1); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.5.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- |          |   |
|----------|---|
| (3)      | 1944 s.55(2); 1948 Sch.1 Pt.I; 1988 Sch.12 para.55; 1992FHE Sch.8 para.5.                       |
| (4)      | 1944 s.55(3); 1986 s.53; 1992FHE Sch.8 para.5; 1993 Sch.19 para.15.                             |
| (5)      | 1944 s.55(4); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.5.   |
| (6)      | 1944 s.55(5); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.5.   |
| 510(1)   | 1948 s.5(1); 1988 s.100(4).   |
| (2)      | 1948 s.5(1); 1953 Sch.1; 1981 Sch.3 para.7.   |
| (3)      | 1948 s.5(2); 1988 s.100(4).   |
| (4)      | 1948 s.5(3); 1980 s.29(1); 1988 s.100(4), Sch.12 para.61; 1992FHE Sch.8 para.16.                |
| (5)      | 1948 s.5(4); 1988 s.100(4).   |
| (6)      | 1948 s.5(4).  |
| 511(1)   | 1948 s.5(5).  |
| (2), (3) | 1948 s.5(6).  |
| (4)      | 1948 s.5(6A); 1980 s.29(2).   |
| 512(1)   | 1980 s.22(1); Social Security Act 1986 (c.50) s.77(1).  |
| (2)      | 1980 s.22(2); Social Security Act 1986 (c.50) s.77(2).  |
| (3)      | 1980 s.22(3); Social Security Act 1986 (c.50) s.77(2); Jobseekers Act 1995 (c.18) Sch.2 para.3. |
| (4)      | 1980 s.22(1).   |
| (5)      | 1980 s.22(3B); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.17.   |
| 513      | 1944 s.78(2).   |
| 514(1)   | 1944 s.50(1); 1946 Sch.2 Pt.I; 1981 Sch.3 para.3; 1988 s.100(2).                                |
| (2)      | 1944 s.50(1); 1948 Sch.1 Pt.I; 1981 Sch.3 para.3.   |
| (3)      | 1944 s.50(2); 1946 Sch.2 Pt.I; 1993 Sch.19 para.12.   |
| (4)      | 1944 s.52(1).   |
| (5)      | 1944 s.52(1) proviso; 1981 Sch.3 para.4.  |
| (6)      | 1944 s.52(2).   |
| (7)      | 1944 s.52(3).   |

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

515(1)	1980 s.26(1).
(2)	1980 s.26(3).
(3)	1980 s.26(4).
(4)	1980 s.26(5); 1978IA s.17(2)(a).
(5)	1980 s.26(6).
516	1993 s.295.
517(1)	1953 s.6(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.31(a).
(2)	1953 s.6(2)(a)(i).
(3)	1953 s.6(2)(a)(ii); 1981 Sch.3 para.8.
(4)	1953 s.6(2)(a)(iii).
(5)	1953 s.6(2)(b); 1981 Sch.3 para.8.
(6)	1993 Sch.19 para.31(b) to (f).
(7)	1993 s.308(3).
518	1944 s.81; 1988 Sch.12 para.6; 1992FHE Sch.8 para.11.
519(1)	1986 s.58(1); 1988 Sch.12 para.103; 1993 Sch.19 para.106.
(2)	1986 s.58(2).
(3)	1986 s.58(5); 1988 Sch.12 para.103.
(4), (5)	1986 s.58(6).
(6)	1986 s.58(7).
520(1), (2)	1944 s.48(4); 1973NHSR Sch.4 para.7; National Health Service Act 1977 (c.49) Sch.15 para.2; 1978IA s.17(2)(a).
(3)	Drafting.
521(1), (2)	1944 s.54(1).
(3)	1944 s.54(2), (8); Medical Act 1983 (c.54) Sch.6 para.11.
(4)	1944 s.54(1); 1993 Sch.19 para.14(a).
522(1)	1944 s.54(2).
(2) to (4)	1944 s.54(3).
(5)	1944 s.54(5).
523(1), (2)	1944 s.54(4); S.I. 1968/1699 art.5; 1972LG s.179(3).
(3)	1944 s.54(9); 1994LG(W) Sch.16 para.8.
(4)	1944 s.54(8); Medical Act 1983 (c.54) Sch.6 para.11.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

524(1), (2)	1944 s.54(7).
(3)	1944 s.54(7); 1993 Sch.19 para.14(c).
525(1)	1944 s.54(6).
(2)	1944 s.54(6).
(3)	1944 s.54(6); 1993 Sch.19 para.14(b).
526	1944 s.82.
527	1944 s.83.
528	1944 s.41(2A), (2B); Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c.50) s.30(8).
529(1)	1944 s.85(1).
(2), (3)	1944 s.85(2), (3); 1980 Sch.3 para.3.
530(1)	1944 s.90(1); Acquisition of Land (Authorisation Procedure) Act 1946 (c.49) Sch.4; 1948 s.10(1); 1988 Sch.12 para.59.
(2)	1944 s.90(1) proviso; Acquisition of Land (Authorisation Procedure) Act 1946 (c.49) Sch.4.
(3)	1944 s.90(1A); 1993 s.282(3).
531(1)	1948 s.10(2); 1972LG s.272(2); 1988 Sch.12 para.62.
(2)	1948 s.10(3).
532	1944 s.88; 1978IA s.17(2)(a).
533(1), (2)	1980 s.22(4).
(3)	1980 s.22(4A); 1993 Sch.19 para.79.
534(1) to (4)	1980 s.22(3A); 1988 Sch.12 para.24.
(5)	1980 s.22(3B); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.17.
535(1)	1980 s.26(2).
(2)	1980 s.26(3).
(3)	1980 s.26(4).
(4)	1980 s.26(5); 1978IA s.17(2)(a).
(5)	1980 s.26(6).
536(1), (2)	1944 s.48(4); 1973NHSR Sch.4 para.7; National Health Service Act 1977 (c.49) Sch.15 para.2; 1978IA s.17(2)(a); 1988 Sch.12 para.2.
537(1) to (6)	1992(S) s.16(1) to (6).
(7)	1992(S) s.16(7); 1993 s.263.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(8) to (10)	1992(S) s.16(8) to (10).
(11)	1992(S) s.19(2)
(12), (13)	1992(S) s.16(11), (12).
538	1986 s.56, Sch.2 para.13(2).
539	1993 s.153.
540(1)	1993 s.264(1).
(2)	1993 ss.264(2), 305(1) (“maintained school”).
541(1) to (3)	1993 s.265.
(4)	1993 ss. 265(1), 305(1) (“maintained school”).
542(1)	1944 s.10(1); 1988 Sch.12 para.1.
(2) to (4)	1944 s.10(2); 1988 Sch.12 para.1.
543	1944 s.10(2) proviso; 1948 s.7(1); 1968 s.3(3).
544(1)	1988 s.218(7); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.49; 1993 Sch.19 para.136.
(2)	1988 s.218(7).
(3)	1988 s.218(12).
545(1)	1944 s.63(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.18.
(2)	1988 s.218(8); 1993 Sch.19 para.19.
546(1)	1988 s.218(1)(e).
(2)	1988 s.218(12).
547(1)	1982LG(MP) s.40(1).
(2)	1982LG(MP) s.40(2); 1988 Sch.12 para.29.
(3)	1982LG(MP) s.40(3).
(4), (5)	1982LG(MP) s.40(4), (5); 1988 Sch.12 para.29.
(6)	1982LG(MP) s.40(6).
(7), (8)	1982LG(MP) s.40(7), (8); 1988 Sch.12 para.29.
548(1)	1986 s.47(1); 1993 s.293(2).
(2)	1986 s.47(1A); 1993 s.293(2).
(3)	1986 s.47(5); 1988 Sch.12 para.35; 1993 s.293(3), Sch.19 para.101(a).
(4)	1986 s.47(6); 1993 Sch.19 para.101(b).
(5)	1986 s.47(7).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

**Changes to legislation:** Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(6)	1986 s.47(4).
549(1), (2)	1986 s.47(2), (3).
(3)	1986 s.47(1B); 1993 s.293(2).
(4)	1986 s.47(10).
(5)	1986 s.47(5); 1993 s.293(3).
550	1986 s.47(8).
551(1).	1988 s.218(1)(g).
(2)	1988 s.218(12).
552(1)	1993 Sch.19 para.62(5).
(2), (3)	1993 Sch.19 para.62(2), (3).
(4)	1993 Sch.19 para.62(1).
(5)	1993 Sch.19 para.62(4)
(6)	1993 Sch.19 para.62(6).
553	1988 s.113.
554(1)	1973 s.2(1); 1988 s.112(2).
(2)	1973 s.2(1); 1988 s.112(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.52(a).
(3)	1973 s.2(1A); 1988 s.112(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.52(b).
(4)	1973 s.2(1C); 1988 s.112(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.52(c).
(5)	1973 s.2(1B); 1988 s.112(2).
(6)	1973 s.2(8).
555(1)	1973 s.2(2); 1993 Sch.19 para.52(c).
(2) to (4)	1973 s.2(2).
(5)	1973 s.2(1B); 1988 s.112(2).
556(1)	1973 s.2(3); 1993 s.288(3)
(2)	1973 s.2(4); 1988 s.112(3); 1993 Sch.19 para.52(c).
(3)	1973 s.2(4); 1993 s.288(2), Sch.19 para.52(c).
(4)	1973 s.2(5).
(5)	1973 s.2(5A); 1993 s.288(4).
(6), (7)	1973 s.2(6), (7).
(8)	1973 s.2(1B); 1988 s.112(2).
557	1993 s.287.
558	1944 s.58.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

559(1), (2)	1944 s.59(1), (2).
(3), (4)	1944 s.59(3).
(5)	1944 s.59(4).
(6)	Employment of Children Act 1973 (c.24) s.3(4).
560(1)	1973EWE s.1(1); 1988 Sch.12 para.14.
(2)	1973EWE s.1(4); Employment Act 1990 (c.38) s.14.
(3)	1973EWE s.1(2); Merchant Shipping Act 1995 (c.21) Sch.13 para.48.
(4), (5)	1973EWE s.1(3).
(6)	Drafting.
(7)	1973EWE s.1(4).
561	1944 s.115.
562	1944 s.116; 1948 Sch.1 Pt.I; 1993 Sch.19 para.25.
563(1)	1988 s.218(1)(f); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.49.
(2)	1988 s.218(4).
(3)	1988 s.218(12).
564(1)	1944 s.94(1); S.I. 1968/1699 art.5; Registration of Births, Deaths and Marriages (Fees) Order 1995 (S.I. 1995/3162) Sch.
(2)	1944 s.94(1).
(3)	1944 s.94(2); S.I. 1968/1699 art.5.
(4)	1944 s.94(3); 1978IA s.17(2)(a).
565(1)	1944 s.95(1).
(2)	1993 s.200(3).
566	1944 s.95(2).
567(1), (2)	1993 s.299(1), (2).
(3)	1993 ss.299(3), 305(1) (“maintained school”)
(4), (5)	1993 s.299(4), (5).
568(1)	1973 s.2(1); 1986 s.63(1); 1988 s.232(1); 1993 s.301(1); Law Com. Rec. No. 19.
(2)	1986 ss.4A(8), 63(1); 1988 s.232(2); 1993 ss.271(1), 301(2).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| (3)         | 1986 s.63(2); 1988 s.232(4); 1993 s.301(3).  |
| (4)         | 1988 s.232(3).   |
| (5)         | 1986 s.63(3); 1988 s.232(5); 1993 s.301(6); Law Com. Rec. No. 18.  |
| (6)         | 1988 s.232(6); Law Com. Rec. No. 18.   |
| 569(1)      | Statutory Instruments Act 1946 (c.36) s.1(2); 1948 s.12; 1980 s.35(1); 1984 s.3(1); 1986 s.63(1); 1988 s.232(1); 1992(S) s.19(1); 1993 s.301(1); Law Com. Rec. No. 18.   |
| (2)         | 1944 s.112; Statutory Instruments Act 1946 (c.36) s.5(2); 1948 s.12; 1980 s.35(3); 1984 s.3(3); 1986 s.63(2); 1988 s.232(4); 1992(S) s.19(2); 1993 ss.279(2)(a), 301(3). |
| (3)         | 1980 s.35(2); 1986 s.63(2A); 1993 ss.279(2)(b), 301(4).  |
| (4)         | 1980 s.35(4); 1984 s.3(4); 1986 s.63(3); 1988 s.232(5); 1992(S) s.19(3); 1993 s.301(6), Sch.19 para.107(a); Law Com. Rec. No. 18.  |
| (5)         | 1944 s.111A; 1980 s.35(5); 1988 ss.229(1), 232(6); Law Com. Rec. No. 18.   |
| (6)         | 1980 s.35(5).  |
| 570(1), (2) | 1944 s.111; S.I. 1968/1699 art.5; 1993 s.301(7).   |
| (3)         | 1944 s.111 proviso.  |
| 571         | 1980 ss.12(1B), 13(1C); 1988 s.34(3); 1993 ss.229(1), 230(1), 300.   |
| 572         | 1944 s.113; 1946 Sch.2 Pt.I.   |
| 573(1)      | Drafting.  |
| (2)         | 1944 s.114(1) (“alterations”); 1968 Sch.1 para.5(a); 1993 s.305(1).  |
| (3)         | 1944 s.114(1) (“enlargement”); 1968 Sch.1 para.5(b).   |
| (4)         | 1980 s.16(2); 1993 s.103(1).   |
| (5)         | 1944 s.114(1) (“significant”); 1968 Sch.1 para.5(c).   |
| (6)         | 1944 s.67(4); 1968 Sch.1 para.3; 1988 Sch.12 para.4.   |

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

574	1968 s.1(1); 1980 Sch.3 para.15; 1993 Sch.19 para.41.
575(1), (2)	1988 s.235(1); 1993 s.305(1); 1996ER Sch.1 paras.37(5), 59.
(3)	1988 s.235(3); 1933 s.155(9), (10).
(4)	1988 s.235(1); 1993 s.305(1) 1996ER Sch.1 paras.37(5), 59.
576(1)	1944 s.114(1D); Children Act 1989 (c.41) Sch.13 para.10.
(2)	1944 s.114(1E); Children Act 1989 (c.41) Sch.13 para.10; 1993 Sch.19 para.24(b).
(3), (4)	1944 s.114(1F); Children Act 1989 (c.41) Sch.13 para.10.
577	1944 s.114 (“minor authority”); 1972LG s.192(4); Local Government Changes for England (Education) (Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 1996 (S.I. 1996/710) reg.19.
578	1992FHE s.90(1) (“the Education Acts”); 1993 s.305(1)(“the Education Acts”); 1996N Sch.3 para.8.
579(1)	“boarder”: 1986 s.65(1). “child”: 1944 s.114(1). “clothing”: 1944 s.114(1). “exclude”: 1986 s.65(1). “financial year”: 1984 s.1(6); 1988 s.235(1), Sch.2 para.18; 1993 s.305(1), Sch.14 para.20. “functions”: 1988 s.235(1); 1993 s.305(1). “governing body”: “governor”: 1944 s.114(1); 1980 Sch.1 para.13. “higher education”: 1944 s.114(1); 1988 s.120(9). “land”: 1988 s.235(1); 1993 s.306(1). “liability”: 1988 s.235(1); 1993 s.305(1). “local authority”: 1988 s.235; 1993 s.305(1); 1994LG(W) Sch.16 paras.83, 105(2). “the local education authority”: 1944 s.114(1); 1988 s.118(7)(b); 1993 s.305(1). “local government elector”: 1944 s.114(1); 1972LG s.272(2). “medical officer”: 1944 s.114(1); 1973NHSR Sch.4 para.8; Medical Act 1983 (c.54) Sch.6 para.11. “modifications”: 1988 s.235(1); 1993 s.305(1). “premises”: 1944 s.114(1). “prescribed”: 1944 s.114(1); 1993 s.305(1). “proprietor”: 1944 ss.80(1), 114(1); 1988 Sch.12 para.5. “reception

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

	class”: 1980 s.38(5A)(b); 1988 ss.31(6), 119(1)(b); 1993 s.155(1). “relevant age group”: 1980 s.16(3); 1988 s.32(2); 1993 s.155(4). “school buildings”: 1946 s.4(2); 1973NHSR Sch.4 para.9; National Health Service Act 1977 (c.49) Sch.15 para.3; 1978IA s.17(2) (a). “school day”: 1986 s.65(1). “trust deed”: 1944 s.114(1). “young person”: 1944 s.114(1).
(2)	1988 s.235(3)(g); 1993 s.305(2).
(3)	1980 s.38(5A); 1988 ss.31(6), 119(1) (a); 1993 s.155(5).
(4)	1980 s.38(5); 1986 s.51(10); 1993 Sch.19 para.103.
(5)	1944 s.114(2)(b).
(6)	1944 s.114(2)(b); 1988 s.234(2)(a), (3) (a).
(7)	1944 s.114(2A); 1988 s.234(2)(b); 1992FHE Sch.8 para.13(4).
580	
581	1944 s.118; S.I. 1977/293 art.4; Law Com. Rec. No. 19.
582	
583	
Sch. 1	1993 Sch.18.
Sch. 2	
para.1	1993 Sch.1 para.16
paras.2 to 8	1993 Sch.1 paras.1 to 7.
para.9	1993 Sch.19 paras.46 to 48.
paras.10 to 14	1993 Sch.1 paras.8 to 12.
para.15	1993 Sch.1 para.15.
paras.16, 17	1993 Sch.1 paras.13, 14.
Sch. 3	
para.1	1993 s.17; 1996N Sch.3 para.10.
para.2	1993 s.18.
para.3	1993 s.19.
Sch. 4	
para.1	1993 Sch.2 para.1, s.305(1) (“maintained school”)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

paras.2 to 23	1993 Sch.2 paras.2 to 23.
Sch. 5	
para.1	
para.2	1944 Sch.3 para.8.
para.3	1944 Sch.3 paras.4, 5; 1948 Sch.1,Pt.I; 1980 Sch.3 para.5.
para.4	1944 Sch.3 para.7; drafting.
para.5	1944 Sch.3 para.9.
para.6	1944 Sch.3 para.10.
Sch. 6	1944 Sch.2.
Sch. 7	
para.1	1993 s.238(5) to (7).
para.2	1993 s.239.
para.3	1993 Sch.13 para.2
para.4	1993 Sch.13 para.1
para.5	1993 Sch.13 para.3
paras.6 to 10	1993 Sch.3 paras.8 to 12.
paras.11, 12	1993 Sch.13 paras.14, 15
Sch. 8	
para.1	Drafting.
para.2	1986 ss.6, 15(12), (13); drafting.
para.3	1986 s.15(11).
para.4	1986 s.15(7).
para.5	1986 s.15(1).
para.6	1986 s.15(8).
para.7	Drafting; 1986 s.15(2) to (6), (15).
para.8	1986 s.15(14).
para.9	1986 s.15(10).
para.10	1986 ss.8(6), (9), 15(9).
para.11	1986 s.8(2), (3); 1993 s.271(2).
para.12	1986 s.8(4).
para.13	1986 s.8(5).
para.14	1986 s.8(1).
para.15	1986 s.8(6), (7), (9); 1988 s.116; drafting.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

para.16	1986 s.8(11), (12); Law Com. Rec. Nos. 3, 20.
para.17	1986 s.8(8).
para.18	1986 s.62.
para.19	Drafting.
para.20	1986 s.57.
para.21	1986 s.8(10).
Sch. 9	
para.1	1986 s.65(1) (“promoters”), Sch.2 para.1; Law Com. Rec. No. 9.
para.2	1986 Sch.2 para.2(1), (2); 1993 Sch.19 para.109(a), (b)(i).
para.3	1986 Sch.2 para.6.
para.4	1986 Sch.2 para.7(1).
para.5	1986 Sch.2 para.8(1).
para.6	1986 Sch.2 para.7(2) to (5).
para.7	1986 Sch.2 paras.7(6), (7), 8(2).
para.8	1986 Sch.2 para.9(1), (2); 1993 Sch.19 para.109(e).
para.9	1986 Sch.2 paras.2(3), 11(4), (5).
para.10	1986 Sch.2 para.11(3).
para.11	1986 Sch.2 para.11(6).
para.12	1986 Sch.2 para.11(1), (2).
para.13	1986 Sch.2 para.10(4).
para.14	1986 Sch.2 para.10(2).
para.15	1986 Sch.2 paras.10(1), 26(3).
para.16	1986 Sch.2 para.10(4).
para.17	1986 Sch.2 para.2(4).
para.18	1986 Sch.2 para.10(3).
para.19	1986 Sch.2 para.27.
para.20	1986 Sch.2 para.28.
para.21	1986 Sch.2 para.30(1).
para.22	1986 Sch.2 para.29.
Sch. 10	
para.1	1986 Sch.2 para.3(4).
para.2	1986 Sch.2 para.3(5).



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

para.3	1986 Sch.2 para.4.
para.4	1986 Sch.2 para.13(3), (4).
para.5	1986 Sch.2 paras.2(2), 3(2), (3); 1993 Sch.19 para.109(b)(i).
para.6	1986 Sch.2 para.13(3), (5).
Sch. 11	
para.1	Drafting.
para.2	1988 ss.33(6), 42(4)(a) to (d).
para.3	1988 s.42(4)(e), (5)(a).
para.4	1988 s.42(4)(j).
paras.5 to 7	1988 s.50(5); 51(1) (“expenditure of a capital nature”).
para.8	1988 s.50(10).
Sch. 12	
para.1	1988 s.48(2) (“temporary governing body”).
para.2	1988 Sch.4 para.1(2)(a), (b).
para.3	1988 Sch.4 paras.1(1), 2(1).
para.4	1988 Sch.4 para.2(2) to (5).
para.5	1988 Sch.4 para.2(6); S.I. 1991/1890; S.I. 1992/110.
para.6	1988 Sch.4 para.2(8).
para.7	1988 Sch.4 para.2(9).
para.8	1988 Sch.4 para.3.
para.9	1988 Sch.4 para.6.
para.10	1988 Sch.4 para.5.
Sch. 13	
para.1	1986 s.36(1).
para.2	1986 s.36(2).
para.3	1986 s.37.
para.4	1986 s.39.
para.5	1986 s.38(1), (2).
para.6	1986 s.38(3).
para.7	1986 s.38(4).
para.8	1986 s.38(6).
para.9	1986 s.38(5).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

para.10	1986 s.35(2).
para.11(1), (2)	1986 s.41(1)(a).
(3)	1986 s.41(3).
(4) to (7)	1986 s.41(1)(b) to (e).
(8)	1986 s.41(3).
Sch. 14	
para.1	1988 Sch.3 paras.1(1), (2), (6), 2(1), 4(1), 5(1), 6(1), 7(1), 8(1), 10(1), 11(3); 1978IA s.17(2)(a).
para.2	1988 Sch.3 para.1(1).
para.3	1988 Sch.3 para.1(3).
para.4	1988 Sch.3 para.1(4), (5), (12).
para.5	1988 Sch.3 para.1(7).
para.6	1988 Sch.3 para.1(8) to (10).
para.7	1988 Sch.3 para.1(11), (13).
para.8	1988 Sch.3 para.2(1).
para.9	1988 Sch.3 para.2(2), (3).
para.10	1988 Sch.3 para.2(4).
para.11	1988 Sch.3 para.2(5).
para.12	1988 Sch.3 para.2(6), (7).
para.13	1988 Sch.3 para.2(8), (9).
para.14	1988 Sch.3 para.2(10), (11).
para.15	1988 Sch.3 para.2(12).
para.16	1988 Sch.3 para.3(1) to (3).
para.17	1988 Sch.3 para.3(4).
para.18	1988 Sch.3 para.4(1) to (3), (5).
para.19	1988 Sch.3 para.4(4).
para.20	1988 Sch.3 para.5.
para.21	1988 Sch.3 para.6.
para.22	1988 Sch.3 para.7.
para.23	1988 Sch.3 para.8(1) to (3), (6).
para.24	1988 Sch.3 para.8(4), (5).
para.25	1988 Sch.3 para.8(7), (8).
para.26	1988 Sch.3 para.8(9).
para.27	1988 Sch.3 para.9; 1978IA s.17(2)(a).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

para.28	1988 Sch.3 para.10; 1993 Sch.19 para.142.
Sch. 15	
para.1	1986 s.24.
para.2	1986 s.24(a), (h); 1993 Sch.13 para.97.
para.3	1986 s.24(b), (f), (g).
para.4	1986 s.24(h).
para.5	1986 s.24(b), (g).
para.6	1986 s.24(d), (h).
para.7	1986 s.24(h).
para.8	1986 s.25.
para.9	1986 s.25(a), (h).
para.10	1986 s.25(b).
para.11	1986 s.25(b), (g).
para.12	1986 s.25(c), (h); 1993 Sch.19 para.98.
para.13	1986 s.25(h).
para.14	1993 Sch.19 para.99.
para.15	Drafting.
Sch. 16	
para.1	1986 Sch.3 paras.1, 2; S.I. 1994/2092.
para.2	1986 Sch.3 para.3; S.I. 1994/2092.
para.3	1986 Sch.3 para.3A; S.I. 1994/2092.
para.4	1986 Sch.3 para.4; drafting.
para.5	1986 Sch.3 para.16.
para.6	1986 Sch.3 para.6.
para.7	1986 Sch.3 para.6A; S.I. 1994/2092.
para.8	1986 Sch.3 para.7; Education (No.2) Act 1986 (Amendment) (No.2) Order 1993 (S.I. 1993/2827) art.2.
para.9	1986 Sch.3 para.8; Education (No.2) Act 1986 (Amendment) Order 1993 (S.I. 1993/2709) art.2.
para.10	1986 Sch.3 para.9; S.I. 1994/2092 art.8.
para.11	1986 Sch.3 para.13.
para.12	1986 Sch.3 para.14.
para.13	1986 Sch.3 para.11.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

para.14	1986 Sch.3 para.12; S.I. 1994/2092 art.9.
para.15	1986 Sch.3 para.15.
para.16	1986 Sch.3 para.17; S.I. 1994/2092 art.10.
para.17	Drafting.
para.18	1986 Sch.3 para.5.
Sch. 17	
para.1	1986 s.30(2).
para.2	1986 s.30(2)(a).
para.3	1986 s.30(2)(b).
para.4	1986 s.30(2)(c) to (e).
para.5	1986 s.30(2)(g).
para.6	1986 s.30(2)(h); 1988 s.51(9); Education (No.2) Act 1986 (Amendment) Order 1994 (S.I. 1994/692) art.2.
para.7	1986 s.30(2)(i); Education (No.2) Act 1986 (Amendment) (No.3) Order 1994 (S.I. 1994/2732).
para.8	1986 s.30(2)(j).
para.9	1986 s.30(2)(k); 1978IA s.17(2)(a).
para.10	1986 s.30(5); 1992(S) Sch.4 para.5.
Sch. 18	
para.1	1986 s.31(4)(a).
para.2	1986 s.31(4)(b), (9).
para.3	1986 s.31(3).
para.4	1986 s.31(4)(c), (d).
para.5	1986 s.31(5), (6).
Sch. 19	
para.1	1986 Sch.2 paras.4, 12(1).
para.2	1988 Sch.4 para.7.
para.3	1986 Sch.2 para.12(2).
para.4	1986 Sch.2 para.12(3).
para.5	1986 Sch.2 para.20(5).
para.6	1986 Sch.2 para.21.
para.7	1986 Sch.2 para.22.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

para.8	1986 Sch.2 para.23.
para.9	1986 Sch.2 para.25.
para.10	1986 Sch.2 para.24.
para.11	1986 Sch.2 para.26(1), (2).
para.12	1986 Sch.2 para.30(2).
para.13	Drafting.
para.14	1986 Sch.2 para.20(1).
para.15	1986 Sch.2 para.20(2), (3); Law Com. Rec. No. 9.
para.16	1986 Sch.2 paras.20(4), 30(3).
para.17	1986 Sch.2 para.28.
para.18	1988 Sch.4 para.1.
para.19	1988 Sch.4 para.4(1), (4), (5).
para.20	1988 Sch.4 para.4(2).
para.21	1988 Sch.4 para.4(3); Education (Application of Financing Schemes to Special Schools) Regulations 1992 (S.I. 1992/164).
para.22	1988 Sch.4 para.4(7).
para.23	1988 Sch.4 para.4(8).
para.24	1988 Sch.4 para.4(6).
para.25	1986 Sch.2 para.15.
para.26	1986 Sch.2 para.16; 1988 Sch.12 para.106.
para.27	1986 Sch.2 para.17.
para.28	1986 Sch.2 paras.13(1), 14.
para.29	1986 Sch.2 para.18; 1988 Sch.4 para.2(10).
Sch. 20	
para.1	1993 Sch.3 para.1(1) to (4); drafting.
paras.2 to 12	1993 Sch.3 paras.2 to 12.
Sch. 21	1993 Sch.4.
Sch. 22	
paras.1 to 13	1993 Sch.5 paras.1 to 13.
para.14	1986 s.62; 1988 Sch.12 para.37.
paras.15, 16	1993 Sch.5 paras.14, 15.
Sch. 23	

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

paras.1 to 3	1993 Sch.6 paras.1 to 3.
para.4	1993 Sch.6 para.7
para.5	1993 Sch.6 paras.4, 6.
para.6	1993 Sch.6 paras.5, 6.
paras.7, 8	1993 Sch.6 paras.8, 9.
Sch. 24	1993 Sch.7.
Sch. 25	1993 Sch.8.
Sch. 26	1993 Sch.9.
Sch. 27	1993 Sch.10.
Sch. 28	
paras.1 to 14	1993 Sch.11, paras.1 to 14.
para.15	1993 s.261(1), (2), (5).
Sch. 29	
paras.1 to 16	1993 Sch.14 paras.1 to 16.
para.17	1993 Sch.14 para.17; 1993 Sch.15 para.6(2).
paras.18 to 22	1993 Sch.14 paras.18 to 22.
Sch. 30	
paras.1 to 5	1988 Sch.2 paras.2 to 6; 1993 Sch.15 para.4(6).
paras.6, 7	1988 Sch.2 para.7; 1993 Sch.15 para.4(6).
para.8	1988 Sch.2 para.8; 1993 Sch.15 para.4(6), Sch.19 para.141.
paras.9, 10	1988 Sch.2 para.10; 1993 Sch.15 para.4(6).
para.11	1988 Sch.2 para.11; 1993 s.249, Sch.15 para.4(6).
paras.12, 13	1988 Sch.2 paras.12, 13; 1993 Sch.15 para.4(6).
para.14	1988 Sch.2 para.13A; 1993 s.250, Sch.15 para.4(6).
paras.15, 16	1988 Sch.2 paras.14, 15; 1993 Sch.15 para.4(6).
para.17	1988 Sch.2 para.18; 1993 s.251(3), Sch.15 para.4(6).
paras.18, 19	1988 Sch.2 paras.16, 17; 1993 Sch.15 para.4(6).
Sch. 31	

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

para.1	1944 Sch.5 para.12(1), (3); 1993 s.256(1).
para.2	1944 Sch.5 para.12(4); 1993 s.256(1).
para.3	1988 s.11(8).
para.4	1944 Sch.5 paras.2, 5; 1988 Sch.1 para.7; 1993 s.254(3), Sch.19 para.27.
paras.5, 6	1944 Sch.5 paras.7, 8.
para.7	1944 Sch.5 para.3; 1988 Sch.1 para.7; 1993 Sch.19 para.27.
paras.8, 9	1944 Sch.5 para.4; 1993 Sch.19 para.27.
para.10	1944 Sch.5 para.13; 1988 Sch.1 para.7; 1993 s.256(2).
para.11	1993 s.146.
para.12	1944 Sch.5 paras.10, 13(4); 1988 Sch.1 para.7.
para.13	1944 Sch.5 para.11; 1988 Sch.1 para.7.
para.14	1944 Sch.5 para.11.
para.15	1993 s.15.
Sch. 32	
para.1	1988 s.28(1).
para.2	1988 s.28(2).
para.3	1988 s.28(3), (4).
para.4	1988 s.28(5).
para.5	1988 ss.28(6), (7), 32(1).
para.6	1988 s.28(8).
para.7	1988 s.119(2), (3).
Sch. 33	
para.1	1980 Sch.2 para.1; 1993 Sch.16 para.2.
para.2	1980 Sch.2 para.2; 1993 Sch.16 para.3.
para.3	1980 Sch.2 para.3.
para.4	1980 Sch.2 para.4; Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (Commencement No.11 and Savings) Order 1991 (S.I. 1991/344) Sch. para.1.
para.5	1980 Sch.2 para.4A; 1993 Sch.16 para.4.
para.6	1993 s.267.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

para.7	1993 s.268.
para.8	Drafting.
paras.9 to 11	1980 Sch.2 paras.5 to 7.
para.12	1980 Sch.2 para.10.
para.13	1980 Sch.2 para.8.
para.14	1980 Sch.2 para.9
para.15	1980 Sch.2 para.11.
Sch. 34	
para.1	1944 Sch.6 para.1.
para.2	1944 Sch.6 para.2.
para.3	1944 Sch.6 paras.3, 3A; Judicial Pensions and Retirement Act 1993 (c.8) Sch.6 para.51.
para.4	1944 Sch.6 para.4.
para.5	1976 s.6(1).
Sch. 35	
paras.1 to 3	1980 Sch.4 paras.1 to 3.
para.4	1980 Sch.4 para.4; 1986 s.47(9).
paras.5, 6	1980 Sch.4 paras.5, 6.
Sch. 36	1993 Sch.17.
Schs. 37, 38	
Sch. 39	
para.1	
para.2	1993 s.303.
para.3	1944 s.2(1).
para.4	1944 s.120(1).
paras.5 to 9	
para.10(1)	
(2)	1980 s.1(4).
para.11	1986 Sch.5 para.1.
paras.12 to 16	
para.17(1)	
(2)	1993 s.274(3).
(3)	1993 s.274(5).
para.18	Law Com. Rec. No.12.
para.19	S.I. 1996/951 art.4.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.*

*Changes to legislation: Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

paras.20 to 23	
para.24	1993 Sch.20 para.1; S.I. 1993/3106 Sch.2 paras.8, 9.
para.25	1993 Sch.20 para.1; S.I. 1993/3106 Sch.2 para.10.
para.26	S.I. 1993/3106 para.11.
para.27	S.I. 1993/3106 Sch.2 para.14.
para.28	1993 Sch.20 para.5.
para.29	1993 Sch.20 para.6.
para.30	S.I. 1993/1975 Sch.2 para.4(2).
para.31	1993 Sch.20 para.2; S.I. 1994/507 Sch.3 para.10.
para.32	S.I. 1994/507 Sch.3 para.11.
para.33	S.I. 1994/507 Sch.3 para.12.
para.34	S.I. 1994/2038 Sch.4 paras.2(7), 4(3).
para.35	S.I. 1994/507 Sch.3 para.5.
paras.36 to 42	
para.43	S.I. 1993/507 Sch.3 para.7.
para.44	1993 Sch.20 para.4.
para.45	1946 s.13(1).
para.46	
para.47	1944 s.120(5).
para.48	
para.49	1973 Sch.1 para.3.
para.50	
Sch. 40	

---

**Status:**

Point in time view as at 27/10/2008.

**Changes to legislation:**

Education Act 1996 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 19 May 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.